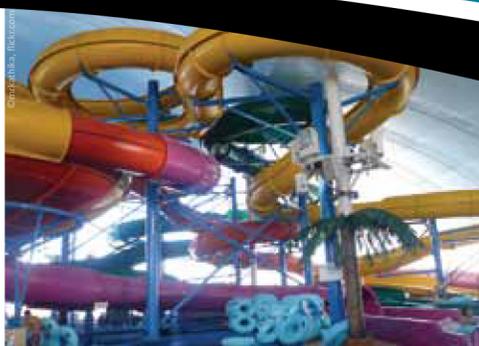


The Model Aquatic Health Code

The Code



MAHC - The Code
1st Edition
August 2014



U.S. Department of Health and Human Services
Centers for Disease Control and Prevention

Model Aquatic Health Code, 1st Edition with Changes Highlighted

Posted on 09/15/2014

This information is distributed solely as guidance for the purpose of assisting state and local health departments, pool programs, building officials, the aquatics sector, and other interested parties in improving the health and safety at public aquatic facilities. This document does not address all health and safety concerns associated with its use. It is the responsibility of the user of this document to establish appropriate health and safety practices and determine the applicability of regulatory limitations prior to each use.

Foreword

Swimming, soaking, and playing in water have been global pastimes throughout written history. Twentieth-century advances in aquatics—combining disinfection, recirculation, and filtration systems—led to an explosion in recreational use of residential and public disinfected water. As backyard and community pool use has swept across the United States, leisure time with family and friends around the pool has increased. Advances in public aquatic facility design have pushed the horizons of treated aquatic facilities from the traditional rectangular community pool to the diverse multi-venue waterpark hosting tens of thousands of users a day. The expansion of indoor aquatic facilities has made the pool and waterpark into year-round attractions. At the same time, research has demonstrated the social, physical, and psychological benefits of aquatics for all age groups.

However, these aquatics sector changes—combined with changes in the general population, chlorine-tolerant pathogens, and imperfect bather hygiene—have resulted in significant increases in reports of waterborne outbreaks, with the greatest increase occurring in man-made disinfected aquatic venues. Drowning continues to claim the lives of far too many, especially children, and thousands of people visit hospitals every year for pool chemical-related injuries. The increase in outbreaks and continued injuries necessitates building stronger public health regulatory programs and supporting them with strong partnerships to implement health promotion efforts, conduct research, and develop prevention guidance. It also requires that public health officials continue to play a strong role in overseeing design and construction, advising on operation and maintenance, and helping inform policy and management.

The Model Aquatic Health Code (*MAHC*) is a set of voluntary guidelines based on science and best practices that were developed to help programs that regulate public aquatic facilities reduce the risk of disease, injury, and drowning in their communities. The MAHC is a leap forward from the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention's (*CDC*) operational and technical manuals published in 1959, 1976, and 1981 and a logical progression of CDC's Healthy Swimming Program started in 2001. The MAHC underscores CDC's long-term involvement and commitment to improving aquatic health and safety. The MAHC guidance document stemmed from concern about the increasing number of pool-associated outbreaks starting in the mid-1990s. Creation of the MAHC was the major recommendation of a 2005 national workshop held in Atlanta, Georgia charged with developing recommendations to reduce these outbreaks. Federal, state, and local public health officials and the aquatics sector formed an unprecedented collaboration to create the MAHC as an all-encompassing health and safety guidance document. The partnership hopes this truly will lead to achieving the MAHC vision of "Healthy and Safe Aquatic Experiences for Everyone" in the future.

Atlanta, Georgia

August 2014

Acknowledgments

Creating the MAHC has been a long process starting with the passage of a 2004 Council of State and Territorial Epidemiologists position statement, the subsequent 2005 national workshop, creation of the MAHC Steering Committee in 2007, recruitment for the 12 Technical Committees, two public comment periods, and a comprehensive cycle of editing and revising individual modules and incorporating them into the “knitted” version. As a result, many individuals have contributed greatly by devoting considerable time and effort to addressing concerns and developing recommendations that are now reflected in the MAHC 1st Edition. They brought this key national workshop recommendation to fruition. These individuals represent a diverse group of public health officials, educators, aquatics sector leaders, and consumer representatives acting through their agencies, companies, professional groups, or trade organizations.

It is only through the dedicated efforts and contributions of experienced professionals that a scientifically sound, well-focused, and up-to-date MAHC is possible. CDC acknowledges with immense gratitude the substantial assistance of those who contributed to public health and aquatic safety in the development of the MAHC. They deserve our heartfelt thanks and appreciation for volunteering their time, energy, and creativity to create the MAHC. In addition, we would like to also give our thanks to all the reviewers across the country who provided more than 4,400 public comments and spent a great deal of time combing through the detail of the MAHC code and annex and making suggestions for improvement. Their effort was worth the time investment; the MAHC was greatly improved after each of the two public comment periods.

MAHC Steering Committee

Doug Sackett, *Chair*
Michael Beach
Bart Bibler
Rob Blake
Chip Cleary
Tracynda Davis
Jim Dunn
Steven Goode
Joe Hunsaker
John Linn
David Ludwig
Colleen Maitoza
Chuck Neuman
Charles Otto
Bob Vincent

Steering Committee Assistants

Elaine Curtiss
CDR Jasen Kunz
Amanda Tarrier
Lee Tate

MAHC Technical Committees

Contamination Burden

Ellen Meyer, *Chair*
Lee Tate, *SC Liaison*
Anthony Carotenuto
Richard Carroll
Jose Gonzalez
Joe Hunsaker
Jeffrey Kosik
John Paccione
John Weber
Llew Withers

Disinfection & Water Quality

Jim Dingman, *Chair*
Tracynda Davis, *Vice Chair*
John Linn, *SC Liaison*
Terry Arko
Susan Campbell
Jerry Cormier
Beth Hamil
Tony Leigh
Leon Marquart
Bob Pryor
Jeffrey Sloan
Raj Solomon
Duane Stansbury
Terri Stroupe
Roy Vore

Facility Design & Construction

Carl Nylander, *Chair*
Colleen Maitoza, *SC Liaison*
Chris Baugh
Scott Bowron
Benny Burleson
Cory Cloward
Keith Cooper
Bob Foster
Michael Grimes
James Hogan
Robert Jelinek
Peter Jen
Alvaro Mendoza
Randy Mendiorez
Rob Morgan
Paul Sisson
Lee Tate

Facility Maintenance & Operation

Michael Beatty, *Chair*
Darby van Conover, *Vice Chair*
Lee Tate, *SC Liaison*
Susan Campbell
James Cunningham
Carvin DiGiovanni
Deborah Fennel
Bob Foster
Frank Goldstein
James Hogan
Jeffrey Kosik
John McIlhargy
Garth Miner
David Roberts
Geoff Rogers
David Schwartz

Hygiene

Ralph Cordell, *Chair*
Tracynda Davis, *SC Liaison*
Scott Bowron
Lynita Docken
Bruce Flippens
Perry Fox
Brian Hodges
Dean Hyatt
Robert Jelinek
Jodi Jensen
Ted Kelly

Lifeguarding/Bather Supervision

Kathryn Scott, *Chair*
Roy Fielding, *Vice Chair*
Doug Sackett, *SC Liaison*
Richard Carroll
Dewey Case
James Cunningham
Patrick Daugherty
John Hunsucker
Daniel Jones
Stephen Keifer
Frank Pia
William Rich
Kay Smiley
Darby van Conover
Jill White

Monitoring & Testing

Vince Hill, *Chair*
 Diane Miskowski, *Vice Chair*
 Bob Vincent, *SC Liaison*
 Neal Bloomenrader
 Scott Bowron
 Kevin Boyer
 Jason Hammond
 Tom Metzbower
 John Pinckney
 Joe Sweazy
 Christopher Tate
 Robert Tuttle
 Tom Vyles

Operator Training

Dennis Berkshire, *Chair*
 John Whitmore, *Vice Chair*
 Doug Sackett, *SC Liaison*
 Wayne Crokus
 Tracynda Davis
 Tom Donaldson
 Lorraine Forston
 Connie Harvey
 Michele Hlavsa
 Dean Hyatt
 Steve Kraft
 Colleen Maitoza
 Mark Pabst
 Carl Ralph
 Kay Smiley
 Raj Solomon
 Joe Stefanyak
 Greg Stockton
 Mansoor Yasin

Recirculation Systems & Filtration

James Amburgey, *Chair*
 Roy Fielding, *Vice Chair*
 Chuck Neuman, *SC Liaison*
 Michael Beatty
 Susan Campbell
 Joe Carpenter
 Barry Gertz
 Mike Fabiani
 Garth Miner
 David Schwartz
 Kimberly Walsh
 Mansoor Yasin

Regulatory Program Administration

Frank Guido, *Chair*
 Tom Vyles, *Vice Chair*
 Tracynda Davis, *SC Liaison*
 Scott Bowron
 Neal Bloomenrader
 Scott Coughlin
 Gary Fraser
 Madeleine Gelsinon
 Clyde Hegerfeld
 Tressa Madden
 Daryl Matzke

Risk Management & Safety

Amy Duck, *Chair*
 Kelly Bernish, *V Chair*
 Amanda Tarrier, *SC Liaison*
 Maria Bella
 James Cunningham
 Carvin DiGiovanni
 Claudia Duncan
 Lee Engvall
 Chris Gordon
 Chevelle Glymph
 Jason Hammond
 Janina Jarvis
 Karin Mack
 Ellen Meyer
 Robert Morgan
 Mick Nelson
 Barry Rice
 Kay Smiley

Ventilation & Air Quality

Franceen Gonzales, *Chair*
 Richard Cavestri, *Vice Chair*
 Doug Sackett, *SC Liaison*
 Chip Blatchley
 Susan Campbell
 Lilia Chen
 Keith Coursin
 Jim Dunn
 Kevin Dunn
 Mike Groves
 Michele Hlavsa
 TJ Liston
 John McIlhargy
 Mark Moore
 Chuck Neuman

Jeff Radue
Steve Vehige

**Other Technical Committee
Members**

Steve Ashworth
Brian Freber
Steve Hawksley
Ron Robol

CDC Employees & Contractors

Kate Awsumb
Michael Beach
Molly Berkery
Maggie Byrne
Robert Blake
Staci Close, *Contractor*
Elaine Curtiss, *Contractor*
Julie Gilchrist
Michele Hlavsa
Heather Horton
Jon Kennon
CDR Jasen Kunz
CAPT Charles Otto
Montrece Ransom
Gouthami Rao, *Contractor*
Teresa Sims, *Contractor*
Pam Wigington

Funding

CDC
CDC Foundation
National Swimming Pool Foundation
Arch Chemical/Lonza

Table of Contents

<i>Foreword</i>	<i>ii</i>
<i>Acknowledgments</i>	<i>iii</i>
MAHC Steering Committee	iii
MAHC Technical Committees	iv
Contamination Burden	iv
Disinfection & Water Quality	iv
Facility Design & Construction	iv
Facility Maintenance & Operation	iv
Hygiene	iv
Lifeguarding/Bather Supervision	iv
Monitoring & Testing	v
Operator Training	v
Recirculation Systems & Filtration	v
Regulatory Program Administration	v
Risk Management & Safety	v
Ventilation & Air Quality	v
Other Technical Committee Members	vi
CDC Employees & Contractors	vi
Funding	vi
<i>Table of Contents</i>	<i>vii</i>
1.0 Preface	45
1.1 Introduction	45
1.1.1 Rationale	45
1.1.2 Need for Further Guidance	45
1.1.3 Responsibility of User	45
1.1.4 Original Manufacturer Intent	45
1.1.5 Local Jurisdiction	46
1.2 Recreational Water-Associated Illness Outbreaks and Injuries	46
1.2.1 RWI Outbreaks	46
1.2.2 Significance of <i>Cryptosporidium</i>	46
1.2.3 Drowning and Injuries	46
1.2.4 Pool Chemical-Related Injuries	46
1.3 Model Aquatic Health Code	46
1.3.1 Background	46
1.3.2 MAHC Vision and Mission	47
1.3.3 Science and Best Practice	47
1.3.4 Process	47
1.3.5 Open Access	48
1.3.6 Updating the MAHC	48
1.3.7 Authority	48

1.3.8	CDC Role	48
1.3.8.1	Public Health Role.....	48
1.3.8.2	Model Guidance.....	48
1.4	Public Health and Consumer Expectations.....	49
1.4.1	Aquatics Sector & Government Responsibility	49
1.4.2	Swimmer Responsibility	49
1.5	Advantages of Uniform Guidance.....	49
1.5.1	Sector Agreement	49
1.5.2	MAHC Provisions	49
1.5.3	Aquatic Facility Requirements	50
1.6	Modifications and Improvements in the MAHC 1 st Edition.....	50
1.7	MAHC Adoption at State or Local Level.....	50
1.7.1	MAHC Adoption at State or Local Level	50
1.7.2	Conference for the Model Aquatic Health Code	51
1.8	The MAHC Revision Process.....	51
1.8.1	MAHC Revisions	51
1.8.2	Future Revisions	51
2.0	<i>User Guide</i>	53
2.1	Overview.....	53
2.1.1	New Users	53
2.1.2	Topic Presentations	53
2.2	MAHC Structure and Format.....	53
2.2.1	Numbering System	53
2.2.2	Title, Keyword, Phrase Text	53
2.2.3	MAHC Requirement	53
2.2.4	Illustrations	54
2.2.5	Consistency Between Chapters 4.0 and 5.0	54
2.2.6	Conventions	54
2.2.7	Definitions	54
2.3	Annex.....	54
2.3.1	Rationale	54
2.3.2	Content	55
2.3.3	Bibliography	55
2.3.4	Appendices	55
3.0	<i>Glossary of the MAHC Code and Annex</i>	56
3.1	<i>Acronyms and Initialisms</i>	56
	Used in This Code and Annex.....	56
	Terms Used in This Code and Annex.....	59
4.0	<i>Facility Design Standards and Construction</i>	79
4.1	Plan Submittal.....	79

4.1.1	Plan Submittal.....	79
4.1.1.1	Purpose.....	79
4.1.1.2	Conform.....	79
4.1.1.3	Approved Plans.....	79
4.1.1.4	Plan Preparation.....	79
4.1.1.5	Required Statements.....	79
4.1.2	Content of Design Report.....	80
4.1.2.1	Basis of Design Report.....	80
4.1.2.1.1	Names / Addresses.....	80
4.1.2.1.2	Site Information.....	80
4.1.2.1.3	Plot Plan.....	80
4.1.2.2	Plans and Specifications.....	80
4.1.2.2.1	Drawings.....	80
4.1.2.2.2	Venue Attributes.....	80
4.1.2.2.3	Area Design.....	81
4.1.2.2.4	Venue Recirculation and Treatment Design.....	81
4.1.2.2.5	Equipment Room Design.....	81
4.1.2.2.6	Chemical Storage Space Design.....	82
4.1.2.2.7	Hygiene Facility Design.....	82
4.1.2.3	Technical Specifications.....	82
4.1.2.3.1	Accompanying Drawings.....	82
4.1.2.3.2	Technical Details.....	82
4.1.2.3.3	Water Sources.....	82
4.1.2.3.4	Area and Volume.....	82
4.1.2.3.5	Theoretical Peak Occupancy.....	82
4.1.2.3.6	Equipment Characteristics and Rating.....	83
4.1.2.3.7	Recirculation Rate and Turnover.....	83
4.1.2.3.8	Filter Media.....	84
4.1.2.3.9	Equipment Specifications.....	84
4.1.2.3.10	Safety Equipment Specifications.....	84
4.1.2.3.11	Other Specifications.....	84
4.1.3	Plan Approval.....	84
4.1.3.1	New Construction.....	84
4.1.3.1.1	Approval Limitations.....	84
4.1.3.1.2	Other Approvals.....	84
4.1.3.1.3	Plan Review Coordination.....	84
4.1.3.1.4	Plan Review Report.....	85
4.1.3.1.5	Plans Maintained.....	85
4.1.3.2	Non-Substantial Alterations.....	85
4.1.3.2.1	Alteration Review.....	85
4.1.3.2.2	Alteration Scope.....	85
4.1.3.3	Replacements.....	85
4.1.3.3.1	Replacement Equipment Equivalency.....	85
4.1.3.3.2	Replacement Approval.....	86
4.1.3.3.3	Emergency Replacement.....	86
4.1.3.3.4	Replacement Record Maintenance.....	86
4.1.3.3.5	Documentation.....	86
4.1.4	Compliance Certificate.....	86

4.1.4.1	Construction Compliance Certificate.....	86
4.1.4.2	Certificate Preparation	86
4.1.4.3	Certificate Statement.....	86
4.1.4.4	Systems Commissioning.....	86
4.1.4.5	Maintenance.....	87
4.1.5	Construction Permits.....	87
4.1.5.1	Building Permit for Construction.....	87
4.1.5.2	Remodeling Building Permit	87
4.1.5.3	Permit Issuance	87
4.1.5.4	Permit Denial	87
4.1.5.5	Documentation.....	87
4.2	Materials	87
4.2.1	Pools	87
4.2.1.1	Construction Material	87
4.2.1.2	Durability	88
4.2.1.3	Areas Subject to Freezing	88
4.2.1.4	Darker Colors.....	88
4.2.1.5	Competitive Pools.....	88
4.2.1.6	Design Parameters	88
4.2.1.6.1	Permission in Writing	88
4.2.1.7	Watertight	88
4.2.1.8	Smooth Finish.....	88
4.2.1.8.1	Daily Cleaning	88
4.2.1.8.2	Skimmer Pools.....	88
4.2.1.8.3	Gutter / Perimeter Overflow Systems	89
4.2.1.8.4	Dark Colors.....	89
4.2.1.9	Slip Resistant	89
4.2.1.10	Stainless Steel, Vinyl, PVC-P or PVC Pools.....	89
4.2.1.10.1	Damaged	89
4.2.1.11	Not Permitted.....	89
4.2.2	Indoor Aquatic Facility	89
4.2.2.1	Interior Finish.....	89
4.2.2.1.1	Relative Humidity	89
4.2.2.2	Condensation Prevention	89
4.2.2.2.1	Cold Weather	89
4.2.2.2.2	Paint or Coating	90
4.2.2.2.3	Perforated Interior-Finish Material	90
4.2.2.3	Mechanical Systems.....	90
4.2.2.3.1	Equipment Rooms.....	90
4.2.2.3.2	Chemical Storage Spaces.....	90
4.2.2.3.3	Indoor Aquatic Facility Air Pressure	90
4.2.2.3.4	Air Ducts.....	90
4.2.2.3.5	Filters	91
4.2.2.4	Indoor Aquatic Facility Doors	91
4.2.2.4.1	Corrosion-Resistant.....	91
4.2.2.4.2	Uncontrolled Condensation	91
4.2.2.4.3	Biological Contaminants.....	91

4.2.2.4.4	Air Leakage.....	91
4.2.2.4.5	Automatic Door Closer.....	91
4.2.2.5	Indoor Aquatic Facility Windows.....	91
4.2.2.5.1	Frames.....	91
4.2.2.5.2	Biological Contaminants.....	92
4.2.2.5.3	Thermal Breaks.....	92
4.2.2.6	Indoor Aquatic Facility Electrical Systems and Components.....	92
4.3	Equipment Standards.....	92
4.3.1	General.....	92
4.3.1.1	Accredited Standards.....	92
4.3.1.2	No Standards.....	92
4.3.1.2.1	Proof of Acceptability.....	92
4.3.2	Recirculation Systems and Equipment.....	92
4.3.2.1	ANSI-Accredited Testing.....	92
4.3.2.2	Suitable for Intent.....	93
4.4	Aquatic Venue Operation and Facility Maintenance [N/A].....	93
4.5	Aquatic Venue Structure.....	93
4.5.1	Design for Risk Management.....	93
4.5.1.1	Basic Requirements.....	93
4.5.1.2	Water Clarity.....	93
4.5.1.2.1	Observing Water Clarity.....	93
4.5.1.2.2	Pools Over Ten Feet Deep.....	93
4.5.1.2.3	Visible.....	93
4.5.1.2.4	Spas.....	93
4.5.2	Bottom Slope.....	94
4.5.2.1	Parameters and Variance.....	94
4.5.2.2	Under Five Feet.....	94
4.5.2.3	Over Five Feet.....	94
4.5.2.4	Drain.....	94
4.5.3	.....	94
Pool Access / Egress.....	.....	94
4.5.3.1	Accessibility.....	94
4.5.3.2	Acceptable Means.....	94
4.5.3.3	Large Venues.....	94
4.5.4	Stairs.....	95
4.5.4.1	Slip Resistant.....	95
4.5.4.2	Outlined Edges.....	95
4.5.4.3	Deep Water.....	95
4.5.4.4	Rectangular Stairs.....	95
4.5.4.5	Dimensions.....	95
4.5.4.6	Stair Risers.....	97
4.5.4.7	Top Surface.....	97
4.5.4.8	Perimeter Gutter Systems.....	97
4.5	Handrails.....	97
4.5.5.1	Provided.....	97
4.5.5.2	Corrosion-resistant.....	97

4.5.5.3	Upper Railing.....	97
4.5.5.4	Wider Than Five feet	97
4.5.5.5	ADA Accessibility	97
4.5.5.6	Support.....	97
4.5.5.7	Dimensions	98
4.5.6	Grab Rails.....	99
4.5.6.1	Corrosion- Resistant.....	99
4.5.6.2	Anchored.....	99
4.5.6.3	Provided	99
4.5.6.4	Clear Space	99
4.5.6.5	Upper Railing.....	99
4.5.6.6	Support.....	99
4.5.7	99	
	Recessed Steps	99
4.5.7.1	Slip-Resistant.....	99
4.5.7.2	Easily Cleaned	99
4.5.7.3	Drain	100
4.5.7.4	Dimensions	100
4.5.7.5	Uniformly Spaced	101
4.5.7.6	Uppermost Step.....	101
4.5.7.7	Perimeter Gutter Systems	101
4.5.8	Ladders	101
4.5.8.1	General Guidelines for Ladders	101
4.5.8.1.1	Corrosion-Resistant	101
4.5.8.1.2	Anchored.....	101
4.5.8.2	Ladder Handrails.....	101
4.5.8.2.1	Two Handrails Provided	101
4.5.8.2.2	Clear Space	101
4.5.8.2.3	Upper Railing.....	102
4.5.8.2.4	Pool Wall	102
4.5.8.2.5	Support.....	102
4.5.8	.....	102
.3	Ladder Treads	102
4.5.8.3.1	Slip Resistant	102
4.5.8.3.2	Tread Depth	102
4.5.8.3.3	Uniformly Spaced	102
4.5.8.3.4	Upmost Ladder Tread	102
4.5.9	Zero Depth (Sloped) Entries	103
4.5.9.1	Slip Resistant	103
4.5.9.2	Maximum Floor Slope	103
4.5.9.2.1	Slope Changes.....	103
4.5.9.3	Trench Drains.....	103
4.5.9.3.1	Flat or Follow Slope.....	103
4.5.9.3.2	Handholds	103
4.5.10	Disabled Access	103
4.5.10.1	Conform to ADA Standards.....	103
4.5.11	Color and Finish.....	103
4.5.11.1	White or Light Pastel	103

4.5.11.1.1	Munsell Color Value.....	103
4.5.11.1.2	Exceptions.....	104
4.5.11.1.3	Darker Colors.....	104
4.5.12	Walls.....	104
4.5.12.1	Plumb.....	104
4.5.12.2	Support Ledges and Slopes.....	104
4.5.12.2.1	Contrasting Color.....	104
4.5.12.3	Rounded Corners.....	104
4.5.12.4	No Projections.....	104
4.5.13	Structural Stability.....	105
4.5.13.1	Withstand Loads.....	105
4.5.13.2	Hydrostatic Relief Valve.....	105
4.5.13.3	Freezing.....	105
4.5.14	Handholds.....	105
4.5.14.1	Handholds Provided.....	105
4.5.14.1.1	Installed.....	106
4.5.14.2	Horizontal Recesses.....	106
4.5.14.2.1	Drain.....	106
4.5.14.2.2	Consecutive Recesses.....	106
4.5.14.3	Decking.....	106
4.5.14.4	Coping Dimensions.....	106
4.5.14.5	Coping Thickness.....	106
4.5.15	Infinity Edges.....	106
4.5.15.1	Perimeter Restrictions.....	106
4.5.15.2	Length.....	106
4.5.15.2.1	Shallow Water.....	107
4.5.15.3	Handholds.....	107
4.5.15.4	Construction Guidelines.....	107
4.5.15.5	Overflow Basins.....	107
4.5.15.5.1	Finish.....	107
4.5.15.6	Maximum Height.....	107
4.5.16	Underwater Benches.....	107
4.5.16.1	Slip Resistant.....	107
4.5.16.2	Outlined Edges.....	107
4.5.16.3	Maximum Water Depth.....	107
4.5.16.4	Maximum Seat Depth.....	107
4.5.17	Underwater Ledges.....	108
4.5.17.1	Slip Resistant.....	108
4.5.17.2	Protrude.....	108
4.5.17.3	Five Feet or Greater.....	108
4.5.17.3.1	Underwater Toe Ledge.....	108
4.5.17.3.2	Below Water Level.....	108
4.5.17.4	Structural Support.....	108
4.5.17.5	Outlined.....	108
4.5.17.5.1	Visible.....	108
4.5.17.6	Tread Depths.....	108
4.5.18	Underwater Shelves.....	108
4.5.18.1	Immediately Adjacent.....	108

4.5.18.2	Nosing	109
4.5.18.3	Maximum Depth	109
4.5.19	Depth Markers and Markings	109
4.5.19.1	Location	109
4.5.19.1.1	Markings	109
4.5.19.1.2	Depth Measurements	109
4.5.19.1.3	Below Handhold	109
4.5.19.1.4	Coping or Deck	109
4.5.19.1.5	Read on Deck.....	109
4.5.19.1.6	Twenty-Five Foot Intervals.....	109
4.5.19.2	Construction / Size	110
4.5.19.2.1	Durable.....	110
4.5.19.2.2	Slip Resistant	110
4.5.19.2.3	Color and Height.....	110
4.5.19.2.4	Feet and Inches	110
4.5.19.3	Tolerance.....	110
4.5.19.4	No Diving Markers	110
4.5.19.4.1	Depths	110
4.5.19.4.2	Durable	111
4.5.19.4.3	Slip Resistant	111
4.5.19.4.4	At Least Four Inches.....	111
4.5.19.5	Depth Marking At Break in Floor Slope.....	111
4.5.19.5.1	Over Five Feet.....	111
4.5.19.5.2	Durable.....	111
4.5.19.5.3	Safety Rope.....	111
4.5.19.6	Dual Marking System	111
4.5.19.7	Non-Traditional Aquatic Venues.....	111
4.5.19.7.1	Clearly Visible	111
4.5.19.7.2	Lettering and Symbols	111
4.5.19.8	Wading Pool Depth Markers	112
4.5.19.9	Movable Floor Depth Markers.....	112
4.5.19.9.1	Vertical Measurement.....	112
4.5.19.9.2	Signage.....	112
4.5.19.10	Spas.....	112
4.5.20	Aquatic Venue Shell Maintenance [N/A].....	112
4.5.21	Special Use Aquatic Venues	112
4.5.21.1	Adequately Support	112
4.5.21.2	Justification	112
4.6	Indoor / Outdoor Environment	113
4.6.1	Lighting.....	113
4.6.1.1	General Requirements.....	113
4.6.1.1.1	Outdoor Aquatic Venues.....	113
4.6.1.1.2	Accessible	113
4.6.1.2	Windows / Natural Light	113
4.6.1.3	Light Levels	113
4.6.1.4	Overhead Lighting	113
4.6.1.4.1	Artificial Lighting	113

4.6.1.4.2	Aquatic Venue Floor.....	113
4.6.1.4.3	Aquatic Venue Illumination.....	114
4.6.1.5	Underwater Lighting.....	114
4.6.1.5.1	Minimum Requirements	114
4.6.1.5.2	Dimmable Lighting.....	114
4.6.1.6	Night Swimming with No Underwater Lighting	114
4.6.1.6.1	Minimum Requirements	114
4.6.1.7	Emergency Lighting.....	114
4.6.1.7.1	Emergency Egress Lighting.....	114
4.6.1.7.2	Footcandles	114
4.6.1.8	Glare.....	115
4.6.2	Indoor Aquatic Facility Ventilation	115
4.6.2.1	Purpose.....	115
4.6.2.2	Exemptions	115
4.6.2.3	Indoor Aquatic Facility	115
4.6.2.4	Mechanical Code	115
4.6.2.5	ASHRAE 62.1 Compliance	115
4.6.2.6	Air Handling System Design	115
4.6.2.6.1	Mechanical Systems.....	115
4.6.2.6.2	Design Factors and Performance Requirements	115
4.6.2.6.3	Other Air Handling Systems	116
4.6.2.6.4	High Volume, Low Speed Fans	116
4.6.2.6.5	Occupied and Open All Seasons.....	116
4.6.2.6.6	Air Distribution Design.....	117
4.6.2.7	Performance Requirements for Air Handling Systems.....	117
4.6.2.7.1	Minimum Outdoor Air Requirements.....	117
4.6.2.7.2	System Alarm.....	117
4.6.2.7.3	Real-Time Occupancy	117
4.6.2.7.4	Air Delivery Rate	117
4.6.2.7.5	Consistent Air Flow	117
4.6.2.7.6	Relative Humidity	117
4.6.2.7.7	Negative Air Pressure	118
4.6.2.7.8	Disinfection By-Product Removal.....	118
4.6.2.7.9	Re-Entrainment of Exhaust.....	118
4.6.2.7.10	Access Control.....	118
4.6.2.7.11	Purge	118
4.6.2.7.12	Air Handling System Filters	119
4.6.2.8	Air Handling System Installation.....	119
4.6.2.8.1	Air Handling System Procedures.....	119
4.6.2.9	Air Handling System Commissioning	119
4.6.2.9.1	System Commissioning	119
4.6.2.9.2	Written Statement	119
4.6.3	Indoor Aquatic Facility Electrical Systems and Components	120
4.6.3.1	General Guidelines.....	120
4.6.3.1.1	NEC Requirements	120
4.6.3.1.2	Indoor Aquatic Facilities.....	120
4.6.3.2	Electrical Equipment in Interior Chemical Storage Spaces	120
4.6.3.2.1	Wet and Corrosive	120

4.6.3.2.2	Electrical Conduit	120
4.6.3.2.3	Electrical Devices	120
4.6.3.2.4	Protected Against Breakage.....	120
4.6.4	Pool Water Heating.....	120
4.6.4.1	High Temperature	120
4.6.4.2	Pressure Relief Device.....	121
4.6.4.3	Code Compliance.....	121
4.6.4.4	Equipment Room Requirements	121
4.6.4.5	Exception	121
4.6.5	First Aid Area.....	121
4.6.5.1	Station Design.....	121
4.6.6	Emergency Exit.....	121
4.6.6.1	.....	121
	Labeling	121
4.6.7	Drinking Fountains.....	122
4.6.7.1	Provided.....	122
4.6.7.1.1	Alternative.....	122
4.6.7.1.2	Common Use Area.....	122
4.6.7.2	Readily Accessible.....	122
4.6.7.2.1	Not Located.....	122
4.6.7.3	Single Fountain	122
4.6.7.4	Angle Jet Type	122
4.6.7.5	Potable Water Supply	122
4.6.7.6	Wastewater.....	122
4.6.8	Garbage Receptacles.....	122
4.6.8.1	Sufficient Number.....	122
4.6.8.2	Number and Location	123
4.6.8.3	Closable.....	123
4.6.9	Food and Drink Concessions.....	123
4.6.9.1	Meet AHJ Requirements.....	123
4.6.10	Spectator Areas.....	123
4.6.10.1	Within Aquatic Facility Enclosure.....	123
4.6.10.2	Deck	123
4.6.10.2.1	Additional Width	123
4.6.10.3	Balcony	124
4.6.10.4	Bleachers.....	124
4.7	Recirculation and Water Treatment.....	124
4.7.1	Recirculation Systems and Equipment.....	124
4.7.1.1	General.....	124
4.7.1.1.1	Equipped and Operated.....	124
4.7.1.1.2	Component Installation.....	124
4.7.1.1.3	Recirculation System	124
4.7.1.2	Combined Aquatic Venue Treatment	124
4.7.1.2.1	Maintain and Measure.....	124
4.7.1.2.2	Secondary Disinfection.....	124
4.7.1.2.3	Isolate.....	124
4.7.1.3	Inlets.....	125

4.7.1.3.1	General.....	125
4.7.1.3.2	Floor Inlets.....	125
4.7.1.3.3	Wall Inlets.....	126
4.7.1.4	Perimeter Overflow Systems/Gutters	126
4.7.1.4.1	General.....	126
4.7.1.4.2	Perimeter Overflow System Size and Shape	127
4.7.1.4.3	Gutter Outlets.....	127
4.7.1.4.4	Surge Tank Capacity.....	127
4.7.1.4.5	Tolerances	128
4.7.1.4.6	Makeup Water System.....	128
4.7.1.5	Skimmers R&F	128
4.7.1.5.1	General.....	128
4.7.1.5.2	Skimmer Location.....	129
4.7.1.5.3	Skimmer Flow Rate	129
4.7.1.5.4	Control	129
4.7.1.5.5	Tolerances	130
4.7.1.6	Submerged Suction Outlet.....	130
4.7.1.6.1	General.....	130
4.7.1.6.2	Number and Spacing.....	130
4.7.1.6.3	Tank Connection.....	131
4.7.1.6.4	Flow Distribution and Control.....	131
4.7.1.6.5	Flow Velocities	131
4.7.1.7	Piping.....	131
4.7.1.7.1	Design	131
4.7.1.7.2	Velocity in Pipes	132
4.7.1.7.3	Drainage and Installation.....	132
4.7.1.7.4	Piping and Component Identification	132
4.7.1.7.5	Testing.....	133
4.7.1.8	Strainers and Pumps.....	133
4.7.1.8.1	Strainers	133
4.7.1.8.2	Pumping Equipment.....	133
4.7.1.8.3	Operating Gauges.....	134
4.7.1.9	Flow Measurement and Control.....	135
4.7.1.9.1	Flow Meters	135
4.7.1.9.2	Valves	135
4.7.1.10	Flow Rates / Turnover Times	135
4.7.1.10.1	Maximum Allowable.....	135
4.7.1.10.2	Calculated	135
4.7.1.10.3	Turnover Variance	136
4.7.1.10.4	Turnover Times.....	136
4.7.1.10.5	.....	137
	Reuse Ratio.....	137
4.7.1.10.6	Flow Turndown System.....	137
4.7.2	Filtration	138
4.7.2.1	All Filters	138
4.7.2.1.1	Required.....	138
4.7.2.2	Granular Media Filters.....	138
4.7.2.2.1	General.....	138

4.7.2.2.2	Filter Location and Spacing	138
4.7.2.2.3	Filtration and Backwashing Rates	138
4.7.2.2.4	Minimum Filter Media Depth Requirements.....	139
4.7.2.2.5	Differential Pressure Measurement Gauges.....	139
4.7.2.2.6	Coagulant Injection Equipment Installation	139
4.7.2.3	Precoat Filters	139
4.7.2.3.1	General.....	139
4.7.2.3.2	Filtration Rates.....	140
4.7.2.3.3	Precoat Media Introduction System.....	140
	Process.....	140
4.7.2.3.4	Continuous Filter Media Feed Equipment.....	140
4.7.2.4	Cartridge Filters	141
4.7.2.4.1	Listed.....	141
4.7.2.4.2	Filtration Rates.....	141
4.7.2.4.3	Supplied and Sized.....	141
4.7.2.4.4	Spare Cartridge	141
4.7.3	Disinfection and pH Control.....	141
4.7.3.1	Chemical Addition Methods.....	141
4.7.3.1.1	Disinfection and pH.....	141
4.7.3.2	Feed Equipment	141
4.7.3.2.1	General.....	141
4.7.3.2.2	Sizing of Disinfection Equipment.....	142
4.7.3.2.3	Introduction of Chemicals.....	143
4.7.3.2.4	Compressed Chlorine Gas.....	143
4.7.3.2.5	Types of Feeders.....	143
4.7.3.2.6	Salt Electrolytic Chlorine Generators, Brine Electrolytic Chlorine, or Bromine Generators.....	144
4.7.3.2.7	Feeders for pH Adjustment.....	145
4.7.3.2.8	Automated Controllers.....	146
4.7.3.3	Secondary Disinfection Systems.....	146
4.7.3.3.1	General Requirements.....	146
4.7.3.3.2	3-log Inactivation and Oocyst Reduction	147
4.7.3.3.3	Ultraviolet Light Systems	148
4.7.3.3.4	Ozone Disinfection	150
4.7.3.4	Supplemental Treatment Systems.....	153
4.7.3.4.1	General Requirements.....	153
4.7.3.4.2	Ultraviolet Light.....	154
4.7.3.4.3	Ozone	154
4.7.3.4.4	Copper / Silver Ion Systems	154
4.7.3.4.5	Ultraviolet Light / Hydrogen Peroxide Systems.....	155
4.7.3.5	Water Quality Testing Devices and Kits	155
4.7.3.5.1	Compliance	155
4.7.3.5.2	Water Clarity Device	155
4.7.3.6	Microbiological Testing Equipment	155
4.7.3.6.1	EPA-Approved.....	155
4.7.4	Water Replenishment System.....	155
4.7.4.1	.....	155
	Discharge and Measure.....	156

4.7.4.1.1	Alternate System	156
4.7.4.1.2	Discharge	156
4.7.5	Spas.....	156
4.7.5.1	General.....	156
4.7.5.1.1	Requirements	156
4.7.5.2	Flow Rates/Turnover Times	156
4.7.5.2.1	Maximum Allowable	156
4.7.5.2.2	Turnover Time Variance.....	156
4.7.5.2.3	Turnover Times.....	156
4.7.5.3	Filtration System Inlets.....	157
4.7.5.4	Jet System Inlets	157
4.7.5.4.1	Air Flow	157
4.7.5.4.2	Skimmer.....	157
4.8	Decks and Equipment.....	157
4.8.1	Decks	157
4.8.1.1	General Standards for All Decks	157
4.8.1.1.1	Constructed	157
4.8.1.1.2	Lifeguard Placement and Safety Considerations	157
4.8.1.1.3	Joints or Gaps.....	158
4.8.1.1.4	Rounded Edges	158
4.8.1.1.5	Minimize Cracks.....	158
4.8.1.1.6	Concrete Decking.....	158
4.8.1.2	Standards for Perimeter Decks.....	158
4.8.1.2.1	Impervious	158
4.8.1.2.2	Watertight Expansion.....	158
4.8.1.2.3	Watertight Expansion.....	158
4.8.1.3	Drains.....	159
4.8.1.3.1	Slope	159
4.8.1.3.2	Placement.....	160
4.8.1.3.3	Cross Connection Control.....	160
4.8.1.3.4	Drain Bodies	160
4.8.1.3.5	Drain Covers	161
4.8.1.4	Materials / Slip Resistance.....	161
4.8.1.4.1	General.....	161
4.8.1.4.2	Slip Resistance.....	161
4.8.1.4.3	Carpet.....	161
4.8.1.4.4	Wood.....	161
4.8.1.4.5	Dry Deck.....	161
4.8.1.4.6	Landscaping	161
4.8.1.5	Deck Size / Width	161
4.8.1.5.1	Perimeter Deck.....	161
4.8.1.5.2	Fixed Equipment.....	162
4.8.1.5.3	Circulation Path	163
4.8.1.6	Wing Walls or Peninsulas.....	163
4.8.1.6.1	No Perimeter Deck.....	163
4.8.1.6.2	Perimeter Overflow System.....	163
4.8.1.6.3	Pool Perimeter.....	163

4.8.1.6.4	Normal Operating Water Level	164
4.8.1.6.5	Deck Drainage	164
4.8.1.6.6	Vertical Depth Markers.....	164
4.8.1.7	Islands	164
4.8.1.7.1	Minimum Width.....	164
4.8.1.7.2	Slip Resistant	164
4.8.1.7.3	Lifeguards	164
4.8.1.7.4	Vertical Depth Markers.....	164
4.8.1.7.5	Horizontal Depth Markers	164
4.8.1.7.6	Bridge or Stairway	165
4.8.1.7.7	Minimum Clearance.....	165
4.8.1.7.8	Guard Rails	165
4.8.1.8	Heated Decks	165
4.8.1.8.1	Freeze Protection	165
4.8.1.8.2	Clearly Delineated	165
4.8.1.9	Hose Bibbs.....	165
4.8.1.9.1	General.....	165
4.8.1.9.2	Backflow Prevention.....	165
4.8.2	Diving Boards and Platforms.....	165
4.8.2.1	Diving Envelope	165
4.8.2.1.1	Competitive Diving.....	165
4.8.2.1.2	Non-Competitive Diving	166
4.8.2.2	Steps and Guardrails	166
4.8.2.2.1	Higher than Twenty-One Inches.....	166
4.8.2.2.2	Self-Draining Treads.....	166
4.8.2.2.3	Short Platforms	166
4.8.2.2.4	Tall Platforms.....	166
4.8.3	Starting Platforms.....	168
4.8.3.1	Conform to Standard Codes.....	168
4.8.3.2	.....	168
	Minimum Water Depth.....	169
4.8.3.3	Leading Edge	169
4.8.3.4	Slip Resistant	169
4.8.3.5	Secure and Stable.....	169
4.8.4	Pool Slides [N/A]	169
4.8.5	Lifeguard- and Safety-Related Equipment	169
4.8.5.1	Equipment Inspection and Maintenance [N/A]	169
4.8.5.2	Safety Equipment Required at all Aquatic Facilities.....	169
4.8.5.2.1	Emergency Communication Equipment	169
	Safety Equipment Required at Facilities with Lifeguards	170
4.8.5.3.1	Lifeguard Chair and Stand Placement	170
4.8.5.3.2	Lifeguard Chair and Stand Design.....	170
4.8.5.3.3	UV Protection for Chairs and Stands.....	170
4.8.6	Barriers and Enclosures.....	170
4.8.6.1	General Requirements.....	170
4.8.6.1.1	Enclosed.....	170
4.8.6.2	Construction Requirements.....	171
4.8.6.2.1	Discourage Climbing	171

4.8.6.2.1	171
4.8.6.2.2 Emergency Exit Paths	171
4.8.6.2.3 Windows	172
4.8.6.2.4 Height.....	172
4.8.6.3 Gates and Doors.....	173
4.8.6.3.1 Self-Closing and Latching	173
4.8.6.3.2 Gates	173
4.8.6.3.3 Turnstiles.....	173
4.8.6.3.4 Exit Gates.....	173
4.8.6.3.5 Swing Outward	173
4.8.6.3.6 Absence of Local Building Codes	173
4.8.6.3.7 Unguarded Pools.....	174
4.8.6.3.8 Other Aquatic Venues.....	174
4.8.6.4 Indoor Aquatic Venues	174
4.8.6.4.1 Enclosure.....	174
4.8.6.4.2 Securable.....	174
4.8.6.4.3 Indoor and Outdoor Aquatic Venues	174
4.8.6.4.4 Wall Separating.....	174
4.8.6.5 Multiple Aquatic Venues	175
4.8.6.5.1 One Enclosure.....	175
4.8.6.5.2 Wading Pools	175
4.8.7 Aquatic Venue Cleaning Systems	175
4.8.7.1 No Hazard	175
4.8.7.2 Common Cleaning Equipment.....	175
4.8.7.3 Integral Vacuum Systems	175
4.8.7.4 GFCI Power	175
4.8.7.5	175
Low Voltage.....	175
4.8.7.6 GFCI Connection.....	176
4.9 Filter/Equipment Room	176
4.9.1 Equipment Room	176
4.9.1.1 General Requirements.....	176
4.9.1.1.1 Nonabsorbent Material.....	176
4.9.1.1.2 Floor Slope.....	176
4.9.1.1.3 Opening.....	176
4.9.1.1.4 Hose Bibb.....	176
4.9.1.2 Construction.....	176
4.9.1.2.1 Size.....	176
4.9.1.2.2 Lighting.....	177
4.9.1.3 Electrical	177
4.9.1.3.1 Conform to NEC	177
4.9.1.3.2 Conform to NRTL.....	177
4.9.1.4 Ventilation.....	177
4.9.1.4.1 Code Conformance	177
4.9.1.5 Markings	177
4.9.1.5.1 Piping Identified.....	177
4.9.1.5.2 Piping Marked.....	177

4.9.1.5.3	Valves Identified.....	178
4.9.1.6	Equipment Rooms Containing Combustion Equipment [N/A]	178
4.9.1.7	Separation from Chemical Storage Spaces	178
4.9.1.7.1	Equipment.....	178
4.9.1.7.2	Doors and Openings.....	178
4.9.1.7.3	Indoor Aquatic Facility Access.....	179
4.9.1.8	Other Equipment Room Guidance.....	180
4.9.1.8.1	Access Space.....	180
4.9.1.8.2	Adequate Space.....	181
4.9.1.8.3	Minimize Hazards.....	181
4.9.1.8.4	Refrigeration Equipment.....	181
4.9.2	Chemical Storage Spaces.....	182
4.9.2.1	Outdoor / Indoor Storage	182
4.9.2.1.1	Stored Outdoors	182
4.9.2.1.2	Minimize Vapors	182
4.9.2.1.3	Dedicated Space.....	182
4.9.2.1.	.....	182
4	Eyewash.....	182
4.9.2.2	Construction.....	182
4.9.2.2.1	Foreseeable Hazards	182
4.9.2.2.2	Protected	183
4.9.2.2.3	Floor.....	183
4.9.2.2.4	Minimize Fumes	183
4.9.2.2.5	Surfaces.....	183
4.9.2.2.6	No Openings	183
4.9.2.3	Exterior Chemical Storage Spaces.....	183
4.9.2.3.1	Outdoor Equipment.....	183
4.9.2.3.2	Fencing.....	183
4.9.2.3.3	Gate.....	183
4.9.2.4	Chemical Storage Space Doors.....	183
4.9.2.4.1	Signage.....	183
4.9.2.4.2	Emergency Egress.....	184
4.9.2.4.3	Interior Door	184
4.9.2.4.4	Equipment Space	184
4.9.2.4.5	Interior Opening.....	184
4.9.2.5	Interior Chemical Storage Spaces.....	185
4.9.2.5.1	No Air Movement.....	185
4.9.2.5.2	Electrical Conduit System.....	185
4.9.2.6	Air Ducts in Interior Chemical Storage Spaces	186
4.9.2.6.1	No Air Movement.....	186
4.9.2.6.2	Chemical Storage.....	186
4.9.2.7	Pipes and Tubes in Interior Chemical Storage Spaces.....	187
4.9.2.7.1	Not Enter.....	187
4.9.2.7.2	Devices.....	187
4.9.2.7.3	Wall Penetrations.....	187
4.9.2.8	Combustion Equipment in Interior Chemical Storage Spaces.....	188
4.9.2.8.1	Installed.....	188
4.9.2.9	Electrical Equipment in Chemical Storage Spaces.....	188

4.9.2.10	Ozone Rooms.....	188
4.9.2.10.1	Only Ozone Equipment.....	188
4.9.2.10.2	Emergency Ventilation	188
4.9.2.10.3	Below Grade	189
4.9.2.10.4	Signage.....	189
4.9.2.10.5	Alarm System.....	189
4.9.2.11	Gaseous Chlorination Space	190
4.9.2.11.1	Existing Facilities.....	190
4.9.2.11.2	Adequate Size	190
4.9.2.11.3	Secure Tanks.....	190
4.9.2.11.4	Not Below Grade	190
4.9.2.11.5	Compressed-Chlorine Gas	190
4.9.2.11.6	Entry Door	190
4.9.2.11.7	Inspection Window	190
4.9.2.11.8	Ventilation.....	190
4.9.2.12	Windows in Chemical Storage Spaces	191
4.9.2.12.1	Not Required.....	191
4.9.2.12.2	Requirements	191
4.9.2.12.3	Exterior Window.....	191
4.9.2.13	Sealing and Blocking Materials.....	192
4.9.2.13.1	Minimize Leakage	192
4.9.2.13.2	Compatible.....	192
4.9.2.13.3	Fire Rating	192
4.10	Hygiene Facilities.....	192
4.10.1	General.....	192
4.10.1.1	Required at Adoption.....	192
4.10.1.2	Minimum to Provide.....	192
4.10.1.3	Construction.....	192
4.10.1.4	Minimum Toilets, Urinals, and Other Fixtures.....	193
4.10.1.5	Theoretical Peak Occupancy.....	193
4.10.2	Location	193
4.10.2.1	Distance.....	193
4.10.2.2	Children Less than Five Years of Age.....	193
4.10.3	Design and Construction	193
4.10.3.1	Floors	193
4.10.3.2	Floor Base	193
4.10.3.3	Floor Drains	193
4.10.3.3.1	Opening Grill Covers.....	194
4.10.3.3.2	Sloped to Drain	194
4.10.3.4	Partitions and Enclosures.....	194
4.10.3.5	Hose Bibb.....	194
4.10.4	Plumbing Fixture Requirements	194
4.10.4.1	General.....	194
4.10.4.1.1	Protected	194
4.10.4.1.2	Easily Cleaned	194
4.10.4.1.3	Toilet Counts.....	194
4.10.4.1.4	Hand Wash Sink	194

4.10.4.2	Cleansing Showers.....	194
4.10.4.2.1	Count.....	194
4.10.4.2.2	Distributed.....	195
4.10.4.2.3	.....	195
	Location	195
4.10.4.2.4	Enclosed.....	195
4.10.4.2.5	Soap Dispenser.....	195
4.10.4.2.6	Exemption	195
4.10.4.3	Rinse Showers.....	195
4.10.4.3.1	Minimum and Location.....	195
4.10.4.3.2	Temperature	196
4.10.4.3.3	Floor Sloped.....	196
4.10.4.3.4	Large Aquatic Facilities.....	196
4.10.4.3.5	Beach Entry.....	196
4.10.4.3.6	Lazy River.....	196
4.10.4.3.7	Waterslide	196
4.10.4.4	All Showers.....	196
4.10.4.5	Diaper-Changing Stations.....	196
4.10.4.5.1	Each Facility	196
4.10.4.5.2	Conform	197
4.10.4.5.3	Unisex	197
4.10.4.5.4	Trash Can.....	197
4.10.4.5.5	Disinfecting Surface.....	197
4.10.4.6	Non-Plumbing Fixture Requirements	197
4.10.4.6.1	Easy to Clean	197
4.10.4.6.2	Glass.....	197
4.10.4.6.3	Mirrors	197
4.10.4.6.4	Lockers.....	197
4.10.4.6.5	Soap Dispensers.....	198
4.10.4.6.6	Dryers / Paper Towels.....	198
4.10.4.6.7	Toilet Paper Dispensers	198
4.10.4.6.8	Female Facilities	198
4.10.4.6.9	Trash Can.....	198
4.10.5	Provision of Suits, Towels, and Shared Equipment.....	198
4.10.5.1	Adequate Space.....	198
4.10.6	Foot Baths.....	198
4.10.6.1	Prohibited.....	198
4.10.7	Sharps.....	199
4.10.7.1	Container.....	199
4.11	Water Supply/ Wastewater Disposal.....	199
4.11.1	Water Supply.....	199
4.11.1.1	Public Water System.....	199
4.11.1.1.1	Other Sources.....	199
4.11.1.1.2	Condensate / Reclaimed Water.....	199
4.11.1.2	Sufficient Capacity.....	199
4.11.1.2.1	Refill Pool	199
4.11.2	Fill Spout.....	199

4.11.2.1	Hazard	199
4.11.2.2	Shielded.....	200
4.11.2.3	Open End	200
4.11.2.4	Air Gap.....	200
4.11.3	Cross-Connection Control.....	200
4.11.3.1	Protected	200
4.11.4	Deck Drains and Rinse Showers.....	200
4.11.4.1	Sloped Walkway	200
4.11.4.2	Discharge	200
4.11.4.3	Area or Linear	200
4.11.4.4	Rinse Showers.....	200
4.11.5	Sanitary Wastes.....	201
4.11.5.1	Discharged	201
4.11.5.2	On-Site Sewer System	201
4.11.6	Pool Wastewater.....	201
4.11.6.1	Discharged	201
4.11.6.1.1	Storm Water Systems and Surface Waters	201
4.11.6.1.2	Recovery and Reuse.....	201
4.11.6.2	Ground Surface	201
4.11.6.3	Capacity	201
4.11.6.4	Separation Tank for Precoat Media Filters	201
4.11.6.4.1	Discharged	201
4.12	Specific Venues.....	202
4.12.1	Spas.....	202
4.12.1.1	Additional Provisions.....	202
4.12.1.2	Maximum Water Depth	202
4.12.1.2.1	Exercise Spas	202
4.12.1.2.2	Seating.....	202
4.12.1.3	Handholds	202
4.12.1.3.1	Options.....	202
4.12.1.4	Stairs	202
4.12.1.4.1	Handrail.....	202
4.12.1.4.2	Seating.....	202
4.12.1.4.3	Approach Steps	202
4.12.1.5	Perimeter Deck.....	203
4.12.1.5.1	Lower Ratio	203
4.12.1.5.2	Coping.....	203
4.12.1.5.3	Recessed.....	203
4.12.1.5.4	Elevated Spas	203
4.12.1.5.5	Minimum Distance.....	203
4.12.1.6	Depth Markers	203
4.12.1.7	Temperature	203
4.12.1.8	Drain	203
4.12.1.9	Air Induction System	203
4.12.1.9.1	Intake.....	203
4.12.1.10	Timers	203
4.12.1.11	Emergency Shutoff	204

4.12.2 Waterslides and Landing Pools	204
4.12.2.1 Design and Construction.....	204
4.12.2.1.1 Additional Provisions.....	204
4.12.2.1.2 Recognized Standards.....	204
4.12.2.2 Flumes.....	205
4.12.2.2.1 Surfaces.....	205
4.12.2.2.....	205
Dips.....	205
4.12.2.3 Flume Exits	205
4.12.2.3.1 Landing Pool.....	205
4.12.2.3.2 Intersection.....	205
4.12.2.4 Exit into Landing Pools	206
4.12.2.4.1 Water Level.....	206
4.12.2.4.2 Perpendicular	206
4.12.2.4.3 Exit System	206
4.12.2.4.4 Flume Exits	206
4.12.2.4.5 Point of Exit.....	206
4.12.2.5 Landing Pools.....	206
4.12.2.5.1 Steps.....	206
4.12.2.5.2 Landing Area	206
4.12.2.6 Decks.....	207
4.12.2.7 Means of Access.....	207
4.12.2.8 Slide Runouts	207
4.12.2.8.1 Egress.....	207
4.12.2.8.2 Designed	207
4.12.2.9 Drop Slides.....	207
4.12.2.9.1 Landing Area	207
4.12.2.9.2 Area Clearance.....	207
4.12.2.9.3 Steps.....	207
4.12.2.9.4 Water Depth.....	207
4.12.2.9.5 Manufacturer's Recommendation.....	207
4.12.2.10 Pool Slides	207
4.12.2.10.1 Designed for Safety.....	207
4.12.2.....	208
Non-Toxic.....	208
4.12.2.10.3.....	208
Water Depth.....	208
4.12.2.10.4 Pool Edge.....	208
4.12.2.11 Signage.....	209
4.12.3 Wave Pools.....	209
4.12.3.1 General.....	209
4.12.3.1.1 Additional Provisions.....	209
4.12.3.2 Access	209
4.12.3.2.1 Access Point.....	209
4.12.3.2.2 Perimeter Decks	209
4.12.3.2.3 Handholds	209
4.12.3.2.4 Steps and Handrails.....	210
4.12.3.2.5 Ladders.....	210

4.12.3.2.6	Float Line	210
4.12.3.3.1	Life Jackets	210
4.12.3.3.2	Shut-Off Switch	210
4.12.3.3.3	No Diving Sign	211
4.12.3.3.4	Caution Signs	211
4.12.4	Therapy Pools.....	211
4.12.4.1	Additional Provisions.....	211
4.12.4.2	Slope	211
4.12.4.2.1	Break Points	211
4.12.4.3	Hydrotherapy	211
4.12.4.4	Special Equipment	211
4.12.5	Lazy Rivers.....	211
4.12.5.1	General.....	211
4.12.5.1.1	Additional Provisions.....	211
4.12.5.1.2	Protrusions	211
4.12.5.2	Access and Egress	212
4.12.5.2.1	Means.....	212
4.12.5.2.2	Handhold.....	212
4.12.5.2.3	Deck.....	212
4.12.5.2.4	Bridges	212
4.12.6	Moveable Floors.....	212
4.12.6.1	General.....	212
4.12.6.1.1	Additional Provisions.....	212
4.12.6.1.2	Water Treatment	212
4.12.6.1.3	Underneath.....	212
4.12.6.2	Slip Resistance	213
4.12.6.3	Safety	213
4.12.6.3.1	Not Continuous	213
4.12.6.3.2	Underside	213
4.12.6.3.3	Entrapment.....	213
4.12.6.3.4	Hydraulic Fluid	213
4.12.6.4	Movement	213
4.12.6.4.1	Speed.....	213
4.12.6.4.2	Use	213
4.12.6.5	Water Depth and Markings.....	213
4.12.6.5.1	Displayed	213
4.12.6.5.2	Warning Markings	213
4.12.7	Bulkheads.....	214
4.12.7.1	Additional Provisions.....	214
4.12.7.2	Entrapment.....	214
4.12.7.3	Placement.....	214
4.12.7.4	Fixed	214
4.12.7.5	Gap.....	214
4.12.7.6	Handhold.....	214
4.12.7.7	Entrances and Exits.....	214
4.12.7.8	Guard Railings	214
4.12.7.9	Width.....	214
4.12.7.9.1	Starting Platforms	214

4.12.7.10 Bulkhead Travel.....	215
4.12.8 Interactive Water Play Venues.....	215
4.12.8.1 Additional Provisions.....	215
4.12.8.2 Surface	215
4.12.8.2.1 Manufactured Surfacing.....	215
4.12.8.3 Sloped	215
4.12.8.3.1 Adjacent Areas.....	215
4.12.8.3.2 Water Collection	215
4.12.8.4 Drains.....	215
4.12.8.4.1 Gravity	215
4.12.8.4.2 Direct Suction Outlets.....	216
4.12.8.5 Grate Openings	216
4.12.8.5.1 Tools	216
4.12.8.6 Treatment Tank.....	216
4.12.8.6.1 Completely Drain.....	216
4.12.8.6.2 Access Hatch.....	216
4.12.8.7 Deck Area	216
4.12.8.7.1 Deck Surface.....	216
4.12.8.7.2 Protected From Runoff	216
4.12.8.8 Barrier	216
4.12.8.9 Enclosures	217
4.12.8.10 Hazard.....	217
4.12.8.11 Maximum Velocity	217
4.12.8.12 Signage.....	217
4.12.8.13 NEC Requirements	217
4.12.9 Wading Pools.....	217
4.12.9.1 Additional Provisions.....	217
4.12.9.2 Barrier	217
4.12.9.2.1 Complete Enclosure.....	217
4.12.9.2.2 Shallow Water.....	217
5.0 Facility Operation and Maintenance.....	218
5.1 Operating Permits	218
5.1.1 Owner Responsibilities	218
5.1.1.1 Permit to Operate Required	218
5.1.1.2 Separate.....	218
5.1.1.3 Prior to Issuance.....	218
5.1.1.4 Permit Details.....	218
5.1.1.5 Permit Expiration	219
5.1.1.6 Permit Renewal.....	219
5.1.1.7 Permit Denial	219
5.1.1.8 Owner Responsibilities	219
5.1.2 Operating Permits.....	219
5.1.2.1 Permit Location.....	219
5.1.2.2 Operating Without a Permit.....	219
5.1.2.3 Required Closure	219
5.2 Inspections	219

5.2.1	Preoperational Inspections.....	219
5.2.1.1	Terms of Operation	219
5.2.2	Exemptions	220
5.2.2.1	Applying for Exemption	220
5.2.2.2	Change in Exemption Status	220
5.2.3	Variances	220
5.2.3.1	Variance Authority.....	220
5.2.3.2	Applying for a Variance.....	220
5.2.3.2.1	Application Components	220
5.2.3.3	220	
	Revoked	220
5.2.3.4	Not Transferable	221
5.3	Equipment Standards [N/A]	221
5.4	Aquatic Facility and Venue Operation and Maintenance.....	221
5.4.1	Closure and Reopening.....	221
5.4.1.1	Closure	221
	If.....	221
5.4.1.1.1	Aquatic Venues With a Barrier.....	221
	The water	221
5.4.1.1.2	Aquatic Venues Without a Barrier but Open to the Public.....	221
	Where the.....	221
5.4.1.1.3	Aquatic Venues Without a Barrier and Closed to the Public.....	222
5.4.1.2	Reopening	222
5.4.2	Preventive Maintenance Plan	222
5.4.2.1	Written Plan	222
5.4.2.1.1	Preventive Maintenance Plan Available	222
5.4.2.1.2	Contents	222
5.4.2.2	Facility Documentation.....	222
5.4.2.2.1	Original Plans and Specifications Available.....	222
5.4.2.2.2	Equipment Inventory	222
5.4.2.2.3	Inventory Details.....	223
5.4.2.2.4	Equipment Manuals	223
5.4.3	General Operations [N/A]	223
5.5	Aquatic Venue Structure	223
5.5.1	Shape [N/A].....	223
5.5.2	Access Ladders [N/A]	223
5.5.3	Color and Finish [N/A]	223
5.5.4	Walls [N/A]	223
5.5.5	Depth Markings	223
5.5.5.1	Depth Markers	223
5.5.5.2	No Diving Markers	223
5.5.6	Pool Shell Maintenance	223
5.5.6.1	Cracking.....	223
5.5.6.1.1	Repaired.....	223
5.5.6.1.2	Document Cracks.....	224
5.5.6.1.3	Sharp Edges	224

5.6	Indoor / Outdoor Environment	224
5.6.1	Lighting.....	224
5.6.1.1	Lighting Maintained.....	224
5.6.1.1.1	Light Levels	224
5.6.1.1.2	Main Drain Visible	224
5.6.1.1.3	Underwater Lighting	224
5.6.1.1.4	Cracked Lenses	224
5.6.1.1.5	Intact Lenses	225
5.6.1.2	Glare.....	225
5.6.1.2.1	Assessments	225
5.6.1.2.2	Reduction	225
5.6.1.3	Night Swimming.....	225
5.6.1.3.1	Hours.....	225
5.6.1.4	.....	225
	Emergency Lighting.....	225
5.6.2	Indoor Aquatic Facility Ventilation	226
5.6.2.1	Purpose.....	226
5.6.2.2	Original Characteristics	226
5.6.2.3	Indoor Facility Areas	226
5.6.2.4	Ventilation Procedures.....	226
5.6.2.4.1	System Operation.....	226
5.6.2.5	Manuals/Commissioning Reports.....	226
5.6.2.6	Ventilation Monitoring	227
5.6.2.7	Air Filter Changing	227
5.6.2.8	Combined Chlorine Reduction	227
5.6.2.9	Building Purge Plan	227
5.6.2.10	Records	227
5.6.3	Electrical	227
5.6.3.1	Electrical Repairs.....	227
5.6.3.1.1	Local Codes	227
5.6.3.1.2	Immediately Repaired.....	227
5.6.3.1.3	Wiring	227
5.6.3.2	Electrical Receptacles	228
5.6.3.2.1	New Receptacles.....	228
5.6.3.2.2	Repairs	228
5.6.3.2.3	Replacement.....	228
5.6.3.2.4	Substitutions.....	228
5.6.3.3	Ground-Fault Circuit Interrupter.....	228
5.6.3.3.1	Manufacturer's Recommendations	228
5.6.3.3.2	Permanent Facilities.....	228
5.6.3.3.3	Testing.....	228
5.6.3.4	Grounding	228
5.6.3.4.1	Maintenance and Repair	228
5.6.3.4.2	Grounding Conductors.....	229
5.6.3.4.3	Damaged Conductors.....	229
5.6.3.4.4	Damaged Conductor Repair	229
5.6.3.4.5	Public Access.....	229
5.6.3.4.6	Venue Closure.....	229

5.6.3.5	Bonding.....	229
5.6.3.5.1	Local Codes	229
5.6.3.5.2	Bonding Conductors	229
5.6.3.5.3	Disconnected Conductors	229
5.6.3.5.4	Removable Covers.....	229
5.6.3.5.5	Scheduled Maintenance	229
5.6.3.5.6	Corrosion.....	230
5.6.3.5.7	Continuity	230
5.6.3.6	Extension Cords.....	230
5.6.3.6.1	Temporary Cords and Connectors	230
5.6.3.6.2	Minimum Distance from Water	230
5.6.3.6.3	Exception	230
5.6.3.6.4	GFCI Protection.....	230
5.6.3.6.5	Local Code.....	230
5.6.3.6.6	Compliance	230
5.6.3.7	Portable Electric Devices.....	230
5.6.3.8	Communication Devices and Dispatch Systems.....	231
5.6.4	Facility Heating	231
5.6.4.1	Facility Heating.....	231
5.6.4.1.1	Maintenance and Repair	231
5.6.4.1.2	Defects	231
5.6.4.1.3	Temperature	231
5.6.4.1.4	Combustion Device.....	231
5.6.4.2	Water Heating.....	231
5.6.5	First Aid Room [N/A]	231
5.6.6	Emergency Exit	231
5.6.6.1	Exit Routes.....	231
5.6.7	Plumbing.....	232
5.6.7.1	Water Supply	232
5.6.7.1.1	Water Pressure	232
5.6.7.1.2	Availability	232
5.6.7.1.3	Cross-Connection Control	232
5.6.7.2	Drinking Fountains	232
5.6.7.2.1	Good Repair.....	232
5.6.7.2.2	Clean	232
5.6.7.2.3	Catch Basin	232
5.6.7.2.4	Contamination.....	232
5.6.7.2.5	Water Pressure	232
5.6.7.3	Waste Water.....	232
5.6.7.3.1	Waste Water Disposal.....	232
5.6.7.3.2	Drainage.....	232
5.6.7.3.3	.....	232
	Drain Line.....	233
5.6.7.3.4	No Standing Water.....	233
5.6.7.4	Water Replenishment.....	233
5.6.7.4.1	Volume.....	233
5.6.7.4.2	Discharged	233
5.6.7.4.3	Multi-System Facilities.....	233

5.6.8	Solid Waste	233
5.6.8.1	Storage Receptacles	233
5.6.8.1.1	Good Repair and Clean	233
5.6.8.1.2	.....	233
	Areas	234
5.6.8.2	Disposal.....	234
5.6.8.2.1	Frequency.....	234
5.6.8.2.2	Local Code Compliance.....	234
5.6.9	Decks	234
5.6.9.1	Food Preparation and Consumption.....	234
5.6.9.1.1	Preparation	234
5.6.9.1.2	Eating and Drinking.....	234
5.6.9.2	Glass.....	234
5.6.9.2.1	Containers	234
5.6.9.2.2	Furniture.....	234
5.6.9.3	Deck Maintenance	234
5.6.9.3.1	Free From Obstructions	234
5.6.9.3.2	Diaper Changing	235
5.6.9.3.3	Vermin	235
5.6.9.3.4	Original Design.....	235
5.6.9.3.5	Standing Water.....	235
5.6.9.3.6	Drains.....	235
5.6.9.3.7	Wet Areas.....	235
5.6.9.3.8	Circulation Path	235
5.6.10	Aquatic Facility Maintenance.....	235
5.6.10.1	Diving Boards and Platforms.....	236
5.6.10.1.1	Slip-Resistant Finish	236
5.6.10.1.2	Loose Bolts and Cracked Boards.....	236
5.6.10.2	Steps and Guardrails	236
5.6.10.2.1	Immovable	236
5.6.10.2.2	Maintenance.....	236
5.6.10.3	Starting Platforms	236
5.6.10.4	Waterslides.....	236
5.6.10.4.1	Maintenance.....	236
5.6.10.4.2	Slime and Biofilm.....	236
5.6.10.4.3	Flow Rates	237
5.6.10.4.4	Disinfectant.....	237
5.6.10.5	Fencing and Barriers.....	237
5.6.10.5.1	Maintenance.....	237
5.6.10.5.2	Tested Daily.....	237
5.6.10.6	Aquatic Facility Cleaning	237
5.6.10.6.1	Cleaning.....	237
5.6.10.6.2	Vacuuming.....	237
5.6.10.6.3	Port Openings.....	237
5.7	Recirculation and Water Treatment.....	238
5.7.1	Recirculation Systems and Equipment.....	238
5.7.1.1	General.....	238

5.7.1.1.1	Continuous Operation	238
5.7.1.1.2	Flow	238
5.7.1.1.3	Gutter / Skimmer Pools.....	238
5.7.1.2	Combined Venue Treatment.....	238
5.7.1.3	Inlets.....	239
5.7.1.4	Surface Skimming Devices.....	239
5.7.1.4.1	Perimeter Overflow.....	239
5.7.1.4.2	Automatic Fill System	239
5.7.1.4.3	Skimmer Water Levels	239
5.7.1.4.4	Flow	239
5.7.1.4.5	Strainer Baskets	239
5.7.1.4.6	Weirs.....	239
5.7.1.4.7	Flotation Test	239
5.7.1.5	Submerged Drains/Suction Outlet Covers or Gratings.....	239
5.7.1.5.1	Replaced.....	239
5.7.1.5.2	Documentation.....	240
5.7.1.6	Piping [N/A].....	240
5.7.1.7	Strainers & Pumps	240
5.7.1.8	Flow Meters	240
5.7.1.9	Flow Rates / Turnovers.....	240
5.7.1.9.1	New Construction or Substantially Altered Venues	240
5.7.1.9.2	Construction Before Adoption of this Code	240
5.7.2	Filtration	240
5.7.2.1	Granular Media Filters.....	241
5.7.2.1.1	Filtration Rates.....	241
5.7.2.1.2	Backwashing Rates	241
5.7.2.1.3	Clear Water	241
5.7.2.1.4	Backwashing Frequency	241
5.7.2.1.5	Filter Media Inspections	242
5.7.2.1.6	Vacuum Sand Filters.....	242
5.7.2.1.7	Filtration Enhancing Products.....	242
5.7.2.2	Precoat Filters	242
5.7.2.2.1	Appropriate	242
5.7.2.2.2	Return to the Pool	242
5.7.2.2.3	Operation.....	243
5.7.2.2.4	Cleaning	243
5.7.2.2.5	Continuous Feed Equipment.....	243
5.7.2.2.6	Bumping.....	243
5.7.2.2.7	Filter Media.....	243
5.7.2.3	Cartridge Filters	244
5.7.2.3.1	NSF Standards	244
5.7.2.3.2	Filtration Rates.....	244
5.7.2.3.3	Filter Elements.....	244
5.7.2.3.4	Spare Cartridge	246
5.7.3	Disinfection and pH Control.....	246
5.7.3.1	Primary Disinfectants.....	246
5.7.3.1.1	Chlorine (Hypochlorites).....	246
5.7.3.1.2	Bromine.....	247

5.7.3.1.3	Stabilizers.....	247
5.7.3.1.4	Compressed Chlorine Gas.....	247
5.7.3.1.5	Salt Electrolytic Chlorine Generators, Brine Electrolytic Chlorine or Bromine Generators	248
5.7.3.2	Secondary or Supplemental Treatment Systems.....	249
5.7.3.2.1	Ultraviolet Light.....	249
5.7.3.2.2	Ozone	249
5.7.3.2.3	Copper / Silver Ions	250
5.7.3.3	Other Sanitizers, Disinfectants, or Chemicals	250
5.7.3.3.1	Chlorine Dioxide.....	250
5.7.3.3.2	Clarifiers, Flocculants, Defoamers	251
5.7.3.4	pH.....	251
5.7.3.4.1	pH levels	251
5.7.3.4.2	Approved Substances.....	251
5.7.3.5	Feed Equipment	251
5.7.3.5.1	Acceptable Chemical Delivery	251
5.7.3.5.2	Chemical Feeders.....	251
5.7.3.5.3	Dry Chemical Feeders.....	251
5.7.3.5.4	Venturi Inlet.....	252
5.7.3.5.5	Erosion Feeders.....	252
5.7.3.5.6	Liquid Solution Feeders.....	252
5.7.3.5.7	Checked Daily.....	252
5.7.3.5.8	Gas Feed Systems	252
5.7.3.5.9	Carbon Dioxide.....	253
5.7.3.6	Testing for Water Circulation and Quality	253
5.7.3.6.1	Available	253
5.7.3.6.2	Store	253
5.7.3.6.3	Temperature	253
5.7.3.6.4	Calibration.....	253
5.7.3.7	Automated Controllers and Equipment Monitoring	253
5.7.3.7.1	Use of Controller.....	253
5.7.3.7.2	Sampling	254
5.7.3.7.3	Monitor	254
5.7.3.7.4	Activities	254
5.7.3.7.5	Replacement Parts.....	254
5.7.3.7.6	Calibration.....	254
5.7.3.7.7	Ozone System	254
5.7.3.7.8	UV Systems	255
5.7.3.7.9	UV Alarm Testing and Maintenance	256
5.7.4	Water Sample Collection and Testing.....	257
5.7.4.1	Sample Collection.....	257
5.7.4.1.1	Same Volume.....	257
5.7.4.1.2	No Port.....	258
5.7.4.2	Routine Samples	258
5.7.4.2.1	Midday Collection	258
5.7.4.2.2	Compared.....	258
5.7.4.3	Bulk Water Sample	258
5.7.4.3.1	Obtain Sample.....	258

A	258
A	258
5.7.4.3.2 Rotate	258
5.7.4.3.3 Deepest Area.....	258
5.7.4.4 Aquatic Venue Water Chemical Balance	259
5.7.4.4.1 Total Alkalinity Levels	259
5.7.4.4.2 Combined Chlorine (Chloramines).....	259
5.7.4.4.3 Calcium Hardness	259
4 Algaecides.....	259
5.7.4.5 Source (Fill) Water	259
5.7.4.6 Water Balance for Aquatic Venues.....	259
AQUATIC VENUE	259
5.7.4.7 Water Temperature	260
5.7.4.7.1 Minimize Risk and Protect Safety	260
5.7.4.7.2 Maximum Temperature	260
5.7.5 Water Quality Chemical Testing Frequency.....	260
5.7.5.1 Chemical Levels.....	260
5.7.5.2 Manual Disinfectant Feed System	260
5.7.5.3 Automatic Disinfectant Feed System.....	260
5.7.5.4 In-Line ORP Readings.....	260
5.7.5.5 Total Alkalinity	261
5.7.5.6 Calcium Hardness	261
5.7.5.7 Cyanuric Acid	261
5.7.5.8 Saturation Index.....	261
5.7.5.8.1 Tested.....	261
5.7.5.8.2 Stabilized Chlorine.....	261
5.7.5.9 Total Dissolved Solids	261
5.7.5.10 Water Temperature	261
5.7.5.11 Salt	261
5.7. 261	
5.12 Copper/Silver Systems.....	261
5.7.6 Water Clarity	261
5.7.6.1 Water Clarity.....	261
5.7.6.1.1 Observation	262
5.7.6.1.2 Pools Over Ten Feet Deep	262
5.7.6.1.3 No Marker Tile	262
5.7.6.2 Visible.....	262
5.7.6.2.1 Spas.....	262
5.8 Decks and Equipment.....	262
5.8.1 Spectator Areas	262
5.8.1.1 Cross-Connection Control	262
5.8.1.1.1 Deck Drains	262
5.8.1.2 Materials / Slip Resistance.....	263
5.8.1.2.1 Clean and Good Repair.....	263
5.8.1.2.2 Risk Management	263
5.8.1.2.3 Tripping Hazards	263
5.8.1.3 Deck Size/Width	263

5.8.2	Diving Boards and Platforms [N/A]	263
5.8.3	Starting Blocks	263
5.8.3.1	Competitive Training and Competition	263
5.8.3.1.1	Supervision	263
5.8.3.1.2	Removed or Restricted.....	263
5.8.4	Pool Slides [N/A]	263
5.8.5	Lifeguard-and Safety Related Equipment	263
5.8.5.1	Equipment Inspection and Maintenance.....	263
5.8.5.2	Safety Equipment Required at All Aquatic Facilities.....	264
5.8.5.2.1	Emergency Communication Equipment.....	264
5.8.5.2.2	First Aid Equipment.....	264
5.8.5.2.3	Signage.....	264
5.8.5.3	Safety Equipment Required at Facilities with Lifeguards	265
5.8.5.3.1	UV Protection for Chairs and Stands.....	265
5.8.5.3.2	Spinal Injury Board.....	265
5.8.5.3.3	Rescue Tube Immediately Available	265
5.8.5.3.4	Rescue Tube on Person.....	265
5.8.5.3.5	Identifying Uniform	266
5.8.5.3.6	Signal Device	266
5.8.5.3.7	Sun Blocking Methods.....	266
5.8.5.3.8	Polarized Sunglasses.....	266
5.8.5.3.9	Personal Protective Equipment	266
5.8.5.3.10	Rescue Throwing Device	266
5.8.5.3.11	Reaching Pole	266
5.8.5.4	Safety Equipment and Signage Required at Facilities without Lifeguards	266
5.8.5.4.1	Throwing Device	266
5.8.5.4.2	Reaching Pole	267
5.8.5.4.3	CPR Posters	267
5.8.5.4.4	Imminent Hazard Sign.....	267
5.8.5.4.5	Additional Signage.....	267
5.8.6	Barriers and Enclosures	268
5.8.6.1	General Requirements.....	268
5.8.6.2	Construction Requirements (N/A).....	268
5.8.6.3	Gates and Doors.....	268
5.8.6.3.1	Self-Closing and Latching	268
5.9	Filter/Equipment Room	268
5.9.1	Chemical Storage	268
5.9.1.1	Local Codes	268
5.9.1.2	OSHA and EPA	268
5.9.1.3	Safety Data Sheets	268
5.9.1.4	Access Prevention.....	268
5.9.1.5	Protected	268
5.9.1.6	No Mixing.....	269
5.9.1.6.1	SDS Consulted.....	269
5.9.1.7	Ignition Sources	269
5.9.1.8	Smoking	269
5.9.1.9	Lighting.....	269

5.9.1.10	PPE.....	269
5.9.1.11	Storage	269
5.9.1.12	Single Container.....	269
5.9.1.13	Separate.....	269
5.9.1.13.1	Waiver.....	269
5.9.1.14	Warning Signs.....	270
5.9.2	Chemical Handling	270
5.9.2.1	Identity	270
5.9.2.1.1	Labeling	270
5.9.2.2	NSF Standard.....	270
5.9.2.3	Measuring Devices.....	270
5.9.2.3.1	Clean and Dry	270
5.9.2.4	Chemical Addition Methods.....	270
5.9.2.4.1	Automatically Introduced	270
5.9.2.4.2	Safety Requirements	270
5.10	Hygiene Facilities.....	271
5.10.1	General [N/A]	271
5.10.2	Location [N/A].....	271
5.10.3	Bathroom Design [N/A]	271
5.10.4	Plumbing Fixture Requirements	271
5.10.4.1	General Requirements.....	271
5.10.4.1.1	Cleaned and Sanitized.....	271
5.10.4.1.2	Mold and Mildew.....	271
5.10.4.1.3	Hand Wash Station	271
5.10.4.2	Cleansing Showers.....	271
5.10.4.2.1	Cleaned and Sanitized.....	271
5.10.4.3	Rinse Showers.....	272
5.10.4.3.1	Cleaned	272
5.10.4.3.2	Easy Access	272
5.10.4.3.3	Not Blocked	272
5.10.4.3.4	No Soap.....	272
5.10.4.4	All Showers [N/A].....	272
5.10.4.5	Diaper-Changing Stations.....	272
5.10.4.5.1	Hand Wash Sink Installed and Operational	272
5.10.4.5.2	Cleaned	272
5.10.4.5.3	Disinfectant	272
5.10.4.5.4	Portable Hand Wash Station	273
5.10.4.6	Non-Plumbing Fixture Requirements	273
5.10.4.6.1	Paper Towels.....	273
5.10.4.6.2	Soap.....	273
5.10.4.6.3	Trash	273
5.10.4.6.4	Floor Coverings	273
5.10.4.7	Sharps.....	273
5.10.4.7.1	Biohazard Action Plan	273
5.10.4.7.2	Disposed.....	273
5.10.5	Provision of Suits, Towels, and Shared Equipment.....	274
5.10.5.1	Towels.....	274

5.10.5.1.1	.....	274
Suits	.....	274
5.10.5.2	Receptacles	274
5.10.5.3	Shared Equipment Cleaned and Sanitized	274
5.10.5.4	Other Equipment	274
5.10.5.5	Good Repair	274
5.10.5.6	Used Equipment.....	274
5.10.5.6.1	Receptacles	274
5.11	Water Supply / Wastewater Disposal [N/A]	275
5.12	Special Requirements for Specific Venues	275
5.12.1	Waterslides	275
5.12.1.1	Signage.....	275
5.12.2	Wave Pools.....	275
5.12.2.1	Life Jackets	275
5.12.3	Moveable Floors.....	275
5.12.3.1	Starting Platforms	275
5.12.3.2	Diving Boards	275
5.12.4	Bulkheads.....	275
5.12.4.1	Open Area	275
5.12.4.2	Bulkhead Travel.....	275
5.12.5	Interactive Water Play Aquatic Venues	275
5.12.5.1	Cracks	275
5.12.5.2	Cleaning	276
5.12.5.2.1	No Sanitary Sewer Drain Available.....	276
5.12.6	Wading Pools.....	276
5.12.7	Spas.....	276
5.12.7.1	Required Operation Time	276
5.12.7.2	Drainage and Replacement	276
5.12.7.2.1	Calculated	276
5.12.7.3	Scrubbed	276
6.0	<i>Policies and Management.....</i>	277
6.0.1	Staff Training	277
6.0.1.1	Storage and Handling.....	277
6.0.1.2	PPE Procedures	277
6.0.1.3	Spill Procedures	277
6.0.1.4	OSHA Requirements	277
6.0.1.5	Chemical and SDS Lists	277
6.0.1.6	Training Plan.....	277
6.0.1.6.1	Training Topics	277
6.0.1.7	Training Records.....	278
6.0.1.8	Body Fluid Exposure	278
6.0.1.9	Exposure Control Program	278
6.0.1.10	PPE Provided and Disposed	278
6.1	Qualified Operator Training	278
6.1.1	Qualified Operator Qualifications and Certification	278

6.1.1.1	Qualifications	278
6.1.1.2	Training Documentation	278
6.1.1.2.1	Certificate Available	278
6.1.1.2.2	Originals	278
6.1.2	Essential Topics in Qualified Operator Training Courses.....	278
6.1.2.1	Course Content.....	278
6.1.2.1.1	Water Disinfection	279
6.1.2.1.2	Water Chemistry	281
6.1.2.1.3	Mechanical Systems.....	284
6.1.2.1.4	Health and Safety	287
6.1.2.1.5	Operations	290
6.1.3	General Requirements for Operator Training Courses.....	293
6.1.3.1	Course Providers	293
6.1.3.1.1	Recognized Courses	293
6.1.3.1.2	Providers	293
6.1.3.2	Course Content.....	293
6.1.3.3	Course Length.....	294
6.1.3.4	Instructor Requirements.....	294
6.1.3.5	Final Exam	294
6.1.3.5.1	Final Exam Administration.....	294
6.1.3.6	Course Certificates	294
6.1.3.7	Continuing Education [N/A].....	295
6.1.3.8	Certificate Renewal.....	295
6.1.3.9	Certificate Suspension and Revocation	295
6.1.3.9.1	Evidence of Health Hazard	295
6.1.3.9.2	Evidence of Cheating.....	295
6.1.3.10	Additional Training or Testing	295
6.1.3.11	Certificate Recognition	295
6.1.3.12	Course Recognition.....	295
6.1.3.13	Length of Certificate Validity	295
6.2	Lifeguard Training.....	296
6.2.1	Lifeguard Qualifications	296
6.2.1.1	Course Content.....	296
6.2.1.1.1	Hazard Identification and Injury Prevention.....	296
6.2.1.1.2	Emergency Response Skill Set	296
6.2.1.1.3	.....	297
	Resuscitation	297
6.2.1.1.4	First Aid	297
6.2.1.1.5	Legal Issues.....	297
6.2.1.2	Lifeguard Training Delivery	297
6.2.1.2.1	Standardized and Comprehensive.....	297
6.2.1.2.2	Skills Practice.....	297
6.2.1.2.3	Shallow Water Training.....	298
6.2.1.2.4	Deep Water Training.....	298
6.2.1.2.5	Sufficient Time	298
6.2.1.2.6	Certified Instructors	298
6.2.1.2.7	Training Equipment	298

6.2.1.3	Competency and Certification	299
6.2.1.3.1	Proficiency	299
6.2.1.3.2	Requirements	299
6.2.1.3.3	Instructor Physically Present.....	299
6.2.1.3.4	Certifications.....	299
6.2.1.3.5	Number of Years.....	299
6.2.1.3.6	Documentation.....	300
6.2.1.3.7	Expired Certificate.....	300
6.2.1.3.8	Certificate Suspension and Revocation	300
6.2.2	Aquatic Supervisor Training	301
6.2.2.1	Lifeguard Supervisor Candidate Prerequisites.....	301
6.2.2.2	Lifeguard Supervisor Training Elements.....	301
6.2.2.3	Lifeguard Supervisor Training Delivery.....	301
6.2.2.3.1	Standardized and Comprehensive.....	301
6.2.2.3.2	Sufficient Time	301
6.2.2.3.3	Course Setting.....	301
6.2.2.3.4	Lifeguard Supervisor Course Instructor Certification	302
6.2.2.4	Competency and Certification	303
6.2.2.4.1	Lifeguard Supervisor Proficiency	303
6.2.2.4.2	Lifeguard Supervisor Certifications.....	303
6.3	Facility Staffing	303
6.3.1	Qualified Operator Requirements and Availability	303
6.3.1.1	On-Site Qualified Operator Requirements.....	303
6.3.1.1.1	At Adoption	303
6.3.1.1.2	Size and Use.....	303
6.3.1.1.3	Bathers and Management.....	303
6.3.1.1.4	Compliance History	303
6.3.1.2	Contracted Off-site Qualified Operators.....	304
6.3.1.2.1	Visit Documentation	304
6.3.1.2.2	Documentation Details.....	304
6.3.1.2.3	Visit Corrective Actions	304
6.3.1.2.4	Onsite Responsible Supervisor	304
6.3.1.2.5	Onsite Responsible Supervisor Duties.....	304
6.3.2	Aquatic Facilities Requiring Qualified Lifeguards.....	304
6.3.2.1	List of Aquatic Facilities Requiring Qualified Lifeguards	305
6.3.3	Safety Plan	305
6.3.3.1	Code Compliance Staff Plan.....	305
6.3.3.1.1	Zone of Patron Surveillance.....	306
6.3.3.1.2	Rotation Procedures	306
6.3.3.1.3	Alternation of Tasks.....	306
6.3.3.1.4	Supervision Protocols	306
6.3.3.2	Emergency Action Plan	307
6.3.3.2.1	Coordination of Response.....	307
6.3.3.3	Pre-Service Requirements.....	307
6.3.3.3.1	Safety Team EAP Training.....	307
6.3.3.3.2	Safety Team Skills Proficiency.....	307
6.3.3.3.3	Qualified Lifeguard Emergency Action Plan Training.....	308

6.3.3.3.4	Qualified Lifeguard Skills Proficiency	308
6.3.3.3.5	CPR / AED and First Aid Certificate.....	308
6.3.3.3.6	Documentation of Pre-Service Training	308
6.3.3.4	In-Service Training	309
6.3.3.4.1	Documentation of In-Service Training	309
6.3.3.4.2	In-Service Documentation	309
6.3.3.4.3	In-Service Training Plan	309
6.3.3.4.4	Maintain Certificates.....	309
6.3.3.4.5	Competency Demonstration.....	309
6.3.3.5	AHJ Authority to Approve Safety Plan	310
6.3.3.5.1	Safety Plan on File	310
6.3.3.5.2	Safety Plan Implemented	310
6.3.4	Staff Management.....	310
6.3.4.1	Staff Provided Prior to Aquatic Venue Use.....	310
6.3.4.2	Safety Team Responsibilities.....	310
6.3.4.3	Lifeguard Staff.....	311
6.3.4.3.1	Minimum Number of Lifeguards.....	311
6.3.4.3.2	Lifeguard Responsibilities	311
6.3.4.3.3	Shallow Water Certified Lifeguards	311
6.3.4.3.4	Direct Surveillance.....	311
6.3.4.3.5	Distractions	311
6.3.4.4	Supervisor Staff	312
6.3.4.4.1	Lifeguard Supervisor Required.....	312
6.3.4.4.2	Designated Supervisor	312
6.3.4.4.3	Lifeguard Supervisor	312
6.3.4.5	Emergency Response and Communications Plans	312
6.3.4.5.1	Emergency Response and Communication Plan	312
6.3.4.5.2	Emergency Action Plan	312
6.3.4.5.3	Annual Review and Update	313
6.3.4.5.4	Available for Inspection.....	313
6.3.4.5.5	Training Documentation	313
6.3.4.5.6	Components	313
6.3.4.5.7	Facility Evacuation Plan	313
6.3.4.5.8	Communication Plan.....	314
6.3.4.5.9	Inclement Weather Plan.....	314
6.3.4.6	Remote Monitoring Systems.....	314
6.3.4.6.1	Lifeguard-Based.....	314
6.3.4.6.2	Operator-Based	314
6.3.4.6.3	Training.....	314
6.3.4.7	Employee Illness and Injury Policy	315
6.3.4.7.1	Illness Policy	315
6.3.4.7.2	Open Wounds.....	315
6.4	Facility Management	315
6.4.1	Operations	315
6.4.1.1	Operations Manual.....	315
6.4.1.1.1	Develop.....	315
6.4.1.1.2	Include.....	315

6.4.1.2	.....	315
Operation Records	.....	315
6.4.1.2.1	Record Maintenance	316
6.4.1.2.2	Additional Documentation.....	316
6.4.1.3	Safety and Maintenance Inspection and Recordkeeping	316
6.4.1.3.1	Daily Inspection Items	316
6.4.1.3.2	Other Inspection Items.....	317
6.4.1.4	Illness and Injury Incident Reports	317
6.4.1.4.1	Incidents to Record	317
6.4.1.4.2	Info to Include.....	317
6.4.1.4.3	Notify the AHJ.....	318
6.4.1.4.4	Lifeguard Rescues.....	318
6.4.1.5	Chemical Inventory Log	318
6.4.1.5.1	Expiration Dates.....	318
6.4.1.6	Daily Water Monitoring and Testing Records.....	318
6.4.1.	.....	319
7	Staff Certifications on File.....	319
6.4.1.7.1	Multiple Facilities	319
6.4.1.8	Bodily Fluids Remediation Log.....	319
6.4.1.8.1	Contamination Incidents	319
6.4.1.8.2	Standard Operating Procedures.....	319
6.4.1.8.3	Required Information.....	319
6.4.2	Patron-Related Management Aspects.....	320
6.4.2.1	Bather Count	320
6.4.2.1.1	User Guidelines.....	320
6.4.2.1.2	Maximum Occupancy	320
6.4.2.2	Signage.....	320
6.4.2.2.1	Facility Rules	320
6.4.2.2.2	.....	320
Lettering	.....	320
6.4.2.2.3	Sign Messages.....	321
6.4.2.2.4	Hygiene Facility Signage.....	323
6.4.2.2.5	Diaper-Changing Station Signage.....	323
6.4.2.3	.....	323
Swimmer Empowerment Methods	.....	323
6.4.2.3.1	Public Information and Health Messaging	323
6.4.2.3.2	Post Inspection Results	323
6.5	Fecal/Vomit/Blood Contamination Response	324
6.5.1	Contamination Response Plan.....	324
6.5.1.1	Contamination Response Plan	324
6.5.1.2	Contamination Training.....	324
6.5.1.2.1	Minimum.....	324
6.5.1.2.2	Informed.....	324
6.5.1.3	Equipment and Supply Verification.....	324
6.5.1.4	Plan Review	324
6.5.1.5	Plan Availability	324
6.5.2	Aquatic Venue Water Contamination Response	325

6.5.2.1	Closure	325
6.5.2.1.1	Closure Includes.....	325
6.5.2.2	Physical Removal.....	325
6.5.2.2.1	Clean / Disinfect Net or Scoop	325
6.5.2.2.2	No Vacuum Cleaners	325
6.5.2.3	Treated	325
6.5.3	Aquatic Venue Water Contamination Disinfection	326
6.5.3.1	Formed-Stool Contamination.....	326
6.5.3.1.1	Pools Containing Chlorine Stabilizers	326
6.5.3.1.2	Measurement of Inactivation Time	326
6.5.3.2	Diarrheal-Stool Contamination	326
6.5.3.2.1	Pools Containing Chlorine Stabilizers	326
6.5.3.3	Vomit-Contamination	326
6.5.3.3.1	Pools Containing Chlorine Stabilizers	327
6.5.3.3.2	Measurement of the Inactivation Time	327
6.5.3.4	Blood-Contamination.....	327
6.5.3.4.1	Operators Choose Treatment Method.....	327
6.5.3.5	Procedures for Brominated Pools	327
6.5.3.5.1	Bromine Residual.....	327
6.5.4	Surface Contamination Cleaning and Disinfection	327
6.5.4.1	Limit Access	327
6.5.4.2	Clean Surface	327
6.5.4.3	Contaminant Removal and Disposal.....	328
6.5.4.4	Disinfect Surface.....	328
A	.....	328
6.5.4.5	Soak.....	328
6.5.4.6	Remove	328
6.6	AHJ Inspections.....	328
6.6.1	Inspection Process.....	328
6.6.1.1	Inspection Authority	328
6.6.1.2	Inspection Scope and Right	328
	Question.....	329
6.6.1.3	Based on Risk	329
6.6.1.4	Inspection Interference.....	329
6.6.2	Publication of Inspection Forms.....	329
6.6.2.1	Inspection Form Publication	329
6.6.3	.....	329
Imminent Health Hazards .....	.....	329
6.6.3.1	Violations Requiring Immediate Correction or Closure	329
6.6.3.1.1	Low pH Violations.....	330
6.6.3.1.2	High pH Violations	330
6.6.4	Enforcement	331
6.6.4.1	Placarding of Pool.....	331
6.6.4.2	Placard Location	331
6.6.4.2.1	State Authority	331
6.6.4.2.2	Tampering with Placard.....	331
6.6.4.3	Operator Follow-up.....	331

6.6.4.3.1	Correction of Violation	331
6.6.4.3.2	Hearing.....	331
6.6.4.4	Follow-up Inspection	331
6.6.4.4.1	Other Evidence of Correction	331
6.6.5	Enforcement Penalties	332
6.6.5.1	Liability and Jurisdiction	332
6.6.5.1.1	Failure to Comply	332
6.6.5.1.2	Civil Penalty.....	332
6.6.5	.....	332
.2	Continued Violation.....	332
6.6.5.3	Falsified Documents	332
6.6.5.4	Enforcement Process.....	332

1.0 Preface

1.1 Introduction

1.1.1 Rationale

~~In recent decades, public health practitioners have seen~~~~There has been~~ a dramatic increase in waterborne disease outbreaks associated with public disinfected AQUATIC FACILITIES (e.g. swimming pools, water parks, etc.) ~~in recent decades.~~ As a result, public health investigations have revealed that many diseases can be prevented by proper maintenance and water treatment and by more modern disease prevention practices. Drowning and falling, diving, chemical use, and suction injuries continue to be major public health injuries associated with public AQUATIC FACILITIES, particularly for young children. In this context, the health and safety at public AQUATIC FACILITIES is regulated by state and local jurisdictions since, in the United States, there is no federal regulatory authority responsible for these public AQUATIC FACILITIES. All public pool codes are developed, reviewed, and approved by state and/or local public health officials or legislatures. Consequently, there is no uniform national guidance informing the design, construction, operation, and maintenance of public swimming pools and other public disinfected AQUATIC FACILITIES. As a result, the code requirements for preventing and responding to recreational water illnesses (RWIs) and injuries can vary significantly among local and state agencies. State and local jurisdictions spend a great deal of time, personnel, and resources creating and updating their individual codes on a periodic basic.

1.1.2 Need for Further Guidance

Based on illness tracking data, outbreak reporting, and stakeholder feedback, CDC believed further prevention-oriented planning and action were needed. CDC worked with the Council of State and Territorial Epidemiologists to get agreement on the need for a national workshop to develop guidance for preventing future RWI outbreaks. This CSTE position statement was passed in ~~2004~~2005 and CDC was tasked with organizing the national workshop, ~~which was held in 2005.~~

1.1.3 Responsibility of User

This document does not address all safety or public health concerns, ~~if any,~~ associated with its use. It is the responsibility of the user of this document to establish appropriate health and safety practices and determine the applicability of regulatory limitations prior to each use.

1.1.4 Original Manufacturer Intent

In the absence of exceptions or further guidance, all fixtures and equipment shall be installed according to original manufacturer intent.

1.1.5 Local Jurisdiction

The MAHC refers to existing local ~~building~~ codes in the jurisdiction for specific needs. In the absence of existing local codes, the authority having jurisdiction should specify an appropriate code reference.

1.2 Recreational Water-Associated Illness Outbreaks and Injuries

1.2.1 RWI Outbreaks

Large numbers of recreational water-related outbreaks are documented annually, which is a significant increase over the past several decades.

1.2.2 Significance of *Cryptosporidium*

Cryptosporidium, ~~which~~ causes a ~~FECAL-ORALLY spread~~ diarrheal disease spread from one person to another or, at aquatic venues, by ingestion of fecally-contaminated water. This pathogen, is tolerant of CHLORINE and other halogen disinfectants. *Cryptosporidium* ~~and~~ has emerged as the leading cause of pool-associated outbreaks in the United States.

1.2.3 Drowning and Injuries

Drowning and falling, diving, pool chemical use, and suction injuries continue to be major public health injuries associated with aquatic ~~facilities~~venues. Drowning is a leading cause of injury death for young children and a leading cause of unintentional injury death for people of all ages.

1.2.4 Pool Chemical-Related Injuries

Pool chemical-related injuries occur regularly and can be prevented if pool chemicals are stored and used as recommended.

1.3 Model Aquatic Health Code

1.3.1 Background

All ~~POOL/AQUATIC FACILITY~~ CODES in the United States are reviewed and approved by state and/or local public health officials with no uniform national public health STANDARDS governing design, construction, operation, maintenance, policies, or management of public swimming pools and other public AQUATIC FACILITIES.

The effort to create the MAHC stems from a CDC-sponsored national workshop called "Recreational Water Illness Prevention at Disinfected Swimming Venues" that was convened on February 15-17, 2005, in Atlanta, Georgia. The workshop assembled persons from different disciplines working in state, local, and federal public health agencies, the aquatics ~~sector~~industry, and academia to discuss ways to minimize the spread of recreational water illnesses at disinfected AQUATIC FACILITIES~~swimming venues~~. The major recommendation from this workshop was that CDC lead a national partnership to create an open access model guidance document that helps local and

state agencies incorporate science and best-based practices into their swimming POOL CODES and programs without having to "recreate the wheel" each time they create or revise their POOL CODES. The attendees also recommended that this effort be all-encompassing so that it covered the spread of illness but also included drowning and injury prevention. Such an effort should increase the evidence base for AQUATIC FACILITY design, construction, ~~and~~ operation, and maintenance while reducing the time, personnel, and resources needed to create and regularly update or improve POOL CODES across the country.

Since 2007, CDC has been working with the public health sector, the aquatics sector, industry, and academic representatives from across the United States to create this guidance document. Although, the initial workshop was responding to the significant increases in infectious disease outbreaks at AQUATIC FACILITIES ~~swimming pools~~, the MAHC is a complete AQUATIC FACILITY guidance document with the goal of reducing the spread of infectious disease and occurrence of drowning, ~~and~~ injuries, and chemical exposures at public AQUATIC FACILITIES. Based on stakeholder feedback and recommendations, CDC agreed that public health improvements would be aided by development of an open access, a comprehensive, science-based, systematic, collaboratively developed guidance document based on science and best practices covering AQUATIC FACILITY design and construction, operation and maintenance, and policies and management to address existing, ~~and~~ emerging, and future public health threats.

1.3.2 MAHC Vision and Mission

The Model Aquatic Health Code's (MAHC) vision is "Healthy and Safe Aquatic Experiences for Everyone". The MAHC's mission is to incorporate science and best practices into provide guidance on how state and local officials can transform a typical health department pool program into a data-driven, knowledge-based, risk reduction effort to prevent disease and injuries and promote healthy recreational water experiences. The MAHC will provide local and state agencies with uniform guidelines and wording for ~~in~~ the areas of design and construction, operation and maintenance, and policies and management of swimming POOLS, SPAS and other public disinfected AQUATIC FACILITIES.

1.3.3 Science and Best Available Practice

The availability of the MAHC should provide state and local agencies with the best available guidance for protecting public health using the latest science and best practices so they can use it to create or update their swimming POOL CODES.

1.3.4 Process

The MAHC development process created comprehensive consensus risk reduction guidance for AQUATIC FACILITIES based upon national interaction and discussion. The development plan encompassed design, construction, alteration, replacement, operation, and management of these facilities. The MAHC is driven by scientific data and best ~~_~~practices ~~-based~~. It was developed by a process that included input from all

sectors and levels of public health, the aquatics sector~~aquatic industry~~, academia, and the general public. It was open for two 60-day public comment periods during the process. It is national and comprehensive in scope and the guidance can be used to write or update POOL CODES across the U.S.

1.3.5 Open Access

The MAHC is an open access document that any interested individual, agency, or organization can freely copy, adapt, or fully incorporate MAHC wording into their aquatic facility oversight documents. As a federal agency, CDC does not copyright this material.

1.3.6 Updating the MAHC

The MAHC will be updated on a continuing basis through an inclusive, transparent, all-stakeholder process. This was a recommendation from the original national workshop and is essential to ensure that the MAHC stays current with the latest science, industry advances, and public health findings. To support this recommendation, CDC has supported creation of the Conference for the Model Aquatic Health Code (CMAHC; www.cmahc.org), a 501(c)(3) non-profit organization, to facilitate collecting, assessing, and relaying national input on needed MAHC revisions back to CDC for final consideration for acceptance.

1.3.7 Authority

Regulatory agencies like state and local governments have the authority to regulate AQUATIC FACILITIES in their jurisdiction.

1.3.8 CDC Role

The MAHC is hosted by the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC), a Federal agency whose mission is “To promote health and quality of life by preventing and controlling disease, injury, and disability.” Furthermore, CDC has been involved in developing swimming pool-related guidance since the 1950s and officially tracking waterborne disease outbreaks associated with aquatic facility use since 1978~~1950’s~~.

1.3.87.1 Public Health Role

CDC is “the primary Federal agency for conducting and supporting public health activities in the United States”; however, CDC is~~they are~~ not a regulatory agency.

1.3.87.2 Model Guidance

The MAHC is intended to be open access guidance that state and local public health agencies can use to write or update their POOL CODES in part or in full as fits their jurisdiction’s needs. The CDC adopted this project because no other U.S. federal agency ~~has had~~ commission over public disinfected AQUATIC FACILITIES. Considering the CDC’s mission and historical interest in aquatics, this organization was the best qualified to lead a national consortia to create such a document.

1.4 Public Health and Consumer Expectations

1.4.1 Aquatics Sector Industry & Government Responsibility

Both the aquatics ~~sector~~industry and the government share the responsibility of offering AQUATIC FACILITIES that provide consumers and aquatics workers with safe and healthy recreational water experiences and job sites and that do not become sources for the spread of infectious diseases, ~~COMMUNICABLE disease or~~ outbreaks, or the cause of injuries. This shared responsibility extends to working to meet consumer expectations that AQUATIC FACILITIES are properly designed, constructed, operated, and maintained.

1.4.2 Swimmer Responsibility

The ~~PATRON~~consumer or BATHER shares a responsibility in maintaining a healthy swimming environment by practicing the CDC-recommended healthy swimming behaviors to improve hygiene and reduce the spread of disease ~~transmission~~. Consumers and BATHERS also share responsibility for using AQUATIC FACILITIES in a healthy and safe manner to reduce the incidence of injuries.

1.5 Advantages of Uniform Guidance

1.5.1 SectorIndustry Agreement

The aquatics ~~sector~~industry and public health officials recognize the value in uniform, consensus guidance created by multi-~~sector~~sectoral discussion and agreement – both for getting the best possible information and gaining sectorindustry acceptance. Since most public AQUATIC FACILITIES are already regulated, the MAHC is intended to be Uniform guidance to assist, strengthen, and streamline resource use by state and local code officials or legislatures that already regulate AQUATIC FACILITIES but need to regularly update and improve their AQUATIC FACILITY oversight and regulation. Uniform, consensus guidance using the latest science and best practices helps all public sectors, including businesses and consumers, resulting in the best product and experiences.

In addition, the MAHC's combination of performance-based and prescriptive recommendations gives AQUATIC FACILITIES freedom to use innovative approaches to achieve acceptable results. However, AQUATIC FACILITIES must ensure that these recommendations are still being met, whatever the approach may be, although innovation should be encouraged to achieve outlined performance-based requirements.

1.5.2 MAHC Provisions

The MAHC provides guidance on AQUATIC FACILITY design standards & construction, operation & maintenance, and policies & management that can be uniformly adopted for the aquatics sectorindustry.

The MAHC:

- Is the collective result of the efforts and recommendations of many individuals, public health agencies, and organizations within the aquatics sector, and
- Embraces the concept that safe and healthy recreational water experiences by the public are directly affected by how we collectively design, construct, operate, and maintain our AQUATIC FACILITIES.

1.5.3 Aquatic Facility Requirements

Model performance-based recommendations essentially define public aquatic health and safety expectations, usually in terms of how dangerous a pathogen or injury is to the public. By using a combination of performance-based recommendations and prescriptive measures, AQUATIC FACILITIES are free to use innovative approaches to provide healthy and safe AQUATIC FACILITIES whereas traditional evaluations mandate how AQUATIC FACILITIES achieve acceptable results. However, to show compliance with the model performance-based recommendation, the AQUATIC FACILITY must demonstrate that control measures are in place to ensure that the recommendations are being met. The underlying theme of the MAHC is that it should be based on the latest science-based where possible, best practices, and that change will be gradual so all parties can prepare for upcoming changes; “Evolution, not revolution”.

1.6 Modifications and Improvements in ~~this MAHC Version~~

1.6.1 ~~Modifications and Improvements in this MAHC Version~~

~~This draft version of the MAHC~~ 1st Edition

~~The MAHC 1st Edition~~ was assembled from 14 modules that ~~were had been~~ posted for ~~on the first~~ 60-day public comment period each, revised based ~~upon~~ public comment, and reposted individually with revisions. The individual modules were then. ~~This version of the MAHC was~~ assembled and cross-checked for discrepancies and duplications arising from the modular development approach. The complete MAHC “Knitted” version was and was then posted for an additional 60-day public comment period to allow reviewers to check model wording across sections and submit additional comments. The MAHC “Knitted” version was revised and cross-check that throughout the document. After revising the document based on the second round of public comment and, the document will be reposted as the MAHC 1st Edition.

1.7 MAHC Adoption at State or Local Level

1.7.1 MAHC Adoption at State or Local Level

The MAHC is provided as guidance for voluntary use by governing bodies at all levels to regulate public AQUATIC FACILITIES FACILITY STANDARDS. At the state and local levels, the MAHC may be used in part or in whole to:

- 1) Enact into statute as an act of the state legislative body; or
- 2) Promulgate as a regulation, rule or code; or
- 3) Adopt as an ordinance.—

CDC is committed to offering, at a minimum, assistance to states and localities in interpreting and implementing the MAHC. CDC welcomes suggestions for how it could best assist localities in using this guidance in the future. CDC also offers a MAHC toolkit (including sample forms and checklists) and is available to give operational guidance to public health pool programs when needed. CDC is committed to expanding its support of the MAHC and ensuring timely updates and improvements.

1.7.2 Conference for the Model Aquatic Health Code

Other assistance to localities will also be available. The Conference for the [Model Aquatic Health Code \(CMAHC; www.cmahc.org\)](#), an independent, nonprofit 501(c)(3) organization, was created with CDC support in 2013 to support and improve public health by promoting healthy and safe aquatic experiences for everyone. The CMAHC's role is to serve as a national clearinghouse for input and advice on needed improvements to CDC's Model Aquatic Health Code (MAHC). The CMAHC will fulfill this role by:

- 1) Collecting, assessing, and relaying national input on needed MAHC improvements back to CDC for final consideration for acceptance.
- 2) Advocating for improved health and safety at swimming facilities.
- 3) Providing consultation and assistance to health departments, boards of health, legislatures, and other partners on MAHC uses, benefits, and implementation.
- 4) Providing consultation and assistance to the aquatics industry on uses, interpretation, and benefits of the MAHC, and
- 5) Soliciting, coordinating, and prioritizing MAHC research needs.

CDC and the CMAHC will work together closely to continue to incorporate national input into the MAHC and provide optimal guidance and assistance to public health officials and the aquatics sector.

1.8 The MAHC Revision Process

1.8.1 MAHC Revisions

Throughout the creation of the MAHC, the CDC ~~accepted~~~~will accept~~ concerns and recommendations for modification of the MAHC from any individual or organization ~~through two~~~~for this second~~ 60-day public comment ~~periods~~~~period~~ via the email address MAHC@cdc.gov.

1.8.2 Future Revisions

~~CDC~~The MAHC realizes that ~~the MAHC should be this~~ ~~it is~~ an evolving document ~~that is kept up to date with the latest science, industry advances, and public health findings.~~ As the MAHC is used and recommendations are put into practice, MAHC revisions will ~~likely~~ need to be made. As the future brings new technologies and new aquatic health issues, the ~~CMAHC, with CDC participation,~~ ~~MAHC governing body~~ will institute a ~~revision~~ ~~process for collecting national input~~ that welcomes all stakeholders to participate in making recommendations to improve the MAHC so it remains this

~~document as~~ comprehensive, easy to understand, and ~~as~~ technically sound as possible. These final recommendations will then be weighed by CDC for final incorporation into a new edition of

~~1.9~~ **Acknowledgements**

~~1.9.1~~ **Acknowledgements**

~~Many individuals devoted considerable time and effort in addressing concerns and developing recommendations that are now reflected in~~ the MAHC.

~~1.9.1.1~~ **Diversity**

~~These individuals represent a diverse group of regulators, educators, industry leaders, and consumer representatives acting through their agencies, companies, professional groups, or trade organizations.~~

~~1.9.1.2~~ **Dedication**

~~It is only through the dedicated efforts and contributions of experienced professionals that a scientifically sound, well focused, and up to date model MAHC is possible.~~

~~1.9.1.3~~ **Development**

~~CDC acknowledges with gratitude the~~ **2.0 User Guide**

The provisions of Chapter 4 (*Design Standards and Construction*) apply to construction of a new AQUATIC FACILITY or AQUATIC VENUE or SUBSTANTIAL ALTERATION to an existing AQUATIC FACILITY or AQUATIC VENUE, unless otherwise noted.

The provisions of Chapter 5 and 6 apply to all AQUATIC FACILITIES covered by this code regardless of when constructed, unless otherwise noted.

~~substantial assistance of those who contributed to public health and aquatic safety in the~~ ~~development~~ ~~of~~ ~~the~~ MAHC.

2.0 User Guide

2.1 Overview

2.1.1 New Users

A new user will find it helpful to review the Table of Contents in order to quickly gain an understanding of the scope and sequence of subjects included in the CODE.

2.1.2 -Topic Presentations

MAHC provisions address essentially three areas:

- Design & Construction (*Chapter 4*),
- Operation & Maintenance (*Chapter 5*),
- Policies & Management (*Chapter 6*).

In addition, an overarching, scientifically referenced explanation of the MAHC as a risk reduction plan is provided in the Annex using the same numbering format for easy cross reference.

2.2 MAHC Structure and Format

2.2.1 Numbering System

The CODE follows a numeric outline format. The structural numbering system having different indent, font and color size in the document is as follows:

1.0 Chapter ~~1.0~~

1.1 Part ~~1.1~~

1.1.1 Subpart ~~1.1.1~~

Section—1.1.1.1 Section

Paragraph—1.1.1.1.1 Paragraph

1.1.1.1.1.1 Sub-Paragraph

2.2.2 Title, Keyword, Phrase Text

On the same line and next to the number is a title, keyword, or phrase summary showing the information contained in the corresponding MAHC wording below.

2.2.3 MAHC Requirement

Recommended MAHC requirement wording is shown below the number of title, keyword, or phrase. These requirements usually appear in sentence or paragraph format.

2.2.4 Illustrations

Appropriate charts, diagrams, and other illustrative material found in the Chapters will also appear in the Annex.

2.2.5 Consistency Between Chapters 4.0 and 5.0

Each Part or Sub-part is repeated throughout CODE Chapters 4.0 (*Design Standards & Construction*) and 5.0 (*Operation & Maintenance*). For example, ~~for DISINFECTION, the section titled “Disinfection and pH Control,” has two parts:~~

- 1) ~~Design~~ design recommendations and construction aspects ~~are~~ addressed in Subpart 4.7.3 and
- 2) ~~Operation~~ the operation and maintenance aspects ~~are~~ addressed in Subpart 5.7.3.

If a topic is not applicable then that section is marked with a N/A (e.g., *the size or width of the decking is not really applicable for Operation & Maintenance versus Design Standards & Construction*). This is designed to allow MAHC users to see how a topic of interest applies under both chapter headings.

2.2.6 Conventions

The following conventions are used in the Model Aquatic Health Code. “Shall” means the act is imperative, i.e., “shall” constitutes a command. “May not” means absolute prohibition. “May” is permissive and means the act is allowed. ~~The term “Means” is followed by a declared fact.~~

- 1) ~~“Shall” means the act is imperative, i.e., “shall” constitutes a command.~~
- 2) ~~“May not” means absolute prohibition.~~
- 3) ~~“May” is permissive and means the act is allowed.~~
- 4) “Means” is followed by a declared fact.

2.2.7 Definitions

Defined glossary words and terms are in “SMALL CAPS” in the text of the CODE chapters to alert the reader that there is a specific meaning assigned to those terms and that the meaning of a provision is to be interpreted in the defined context. A concerted effort was also made to place in “SMALL CAPS” all forms and combinations of those defined words and terms that were intended to carry the weight of the definition.

2.3 Annex

2.3.1- Rationale

The annex is provided to:

- 1) Give further explanations of why certain recommendations are made;
- 2) Discuss rationale for making the MAHC content decisions;

- 3) Provide a discussion of the scientific basis for selecting certain criteria, as well as discuss why other scientific data may not have been selected, e.g. due to data inconsistencies;
- 4) State areas where additional research may be needed;
- 5) Discuss and explain terminology used; and
- 6) Provide additional material that may not have been appropriately placed in the main body of suggested MAHC recommendations. This would include summaries of scientific studies, charts, graphs, or other illustrative materials.

2.3.2 Content

The annex was developed to support the MAHC Code language and document is meant to provide additional help, guidance, and rationale to those responsible for using the MAHC. Statements in the annex are intended to be supplements and additional explanations. They are not meant to be interpreted as MAHC code wording or used to create enforceable code language.

2.3.3 Bibliography

The Annex includes a list of CODES referenced, a bibliography of the reference materials, and scientific studies that form the basis for MAHC recommendations.

2.3.4 Appendices

The Appendices supply additional information or tools that may be useful to the reader of the MAHC Annex and Code.

3.0 Glossary of the MAHC Code and Annex

3.1 Acronyms and Initialisms~~Terms used in this Code~~

Acronyms Used in This Code and Annex~~the MAHC~~

ACCA-	Air Conditioning Contractors of America
ADA	Americans with Disabilities Act
<u>ADASAD</u>	<u>2010 Americans with Disabilities Standards for Accessible Design</u>
AED	Automated <u>External Defibrillator</u> external defibrillator
AHAC	Aquatic Health Advisory Committee
AHJ	Authority Having Jurisdiction
AMCA-	Air Movement and Control Association
ANSI	American National Standards Institute
ASHRAE-	American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers
ASME	American Society of Mechanical Engineers
ASTM	American Society for Testing and Materials
ATSDR	Agency for Toxic Substances and Disease Registry
BBP	blood borne pathogens
BCDMH	1-bromo-3-chloro-5, 5-dimethylhydantoin
CCPRF	Citizen CPR Foundation
CDC	Centers for Disease Control and Prevention
CEU	Continuing Education Units
<u>CFM</u>	<u>Cubic Feet Per Minute</u>
<u>CMAHC</u>	<u>The Conference for the Model Aquatic Health Code</u>
CPR	Cardiopulmonary Resuscitation
CPSC	Consumer Product Safety Commission
CYA	Cyanuric Acid
DBDMH	Dibromodimethylhydantoin dibromodimethylhydantoin
DBP	Disinfection <u>By-Product</u> by-product
DVGW	Deutscher Verein des Gas- und Wasserfaches e.V. – Technisch wissenschaftlicher Verein (<i>German Technical and Scientific Association for Gas and Water</i>)
EAP	Emergency Action Plan
ECCU	Emergency Cardiovascular Care Update
EPA	Environmental Protection Agency
FAC	Free <u>Available Chlorine</u> available-chlorine
FC	footeandles
FIFRA-	Federal Insecticide, Fungicide, and Rodenticide Act
FINA	Federation Internationale de Natation Amateur
<u>GFCI</u>	<u>Ground-Fault Circuit Interrupter</u>
GFCI	ground-fault circuit interrupter
GPM	Gallons <u>Per Minute</u> per-minute
HMIS	Hazardous Material Identification System
<u>HOCl</u>	<u>Hypochlorous Acid</u>
<u>HSEESS</u> HAEES	<u>Hazardous Substance Emergency Events Surveillance System</u>

HOCl	Hypochlorous acid
IARC	International Agency for Research on Cancer
IBC	International Building Code
ICC	International Code Commission
ICBO	International Council of Building Officials
IESNA	Illuminating Engineering Society of North America
ILCOR	International Liaison Committee on Resuscitation
IPC	International Plumbing Code
<u>ISPSC</u>	<u>International Swimming Pool and Spa Code</u>
MAHC	Model Aquatic Health Code
<u>MERV</u>	<u>Minimum Efficiency Reporting Value</u>
MERV	minimum efficiency reporting value
METS-	Metabolic Equivalents
MSBL	maximum sustainable bather load
MSDS	Material Safety Data Sheets
NCAA	National Collegiate Athletic Association
NEC-	National Electrical Code
NEHA	National Environmental Health Association
NEISS	National Electrical Injury Surveillance System
NFPA	National Fire Protection Association
NPDS-	National Poison Data System
NPSH-	Net Positive Suction Head
NRTL	Nationally Recognized Testing Laboratory
NSF	National Sanitation Foundation
OEM	Original Equipment Manufacturer
ÖNORM-	Österreichisches Normungsinstitut (<i>Austrian Standards Institute</i>)
ORP	Oxidation <u>Reduction Potential</u> reduction potential
OSHA	Occupational Safety and Health Administration
PEL	Permissible Exposure Limit
PHMB	Polyhexamethylene <u>Biguanide Hydrochloride</u> biguanide hydrochloride
POS	Perimeter <u>Overflow System</u> overflow system-
PPE	Personal Protective Equipment
PPM	Parts <u>Per Million</u> per million
PVC	Polyvinyl <u>Chloride</u> chloride-
PVC-P	Plasticized <u>Polyvinyl Chloride</u> polyvinyl chloride
RED	Reduction Equivalent Dose
RLV	Relative <u>Limit Value</u> limit value-
RPZ	Reduced Pressure Zone
RWI	Recreational Water Illness
<u>SDS</u>	<u>Safety Data Sheet</u>
SCBA	Self- <u>Contained Breathing Apparatus</u> contained breathing apparatus
SCI	Spinal Cord Injury
SDS	Secondary Disinfection System
SI	Saturation Index
SMACNA-	Sheet Metal and Air Conditioning Contractors' National Association
STEL	short term exposure limit
SVRS	Safety Vacuum Release System

TDH	Total Dynamic Head
TDS	Total Dissolved Solids
THM	Trihalomethane
TLV	Threshold Limit Value
UL	Underwriter Laboratories
UPC	Uniform <u>Universal</u> Plumbing Code
USLSC	United States Lifeguarding Standards Coalition
USPSHTC	Uniform Swimming Pool, Spa, and Hot Tub Code
UV	Ultraviolet
UVT	UV Transmissivity
VFD-	Variable Frequency Drive
WC	Water Closet <u>water closet</u>
WQTD	Water Quality Testing Device

3.2 Glossary of Terms Used in This Code and Annex the MAHG

“Accessible Route” means access/egress standards as defined by 2010 ADA Standards for Accessible Design~~current Americans with Disabilities Accessibility Guidelines (ADAAG), published by the U.S. Access Board.~~

“Activity Pool” See “Pool.”

~~“Activity pool” means a water attraction designed primarily for play activity that uses constructed features and devices including pad walks, flotation devices and similar attractions.~~

“Air Handling System” means equipment that brings in outdoor air into a building and removes air from a building for the purpose of introducing air with fewer contaminants and removing air with contaminants created while bathers are using aquatic venues. The system ~~contains~~includes components ~~that~~which move, ~~transport~~, and condition the air for temperature, humidity, and pressure~~temperature~~ control, and transport and distribute the air to prevent condensation, corrosion, and stratification, provide acceptable indoor air quality, and deliver outside air to the breathing zone.

“Agitated Water” means an aquatic venue with mechanical means (*aquatic features*) to discharge, spray, or move the water's surface above and/or below the static water line of the aquatic venue. Where there is no static water line, movement shall be considered above the deck plane.

“Aquatic Facility” means a physical place that contains one or more aquatic venues and support infrastructure.

“Aquatic Feature” means an individual component within an aquatic venue. ~~Examples include slides, structures designed to be climbed or walked across, and structures that create falling or shooting water.~~

~~“Aquatic Health Advisory Committee” means a committee created by the AHJ to serve as an “independent” review function in the overall appeals process in the AHJ. It serves the AHJ in an advisory capacity only.~~

“Aquatic Facility or Aquatic Venue Enclosure” means an uninterrupted barrier surrounding and securing an aquatic facility or aquatic venue.

“Aquatic Venue” means an artificially constructed structure or modified natural structure where the general public is exposed to water intended for recreational or therapeutic purpose. Such structures do not necessarily contain standing water, so water exposure may occur via contact, ingestion, or aerosolization. Examples include swimming pools, wave ~~pool~~pool, lazy rivers, surf pools, spas (*including spa pools and hot tubs*), therapy pools, waterslide landing pools, spray pads, and other interactive water venues.

- **“Increased Risk Aquatic Venue”** means an aquatic venue which due to its intrinsic characteristics and intended users has a greater likelihood of affecting the of the bathers of that venue by being at increased risk for microbial contamination (e.g., by children less than 5 years old) or being used by people that may be more susceptible to infection (e.g., therapy patients with open wounds). Examples of increased-risk aquatic venues include spray pads, wading pools and other aquatic venues designed for children less than five years old as well as therapy pools.
- **“Lazy River”** means a channeled flow of water of near-constant depth in which the water is moved by pumps or other means of propulsion to provide a river-like flow that transports bathers over a defined path. A lazy river may include play features and devices. A lazy river may also be referred to as a tubing pool, leisure river, leisure pool or a current channel.
- **“Spa”** means a structure intended for either warm or cold water where prolonged exposure is not intended. Spa structures are intended to be used for bathing or other recreational uses and are not usually drained and refilled after each use. It may include, but is not limited to, hydrotherapy, air induction bubbles, and recirculation.
- **“Special Use Aquatic Venue”** means aquatic venues that do not meet the intended use and design features of any other aquatic venue or pool listed/identified in this Code.

“Authority Having Jurisdiction” (AHJ) means an agency, organization, office, or individual responsible for enforcing the requirements of a code or standard, or for approving equipment, materials, installationsan installation, or proceduresa procedure.

~~**“Automatic or Robotic Cleaner”** means a modular vacuum system consisting of a motor-driven in-pool suction device, either self-powered or powered through a low voltage cable which is connected to a deck-side power supply.~~

“Automated Controllercontroller” means a system of at least one chemical probe, a controller, and auxiliary or integrated component that senses the level of one or more water parameters and provides a signal to other equipment to maintain the parameters within a user-established range.

“Available Chlorine” See “Chlorine”

~~**“Backflow”** means a hydraulic condition caused by a difference in water pressure that causes an undesirable reversal ofnon-potable water or other liquid to enter the flow as the result of a higher pressure in thepotable water system than in its supply. by either backpressure or back-siphonage.~~

“Barrier” means an obstacle intended to prevent preventing direct access from one point to another.

- ~~“Enclosure barrier” means a constructed feature or obstacle that is intended to deter or effectively prevent unpermitted, uncontrolled, and unfettered access (by children) to an aquatic facility or aquatic venue such as a swimming pool, wading pool, or spa. It is designed to resist climbing and to prevent passage through it and under it.~~
- ~~“Separation barrier” means a constructed feature that is intended to control and limit but not prevent direct access from one area to another area within a pool enclosure. It may be permanently installed or moveable.~~

“**Bather**” means a person at an aquatic venue who has contact with water either through spray or partial or total immersion. The term bather as defined, also includes staff members, and refers to those users who can be exposed to contaminated water as well as potentially contaminate the water.

~~“**Bather Count**” means the number of bathers in an aquatic venue at any given time.~~

~~“**Bather Load**” means the maximum number of persons allowed in the water of an aquatic venue. Bather load is used to determine the number of RINSE and CLEANSING SHOWERS. Bather Load is not the same as occupant load which refers to maximum aquatic facility loads. The bather load is calculated by dividing the surface area in ft² (aquatic venue surface area) of the aquatic venue by the density factor (D) that fits the specific aquatic venue being considered (BL = aquatic venue surface area/D). The density factors are based on defining three types of aquatic venue water:~~

“**Best Practice**” means a technique or methodology that, through experience and research, has been proven to reliably lead to a desired result.

“**Body of Water**” (*per NEC, q.v.*) means any aquatic venue holding standing water, whether permanent or storable.

“**Breakpoint Chlorination**” means the conversion of inorganic chloramine compounds to nitrogen gas by reaction with Free Available Chlorine. When chlorine is added to water containing ammonia (*from urine, sweat, or the environment, for example*), it initially reacts with the ammonia to form monochloramine chloramines. If more chlorine is added, monochloramine is the total residual chlorine continues to rise until the concentration reaches a point that forces the reaction with ammonia to go to rapid completion. In this reaction, the inorganic chloramines are converted into dichloramine, which decomposes into then to nitrogen trichloride, and then to nitrogen gas, hydrochloric acid. Compounds of nitrogen and chlorine. The are released into the water, and the apparent residual chlorine decreases since it is partially reduced to hydrochloric acid. The point at which the drop occurs is referred to as the “breakpoint”. The amount of free chlorine that must be added to the water to achieve breakpoint chlorination is approximately ten times the amount of combined chlorine in the water. As additional chlorine is added, all inorganic combined chlorine compounds disappear, resulting in a decrease in eye irritation potential and “chlorine odors.”

“Bulkheads” means a movable partition that physically separates a pool into multiple sections.

~~“**Chemical Storage Space**” means an interior space of a building used for the storage of pool chemicals including, at a minimum, acids, fertilizers, salt, oxidizing cleaning materials, other corrosive or oxidizing chemicals, or pesticides.~~
“Catch Pool” means a space in an aquatic facility used or designated section of a pool located at the exit of one or more waterslide flumes. The body of water is provided for the storage of pool chemicals such as acids, salt, or corrosive or oxidizing chemicals.

~~“**Chlorine**” purpose of terminating the slide action and providing a means~~ an element that at room temperature and pressure is a heavy greenish yellow gas with a characteristic penetrating and irritating smell; it is extremely toxic. of exit ~~it can be compressed in liquid form and stored in heavy steel tanks.~~ When mixed with water, chlorine gas forms hypochlorous acid, the primary chlorine-based disinfecting agent, hypochlorite ion, and hydrochloric acid. Hypochlorous acid dissociation to hypochlorite ion is highly pH dependent. Chlorine is a general term used in the MAHC which refers to hypochlorous acid and hypochlorite ion in aqueous solution derived from chlorine gas ~~deck or a variety of chlorine-based disinfecting agents.~~

- “**Available Chlorine**” means the amount of chlorine in the +1 oxidation state, which is the reactive, oxidized form. In contrast, chloride ion (Cl^-) is in the -1 oxidation state, which is the inert, reduced state. Available Chlorine is subdivided into Free Available Chlorine and Combined Available Chlorine. Pool chemicals containing Available Chlorine are both oxidizers and disinfectants. Elemental chlorine (Cl_2) is defined as containing 100% available chlorine. The concentration of Available Chlorine in water is normally reported as mg/L (PPM) “as Cl_2 ”, that is, the concentration is measured on a Cl_2 basis, regardless of the source of the Available Chlorine.
- “**Free Chlorine Residual**” OR “**Free Available Chlorine**” means the portion of the total available chlorine that is not “combined chlorine” and is present as hypochlorous acid ($HOCl$) or hypochlorite ion (OCl^-). The pH of the water determines the relative amounts of hypochlorous acid and hypochlorite ion. $HOCl$ is a very effective bactericide and is the active bactericide in pool water. walkway area OCl^- is also a bactericide, but acts more slowly than $HOCl$. Thus, chlorine is a more effective bactericide at low pH than at high pH. A free chlorine residual must be maintained for adequate disinfection.

“Circulation Path” means an exterior or interior way of passage from one part of an aquatic facility to another for pedestrians, including, but not limited to walkways, pathways, decks, and stairways. This must be considered in relation to ADA/ADAAG Guidelines.

~~“**Chemical Storage Space**” means an interior space of a building used for the storage of pool chemicals including, at a minimum, acids, fertilizers, salt, oxidizing cleaning materials, other corrosive or oxidizing chemicals, or pesticides.~~

~~“Chlorine” means an element that at room temperature and pressure is a heavy green gas with characteristic odor and is extremely toxic. It can be compressed in liquid form and stored in heavy steel tanks. Chlorine and chlorine-based disinfectants release hypochlorous acid, the primary disinfecting agent, and hypochlorite ion when dissolved in water. Chlorine is a general term used in the MAHC which refers to hypochlorous acid in an aqueous solution.~~

~~“Cleansing Shower” means a shower located within a hygiene facility using warm water and soap. “Cleansing Shower” See “Shower.”~~

~~The purpose of these showers is to remove contaminants including perianal fecal material, sweat, skin cells, personal care products, and dirt before bathers enter the pool.~~

“Code” means a systematic statement of a body of law, especially one given statutory force.

“Combustion Device” means any appliance or equipment using fire. These include, but may not be limited to, gas or oil furnaces, boilers, pool heaters, domestic water heaters, etc.

“Construction Joint” means a watertight joint provided to facilitate stopping places in the construction process. Construction joints also serve as contraction joints which control cracking.

“Contamination Response Plan” means a plan for handling contamination from formed-stool, diarrheal-stool, vomit, and ~~contamination involving~~ blood.

“Contaminant” means a substance that soils, stains, corrupts, or infects another substance by contact or association.

“Corrosive Materials” means pool chemicals, fertilizers, cleaning chemicals, oxidizing cleaning materials, salt, de-icing chemicals, other corrosive or oxidizing materials, pesticides, and such other materials which may cause injury to people or damage to the building, air-handling equipment, electrical equipment, safety equipment, or fire-suppression equipment, whether by direct contact or by contact via fumes or vapors, whether in original form or in a foreseeably likely decomposition, pyrolysis, or polymerization form. Refer to labels and ~~SDSMSDS~~ forms.

“Crack” means any and all breaks in the structural shell of a pool vessel or deck.

~~“Cross-Connection” means a connection or arrangement, physical or otherwise, between a potable water supply system. Such breaks shall be identified, evaluated, and a plumbing fixture, tank, receptor, equipment, or device, through which it may be possible for non-potable, used, unclean, polluted repaired in a manner that will restore structural integrity and contaminated water, or other substances tightness to enter into a part of such potable water system under any condition, the vessel.~~

“**CT Value**” means a representation of the concentration of the disinfectant (*C*) multiplied by time in minutes (*T*) needed for inactivation of a particular contaminant. The concentration and time are inversely proportional; therefore, the higher the concentration of the disinfectant, the shorter the contact time required for inactivation. The CT value can vary with pH or temperature change so these values must also be supplied to allow comparison between values.

~~“**Current pool**” means a pool that creates a current for the purpose of exercise.~~

“**Deck**” means surface areas serving the aquatic venue, including the perimeter/wet deck, pool deck, and dry deck.

- “**Dry Deck**” means all pedestrian surface areas within the aquatic venue~~pool~~ enclosure not subject to frequent splashing or constant wet foot traffic. The dry deck is not ~~(Not perimeter deck or pool deck.)~~ which connect the pool to adjacent amenities, entrances, and exits. Landscape areas are not included in this definition.
- “**Perimeter/Wet Deck**” means the hardscape surface area immediately adjacent to and within four4 feet (1.222 m) of the edge of the swimming pool also known as the “wet deck” area.
- “**Pool Deck**” means surface areas serving the aquatic venue, beyond perimeter deck, which is expected to be regularly trafficked and made wet by bathers.

~~“**Diaper-Changing Station**aged children” mean children less than 5 years of age.~~

“**Diaper-changing station**” means a hygiene station that includes a safe and approved diaper-changing unit, adjacent—hand-washing sink, soap and dispenser, a means forhand drying hands, device or paper towels and dispenser, and trash receptacle, and disinfectant products to clean ~~the changing surface~~ after use.

“**Diaper-Changing Unit**changing unit” means a safe and approved diaper-changing surface that is part of a diaper-changing station.

“**Dichloramine**” means a disinfection by-product formed when chlorine binds to nitrogenous waste in pool water to form an amine- containing compound with two chlorine atoms (*NHCl₂*). It is a known acute respiratory and ocular irritant.

“**Disinfection**” means a treatment that kills or irreversibly inactivates microorganisms (e.g., *bacteria, viruses, and parasites*); in water treatment, a chemical (*commonly chlorine, chloramine, or ozone*) or physical process (e.g., *ultraviolet radiation*) can be used.

“**Disinfection By-Product**” means a chemical compound formed by the reaction of a disinfectant (e.g. *chlorine*) with a precursor (e.g. *natural organic matter, nitrogenous waste from bathers*) in a water system (*pool, water supply*).

“Diving Pool” See “Pool.” ~~pool” means a pool used exclusively for diving.~~

- ~~“Drop Slide” means a slide that drops bathers into the water from a height above the water versus delivering the bather to the water entry point.~~

“Drop Slide” See “Slide.”

“Dry Deck” See “Deck.”

~~“Dry Deck” means all pedestrian surface areas within the pool enclosure not subject to frequent splashing or constant wet foot traffic (not perimeter deck or pool deck) which connect the pool to adjacent amenities, entrances, and exits. Landscape areas are not included in this definition.~~

“Emergency Action Plan” means a plan that identifies the objectives that need to be met for a specific type of emergency, who will respond, ~~and~~ and what equipment is required as part of the response.

~~and what equipment is required as part of the response.~~

“Enclosure” means an uninterrupted constructed feature or obstacle used to surround barrier surrounding and securesecuring an area that is intended to deter or effectively prevent unpermitted, uncontrolled, and unfettered access . It is designed to resist climbing and to prevent passage through it and under it. Enclosure can apply to aquatic facilities or aquatic venues. ~~facility.~~

“EPA Registered” means all ~~pesticide~~ products regulated and registered under the Federal Insecticide, Fungicide, and Rodenticide Act (*FIFRA*) by the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (*EPA*; <http://www.epa.gov/agriculture/lfra.html>). EPA registered products will have a registration number on the label (*usually it will state “EPA Reg No.” followed by a series of numbers*). This registration number can be verified by using the EPA National Pesticide Information Retrieval System (<http://ppis.ceris.purdue.edu/#>).~~.)~~

“Equipment Room” means a space intended for the operation of pool pumps, filters, heaters, and controllers. This space is not intended for the storage of hazardous pool chemicals.

“Exit Gate ~~or Door~~” means an emergency exit, which is a gate or door allowing free exit at all times. ~~Such exits shall be conspicuously marked on the inside of the facility.~~

~~“Exercise pool” means a pool of shallow depth that operates with or without a current.
Note: Exercise pools are usually associated with health spas.~~

“Expansion Joint” means a watertight joint provided in a pool vessel used to relieve flexural stresses due to movement caused by thermal expansion/contraction.

“**Flat Water**” means an aquatic venue in which the water line is static except for movement made by users. Diving spargers do not void the flat water definition.

“**Flume**” means the ~~deep~~-riding channels ~~and vertical / lateral curves~~ of a waterslide which accommodate with high water flows that accommodates riders using or not using mats, tubes, rafts, and other transport vehicles as they slide along -

~~“**Flume Valleys or Dips**” means a path lubricated by specific part of a water flow waterslide that are designed to create an external force to propel the rider to a higher elevation prior to continuing down the flume.~~

“**Foot Baths**” means standing water in which bathers or aquatics staff rinse their feet.

~~“**Free Chlorine Residual**” OR “**Free Available Chlorine**” means the available disinfectant in the water. It is the portion of total chlorine that is not combined chlorine and is available as disinfectant. When chlorine is added to water, hypochlorous acid is produced in either the molecular state (HOCl) or the ionized state (hypochlorite ion (OCl⁻) plus hydrogen ion (H⁺)), and a by product specific to the type of chlorine is produced. The pH of the water determines the amount of hypochlorous acid in each state. HOCl is a very effective bactericide and is the active available chlorine disinfectant in the water. OCl⁻ is also a bactericide, but acts more slowly than HOCl.~~

“**Free Chlorine Residual**” OR “**Free Available Chlorine**” See “Chlorine.”

~~Thus chlorine is a much less effective bactericide at high pH. The sum of HOCl and OCl⁻ is referred to as “free chlorine” in pool water. The hypochlorous acid that remains in pool water uncombined with ammonia is called “free chlorine residual.” Free chlorine residual must be maintained for adequate disinfection.~~

~~“**Generally Accepted Practice**” means a technique or methodology that is widely used but may or may not be the “best practice.”~~

“**Ground-Fault Circuit Interrupter**” means a device for protection of personnel that de-energizes an electrical circuit or portion thereof in the event of excessive ground current.

“**Hand Wash Station**” means a location which has a hand wash sink, adjacent soap with dispenser, hand drying device or paper towels and dispenser, and trash receptacle.

~~“**High-risk Venue**” means a venue which due to its intrinsic characteristics including intended users, has a greater likelihood of affecting the health and safety of the patrons of that venue. Examples of high-risk aquatic venues include wading pools, spas, and therapy pools.~~

- ~~• “**Horizontal Use Water**” means an aquatic venue in which the water line is static except for movement made by users usually as a horizontal use as in swimming. Diving spargers do not void the flat water definition.~~

“Hot Water” means an aquatic venue with water temperature over 90 degrees Fahrenheit (30 degrees Celsius).

~~“Hydraulically apportioned” means both the relative difference between the water flow over the gutter or through the skimmers compared with the water flow through the main drain; and the even distribution of treated water returned to different areas of the pool through the inlets.~~

~~“Hot Water” means an aquatic venue with water temperature over 90 degrees Fahrenheit (30 degrees Celsius).~~

“Hygiene Facility” means a structure or part of a structure that contains toilet, shower, diaper-changing unit, hand wash station, and dressing capabilities serving bathers and patrons at an aquatic facility.

“Hygiene Fixtures” means all components necessary for hygiene facilities including plumbing fixtures, diaper-changing stations, hand wash stations, trashcans, soap dispensers, paper towel dispensers or hand dryers, and toilet paper dispensers.

“Hyperchlorination” means the intentional and specific raising of chlorine levels for a prolonged period of time to inactivate pathogens following a fecal or vomit release in an aquatic venue as outlined in MAHC ~~Section~~ Section 6.5.

“Imminent Health Hazard” means a significant threat or danger to health that is considered to exist when there is evidence sufficient to show that a product, practice, circumstance, or event creates a situation that requires immediate correction or cessation of operation to prevent injury based on the number of potential injuries and the nature, severity, and duration of the anticipated injury or illness.

“Increased Risk Aquatic Venue” See “Aquatic Venue.”

~~“Increased Risk Aquatic Venue” means an aquatic venue which due to its intrinsic characteristics and intended users has a greater likelihood of affecting the health and safety of the patrons of that venue by being at increased risk for contamination (e.g., by diaper aged children/children aged <Examples of increased risk aquatic venues include spray pads, wading pools and other aquatic venues designed for diaper aged children as well as therapy pools.~~

“Indoor Aquatic Facility” means a physical place that contains one or more aquatic venues and the surrounding bather and spectator/stadium seating areas within a structure that meets the definition of “Building” per the 2012 International Building Code. It does not include equipment, chemical storage, or bather hygiene rooms or any other rooms with a direct opening to the aquatic facility. Otherwise known as a natatorium.

“Infinity Edge” means a pool wall structure and adjacent perimeter deck that is designed in such a way where the top of the pool wall and adjacent deck are not visible from certain vantage points in the pool or from the opposite side of the pool. -Water from

the pool flows over the edge and is captured and treated for reuse through the normal pool filtration system. –They are often also referred to as “vanishing edges,” “negative edges,” or “zero edges.”

“**Inlet**” ~~means~~ ~~mean~~ wall or floor fittings where treated water is returned to the pool.

~~“**Integral Vacuum System**” means a vacuum system that utilized the main circulating pump or a dedicated vacuum pump connect to the pool with PVC piping and terminating at the pool with a flush-mounted vacuum port fitting.~~

“**Interactive Water Play Aquatic Venue**” means any indoor or outdoor installation that includes sprayed, jetted or other water sources contacting ~~bathers~~~~patrons~~ and not incorporating standing or captured water as part of the ~~bather~~~~patron~~ activity area. These aquatic venues are also known as splash pads, spray pads, wet decks. For the purposes of the MAHC, only those designed to recirculate water and intended for public use and recreation shall be regulated.

~~“**Interactive Water Play Collection Tank**” means the vessel used to collect the water that has been sprayed on the interactive water play area and returned through the interactive water play drains.~~

~~“**Interactive Water Play Features**” means the devices and plumbing used to convey the treated water to the play area to spray the patrons.~~

“**Interior Space**” means any substantially enclosed space having a roof and having a wall or walls which might reduce the free flow of outdoor air. Ventilation openings, fans, blowers, windows, doors, etc., shall not be construed as allowing free flow of outdoor air.

~~“**International Mechanical Code**” means the mechanical code standards produced by the International Code Council.~~

“**Island**” means a structure inside a pool where the perimeter is completely surrounded by the pool water and the top is above the surface of the pool.

~~“**Isolation**” (as applied to storage spaces) means the limitation of air movement from a storage space to other spaces of a building or structure.~~

~~“**Lazy River**” means a channeled flow of water of near-constant depth in which the water is moved by pumps or other means of propulsion to provide a river-like flow that transports patrons over a defined path. A lazy river may include play features and devices.~~ ~~“**Landing Pool**” See “Pool.”~~

~~“**Lazy River**” See “Aquatic Venue.”~~

~~A leisure river may also be referred to as a tubing pool, leisure pool or a current channel.~~

~~“Leisure Rivers” means manufactured streams in which the water is moved by pumps or other means of propulsion to provide a river-like flow that transports bathers over a defined path that may include water features and play devices.~~

~~“Manual Disinfectant Feed System” means a disinfectant delivered by a flow through erosion feeder or metering pump without an automated controller.~~

“mg/L” means milligrams per liter and is the equivalent metric measure to parts per million (PPMppm).

“Monitoring” is the regular and purposeful observation and checking of systems or facilities and recording of data, including system alerts, excursions from acceptable ranges, and other facility issues. Monitoring includes human or electronic means.

“Moveable Floors” means a pool floor whose depth varies through the use of controls.

~~“Natatorium” means a building which contains one or more aquatic venues.~~

~~“Nationally Recognized Testing Laboratory” means a testing facility recognized by ANSI as an organization that provides third party product safety testing and certification services to manufacturers.~~

“No Diving Marker” means a sign with the words “No Diving” and the universal international symbol for “No Diving” pictured as an image of a diver with a red circle with a slash through it.

~~“Occupant Load” means the combined total of the bather load and the dry deck, pool deck, and perimeter deck surrounding the aquatic venue. Occupant load is used to determine the number of toilets, sinks, and diaper changing stations.~~

“Oocyst” means the thick-walled, environmentally resistant structure released in the feces of infected animals that serves to transfer the infectious stages of sporozoan parasites (e.g., *Cryptosporidium*) to new hosts.

“Oxidation” means the process of changing the chemical structure of water contaminants by either increasing the number of oxygen atoms or reducing the number of electrons of the contaminant or other chemical reaction, which allows the contaminant to be more readily removed from the water or made more soluble in the water. It is the “chemical cleaning” of pool water. Oxidation can be achieved by common disinfectants (e.g., *chlorine*, *bromine*), secondary disinfection/sanitation systems (e.g. *ozone*) and oxidizers (e.g. *potassium monopersulfate*).

“**Oxidation ~~Reduction Potential-reduction potential~~**” means a measure of the tendency for a solution to either gain or lose electrons; higher (*more positive*) oxidation reduction potential indicates a more oxidative solution.

“**Patron**” means a bather or other person or occupant at an aquatic facility who may or may not have contact with aquatic venue water either through partial or total immersion. Patrons may not have contact with aquatic venue water, but could still be exposed to potential contamination from the aquatic facility air, surfaces, or aerosols.

“**Peninsula / Wing Wall**” means a structural projection into a pool intended to provide separation within the body of water. ~~Wing walls or peninsulas are not considered deck unless they are at least four feet clear in width. Wing walls or peninsulas may be used for lifeguarding depending on size, location and configuration.~~

“**Perimeter Deck**” See “Deck.”

~~“**Performance measures/Performance-based design**” means an engineering approach to design elements of a facility based on agreed upon performance goals and objectives, engineering analysis and quantitative assessment of alternatives against the design goals and objectives using accepted engineering tools, methodologies, and performance criteria. It is different from the prescriptive approach, which identifies specific requirements for the design of a facility.~~

~~“**Perimeter Deck**” means the hardscape surface area immediately adjacent to and within 4 feet (1.22 m) of the edge of the swimming pool also known as the “wet deck” area.~~

“**Perimeter Gutter System**” means the alternative to skimmers as a method to remove water from the pool’s surface for treatment. -The gutter provides a level structure along the pool perimeter versus ~~the~~ intermittent skimmers.

“**Plumbing Fixture**” means a receptacle, fixture, or device that is connected to a water supply system or discharges to a drainage system or both and may be used for the distribution and use of water; for example: toilets, urinals, showers, and hose bibs. Such receptacles, fixtures, or devices require a supply of water; or discharge liquid waste or liquid-borne solid waste; or require a supply of water and discharge waste to a drainage system.

“**pH**” means the negative log of the concentration of hydrogen ions. When water ionizes, it produces hydrogen ions (H^+) and hydroxide ions (OH^-). If there is an excess of hydrogen ions the water is acidic. If there is an excess of hydroxide ions the water is basic. pH ranges from 0 to 14. Pure water has a pH of 7.0. If pH is higher than 7.0, the water is said to be basic, or alkaline. If the water’s pH is lower than 7.0, the water is acidic. As pH is raised, more ionization occurs and chlorine disinfectants decrease in effectiveness.

~~“Plunge pool” means a pool with a depth of greater than 24 inches (61 centimeters), located at the exit end of a waterslide flume and intended and designed to receive a patron emerging from the flume.~~

“Pool” means a subset of aquatic ~~venues~~venue designed to have ~~impounded~~/standing water for total or partial bather immersion. This does not include spas.

- “Activity Pool” means a water attraction designed primarily for play activity that uses constructed features and devices including pad walks, flotation devices, and similar attractions.
- “Diving Pool” means a pool used exclusively for diving.
- “Landing Pool” means an aquatic venue or designated section of an aquatic venue located at the exit of one or more waterslide flumes. The body of water is intended and designed to receive a bather emerging from the flume for the purpose of terminating the slide action and providing a means of exit to a deck or walkway area.
- “Skimmer Pool” means a pool using a skimmer system.
- “Surf Pool” means any pool designed to generate waves dedicated to the activity of surfing on a surfboard or analogous surfing device commonly used in the ocean and intended for sport as opposed to general play intent for wave pools.
- “Therapy Pool” means a pool used exclusively for aquatic therapy, physical therapy, and/or rehabilitation to treat a diagnosed injury, illness, or medical condition, wherein the therapy is provided under the direct supervision of a licensed physical therapist, occupational therapist, or athletic trainer. This could include wound patients or immunocompromised patients whose health could be impacted if there is not additional water quality protection.

~~“Wading Pool Deck” means any poolthe hardscape surface areas beyond the perimeter deck within the aquatic facility enclosure, which is regularly trafficked and made wet by bathers.~~

- ~~“Pool Slide” means an attraction having a configuration as defined in The Code of Federal Regulations (CFR) Ch. II, Title 16 Part 1207, or is similar in construction to a playground slide used exclusively for wading and intended for use by young children where the depth doesto allow users to slide from an elevated height to a pool. They shall include children’s (tot) slides, pool slides, and all other non flume slides that are mounted on the pool deck or within the basin of a public swimming pool. Pool slides have a flow rate of less than 100 GPM, and do not exceed two10 feet (0.6 m).in height.~~
- “Wave Pools” means any pool designed to simulate breaking or cyclic waves for purposes of general play. A wave pool is not the same as a surf pool, which generates waves dedicated to the activity of surfing on a surfboard or analogous

surfing device commonly used in the ocean and intended for sport as opposed to general play intent for wave pools.

“Pool Deck” See “Deck.”

“Pool Slide” See “Slide.”

~~“Portable Vacuum System” means a modular vacuum system normally consisting of a dolly-mounted pump, filter, and power cord.~~

“Public Water ~~Systems Supply or System~~” means water systems including community water systems, non-transient/non-community water systems, or transient non-community water systems with exceptions as noted by AHJ and EPA.

~~“Purge” means to introduce a large volume ofbring in outdoor air to flush the interior spaceat the same rate required for maximum occupancy until the one complete air exchange of the indoor aquatic facility has been achieved.~~

“Qualified Lifeguard” means an individual who has successfully completed an AHJ-recognized lifeguard training course offered by an AHJ-recognized training agency, holds a current certificate for such training, has met the pre-service requirements, and is participating in continuing in-service training requirements of the aquatic facility.

“Qualified Lifeguard Supervisor” means an individual ~~that is~~ responsible for the oversight of lifeguard performance and emergency response at an aquatic facility. A qualified lifeguard supervisor is an individual who has successfully completed a lifeguard supervisor training course and holds an unexpired certificate for such training; and who has met the pre-service and continuing in-service requirements of the aquatic facility according to this code.

“Qualified Operator” means an individual responsible for the operation and maintenance of the water and air quality systems and the associated infrastructure of the aquatic facility and who has successfully completed an AHJ-recognized operator training course to operate an aquatic facility offered by an AHJ-recognized training agency and holds a current certificate for such training.

~~“Qualified Person” means a person who has the proper and/or necessary skills, training, or credentials to carry out the tasks associated with a particular function.~~

“Recessed Steps” means a way of ingress/egress for a pool similar to a ladder but the individual treads are recessed into the pool wall.

“Recirculation System” means the combination of the main drain, gutter or skimmer, inlets, piping, pumps, controls, surge tank or balance tank to provide pool water recirculation to and from the pool and the treatment systems.

“Reduction Equivalent Dose (RED) bias” means a variable used in UV system validation to account for differences in UV sensitivity between the UV system challenge microbe (e.g., *MS2 virus*) and the actual microbe to be inactivated (e.g., *Cryptosporidium*).

“Re-entrainment” means a situation where the exhaust(s) from a ventilated source such as an indoor aquatic facility is located too close to the air handling system intake(s), which allows the exhausted air to be re-captured by the air handling system so it is transported directly back into the aquatic facility.

“Responsible Supervisor” means an individual on-site that is responsible for water treatment operations when a “qualified operator” is not on-site at an aquatic facility.

“Rinse Shower” See “Shower.”

“Robotic Cleaner” means a modular vacuum system consisting of a motor-driven, in-pool suction device, either self-powered or powered through a low voltage cable, which is connected to a deck-side power supply.

“Runout” means that part of a waterslide where riders are intended to decelerate and/or come to a stop. The runout is a continuation of the waterslide flume surface.

~~**“Safety”** (as it relates to construction items) means a design standard intended to prevent inadvertent or hazardous operation or use (i.e., a passive engineering strategy).~~

“Safety Plan” means a written document that has procedures, requirements and/or standards related to safety which the aquatic facility staff shall follow. These plans include training, emergency response, and operations procedures.

“Safety Team” means any employee of the aquatic facility with job responsibilities related to the aquatic facility’s emergency action plan.

“Sanitize” means reducing the level of microbes to that considered safe by public health standards (usually 99.999%). This may be achieved through a variety of chemical or physical means including chemical treatment, physical cleaning, or drying.

~~**“Saturation Index”** means a mathematical representation or scale representing the ability of water to deposit calcium carbonate, or dissolve metal, concrete or grout.~~

“Secondary Disinfection Systems” means those disinfection processes or systems installed in addition to the standard systems required on all aquatic venues, which are required to be used for increased risk aquatic venues.

“Shower” means a device that sprays water on the body.

- ~~**“Cleansing Shower”** means a shower located within a hygiene facility using warm water and soap. The purpose of these showers is to remove contaminants~~

including perianal fecal material, sweat, skin cells, personal care products, and dirt before bathers enter the aquatic venue.

- **“Rinse Shower”** means a shower typically located in the pool deck area with ambient temperature water. The main purpose is to remove dirt, sand, or organic material prior to entering the aquatic venue to reduce the introduction of contaminants and the formation of disinfection by-products.

~~“Run-out” means that part of a waterslide where riders are intended to decelerate and/or come to a stop. The run-out is a continuation of the waterslide flume surface.~~

~~“Run-out slide” means a water slide where the rider does not exit into a plunge pool, but has a deceleration area that permits the patron to stop before exiting the slide flume.~~

“Safety” (as it relates to construction items) means a design standard intended to prevent inadvertent or hazardous operation or use (i.e., a passive engineering strategy).

~~“Safety Plan” means a written document that has procedures, requirements and/or standards for pre-service employees, communications, safety team members, in-service training, staffing, rescue skill competency, lifeguard rotation procedures, lifeguard management, emergency action plan, incident follow up, bloodborne pathogen exposure control, emergency closure, and single lifeguard situations(if applicable).~~

~~“Safety Team” means any employee of the aquatic facility that has job responsibilities related to the aquatic facility’s emergency action plan.~~

~~“Sanitize” means reducing the level of microbes to that considered safe by public health standards. This may be achieved through a variety of chemical or physical means including chemical treatment, cleaning or drying.~~

“Saturation Index” means a mathematical representation or scale representing the ability of water to deposit calcium carbonate, or dissolve metal, concrete or grout.

~~“Secondary disinfection systems” means those disinfection processes or systems which are required to be used for “increased risk aquatic venues” to meet the minimum standards of this code and are in addition to the requirements of Section 5.0 of this code.~~

~~“Secure Perimeter” means any combination of building envelopes, site walls, or fencing to prevent entry by unauthorized persons.~~

“Skimmer” means a device installed in the pool wall whose purpose is to remove floating debris and surface water to the filter. They shall include a weir to allow for the automatic adjustment to small changes in water level, maintaining skimming of the surface water.

“Skimmer Pool” See “Pool.”

- ~~“Skimmer Pool” means a pool using a skimmer system.~~

“Skimmer System” means periodic locations along the top of the pool wall for removal of water from the pool’s surface for treatment.

“Slide” means an aquatic feature where users slide down from an elevated height into water.

- ~~“Spa” means a permanent structure intended for either warm or cold water where prolonged exposure is not intended. Spa structures are intended to be used for bathing or other recreational uses and are not usually drained and refilled after each use. It may include, but is not limited to, hydrotherapy, air induction bubbles, and recirculation.~~
- “Drop Slide” means a slide that drops bathers into the water from a height above the water versus delivering the bather to the water entry point.
- “Pool Slide” means a slide having a configuration as defined in The Code of Federal Regulations (CFR) Ch. II, Title 16 Part 1207 by CSPC, or is similar in construction to a playground slide used to allow users to slide from an elevated height to a pool. They shall include children’s (tot) slides and all other non-flume slides that are mounted on the pool deck or within the basin of a public swimming pool.
- “Waterslide” means a slide that runs into a landing pool or runout through a fabricated channel with flowing water.

“Spa” See “Aquatic Venue.”

“Special Use Aquatic Venue” See “Aquatic Venue.”

“Standard” means something established by authority, custom, or general consent as a model or example.

“Storage” means the condition of remaining in one space for one hour or more. Materials in a closed pipe or tube awaiting transfer to another location shall not be considered to be stored.

“Structural Crack” means a break or split in the pool surface that weakens the structural integrity of the vessel.

“Substantial Alteration” means the alteration, modification, or renovation of an aquatic venue (*for outdoor aquatic facilities*) or indoor aquatic facility (*for indoor aquatic facilities*) where the total cost of the work exceeds 50% of the replacement cost of the aquatic venue (*for outdoor aquatic facilities*) or indoor aquatic facility (*for indoor aquatic facilities*).

“Superchlorination” means the addition of large quantities of chlorine-based chemicals to kill algae, destroy odors, or improve the ability to maintain a disinfectant residual. This process is different from Hyperchlorination, which is a prescribed amount to achieve a specific CT value whereas Superchlorination is the raising of free chlorine levels for water quality maintenance.

“Supplemental ~~Treatment System~~treatment systems” means those disinfection processes or systems which are ~~optional and~~ not required on an aquatic venue for health and safety reasons. They may be used to enhance overall system performance and improve water quality.

“Surf Pool” See “Pool.”

“Theoretical Peak Occupancy” means the anticipated peak number of bathers in an aquatic venue or the anticipated peak number of occupants of the decks of an aquatic facility. This is the lower limit of peak occupancy to be used for design purposes for determining services that support occupants. Theoretical peak occupancy is used to determine the number of showers. For aquatic venues, the theoretical peak occupancy is calculated around the type of water use or space:

- “Flat Water” means an aquatic venue in which the water line is static except for movement made by users usually as a horizontal use as in swimming. Diving spargers do not void the flat water definition.

~~“Agitated Therapy Pool” means a pool used exclusively for aquatic therapy, physical therapy, and/or rehabilitation to treat a diagnosed injury, illness, or medical condition, wherein the therapy is provided under the direct supervision of a licensed physical therapist, occupational therapist, or athletic trainer. This could include wound patients or immunocompromised patients whose health could be impacted if there is not additional water quality protection.~~

- “Water” means an aquatic venue with mechanical means (aquatic features) to discharge, spray, or move the water’s surface above and/or below the static water line of the aquatic venue so people are standing or playing vertically. Where there is no static water line, movement shall be considered above the deck plane.
- “Hot Water” means an aquatic venue with a water temperature over 90°F (32°C).
- “Stadium Seating” means an area of high-occupancy seating provided above the pool level for observation.

“Therapy Pool” See “Pool.”

“Toe Ledge” See “Underwater Ledge.”

“**Trichloramine**” means a disinfection by-product formed when chlorine binds to nitrogenous waste in pool water to form an amine-containing compound with three chlorine atoms (*NCI3*). It is a known acute respiratory and ocular irritant. It has low solubility in water and is rapidly released into the air above pools where it can accumulate, particularly in indoor settings.

“~~**Trihalomethanes or THM**~~” means chemical compounds in which three of the four hydrogen atoms of methane (*CH4*) are replaced by halogen atoms. ~~**Trihalomethanes THMs**~~ are ~~also~~ environmental pollutants, and many are considered carcinogenic.

“**Turnover**” or “**Turnover Rate**” means the period of time, usually expressed in hours, required to circulate a volume of water equal to the capacity of the aquatic venue~~pool, spa, or other water feature~~.

“**Underwater Bench**” means a submerged seat with or without hydrotherapy jets.

“**Underwater Ledge**” or “**Underwater Toe Ledge**~~toe ledge~~” means a continuous step in the pool wall that allows swimmers to rest by standing without treading water.

~~“**Underwater Shelf**” means a shallow area less than two feet in water depth that is primarily intended for lounging and sunbathing.~~

“**UV Transmissivity**” means the percentage measurement of ultraviolet light able to pass through a solution.

“**Wading Pool**” See “Pool.”

“**Waterslide**” See “Slide.”

- ~~• “**Vertical Use Water**” means an aquatic venue with mechanical means (*aquatic features*) to discharge, spray, or move the water's surface above and/or below the static water line of the aquatic venue so people are standing or playing vertically. Where there is no static water line, movement shall be considered above the deck plane.~~

~~“**Wading Pool**” means any pool used exclusively for wading and intended for use by children where the depth does not exceed 2 feet (0.6 m).~~

~~“**Water Slide**” means an attraction having a configuration that enables users to slide from an elevated height to a pool. A water slide must consist of one or more flumes, landing areas, catch pools or slide run-outs, and facilities for the disinfection and chemical treatment of the water.~~

“**Water Replenishment System**” means a way to remove water from the pool as needed and replace with make-up water in order~~shall be provided~~ to maintain water quality.

“Water Quality Testing Device” means a product designed to measure the level of a parameter in water. A WQTD includes a device or method to provide a visual indication of a parameter level, and may include one or more reagents and accessory items.

~~**“Wave Pools”** See “Pool.”~~

~~**“Wing Wall / Peninsula”** See “Peninsula / Wing Wall.”~~

~~**“Wave Pools”** means any pool designed to simulate breaking or cyclic waves for purposes of general play or surfing.~~

~~**“Wing Wall / Peninsula”** means a structural projection into a pool intended to provide separation within the body of water. Wing walls or peninsulas are not considered deck unless they are at least four feet clear in width. Wing walls or peninsulas may be used for lifeguarding depending on size, location and configuration.~~

“Zero Depth Entry” means a sloped entry into a pool from deck level into the interior of the pool as a means of access and egress.

~~that is 5'-0" in width or wider.~~

4.0 **Facility Design Standards and Construction**

The provisions of MAHC Chapter 4 (Facility Design Standards and Construction) apply to construction of a new AQUATIC FACILITY or AQUATIC VENUE or SUBSTANTIAL ALTERATION to an existing AQUATIC FACILITY or AQUATIC VENUE, unless otherwise noted.

4.1 **Plan Submittal**

4.1.1 **Plan Submittal**

4.1.1.1 **Purpose**

AQUATIC FACILITY construction plans shall be designed to provide sufficient clarity to indicate the location, nature, and extent of the work proposed.

4.1.1.2 **Conform**

AQUATIC FACILITY construction plans shall show in detail that it will conform to the provisions of this CODE and relevant laws, ordinances, rules, and regulations, as determined by the AHJ and to protect the health and SAFETY of the facility's BATHERS and PATRONS.

4.1.1.3 **Approved Plans**

No person shall begin to construct a new AQUATIC FACILITY or shall SUBSTANTIALLY ALTER an existing AQUATIC FACILITY without first having the construction plans detailing the construction or SUBSTANTIAL ALTERATION submitted to and approved by the AHJ.

4.1.1.4 **Plan Preparation**

All plans shall be prepared by a design professional who is registered or licensed to practice their respective design profession as defined by the state or local laws governing professional practice within the jurisdiction in which the project is to be constructed.

4.1.1.5 **Required Statements**

All construction plans shall include the following statements:

- 1) "The proposed AQUATIC FACILITY and all equipment shall be constructed and installed in conformity with the approved plans and specifications or approved amendments," and
- 2) "No SUBSTANTIAL ALTERATION, changes, additions, or equipment not specified in the approved plans or allowed in the CODE can be made or added until the plans for such SUBSTANTIAL ALTERATION, changes, additions, or equipment are submitted to and approved by the AHJ."

4.1.2 Content of Design Report

4.1.2.1 Basis of Design Report

4.1.2.1.1 Names / Addresses

AQUATIC FACILITY plans shall include the name, address, and contact information for the owner, designer, and builder if available at the time of submission.

4.1.2.1.2 Site Information

AQUATIC FACILITY plans shall include site information indicating at a minimum the location of all utilities, wells, topography, natural water features, and potential sources of surface drainage and pollution which may affect the proposed AQUATIC FACILITY.

4.1.2.1.3 Plot Plan

AQUATIC FACILITY plans shall include a site plot plan including:

- 1) A general map and detailed scaled drawings of the AQUATIC FACILITY site plan or floor plan with detailed locations of the AQUATIC ~~VENUES~~ and AQUATIC FEATURES; and
- 2) The locations of all water supply facilities, sources of drinking water, public or private sewers, and relative elevations of paved or other walkways and the EQUIPMENT ROOM floor shall be shown on the plans with the elevations of storm and sanitary sewer inverts and street grade.

4.1.2.2 Plans and Specifications

4.1.2.2.1 Drawings

Detailed scaled and dimensional drawings for each individual AQUATIC VENUE shall include an AQUATIC VENUE area plan and layout plan along with dimensioned longitudinal and transverse cross sections of the AQUATIC VENUE.

4.1.2.2.2 Venue Attributes

Detailed scaled and dimensional drawings for each individual AQUATIC VENUE shall include location and type of:

- 1) INLETS,
- 2) Overflows,
- 3) Drains,
- 4) Suction outlets,
- 5) Overflow gutters or devices,
- 6) Piping,
- 7) Designed POOL water elevation,
- 8) AQUATIC FEATURES such as ladders, stairs, diving boards, slides, and play features, **and**
- 9) Lighting,
- 10) Pool markings, and
- 11) Surface materials

4.1.2.2.3 Area Design

Detailed scaled and dimensional drawings of the AQUATIC FACILITY and for each individual AQUATIC VENUE, as appropriate, shall include location and type of:

- 1) Design of DECK, curb, or walls enclosing the AQUATIC VENUE,
- 2) DECK drains,
- 3) Paved walkways and other hardscape features,
- 4) Non-slip flooring,
- 5) ~~AQUATIC~~ AQUATIC VENUE area finishes,
- 6) Drinking fountains or other sources of drinking water,
- 7) Entries and exits,
- 8) Hose bibs,
- 9) Fences,
- 10) Telephones, and
- 11) Area lighting.

4.1.2.2.4 Venue Recirculation and Treatment Design

Detailed scaled and dimensional drawings for each individual AQUATIC VENUE shall contain a flow diagram showing the location, plan, elevation, and schematics/isometrics of:

- 1) Filters,
- 2) Pumps,
- 3) Chemical feeders and interlocks,
- 4) Chemical controllers and interlocks,
- 5) Secondary disinfection systems, if required,
- 6) Supplementary disinfection systems, if installed,
- 4)7) Ventilation devices or AIR HANDLING SYSTEMS,
- 5)8) Heaters,
- 6)9) Surge tanks, including operating levels,
- 7)10) BACKFLOW prevention assemblies and air gaps,
- 8)11) Valves,
- 9)12) Piping,
- 10)13) Flow meters,
- 11)14) Gauges,
- 12)15) Thermometers,
- 13)16) Test cocks,
- 14)17) Sight glasses, and
- 15)18) Drainage system for the disposal of AQUATIC VENUE water and filter wastewater.

4.1.2.2.5 Equipment Room Design

Detailed scaled and dimensional drawings for each individual AQUATIC VENUE shall contain a schematic layout of the AQUATIC VENUE EQUIPMENT ROOM (*or equipment area if permitted by the local AHJ*) showing accessibility for installation and maintenance.

4.1.2.2.6 Chemical Storage SpaceArea Design

Detailed scaled and dimensional drawings for each individual AQUATIC VENUE shall contain a schematic layout of the AQUATIC FACILITY CHEMICAL STORAGE SPACEAREA(s).

4.1.2.2.7 Hygiene Facility Design

Detailed scaled and dimensional drawings for each AQUATIC FACILITY shall show the location and number of all available HYGIENE FACILITIES provided including dressing rooms, lockers and basket STORAGE, showers, lavatory, toilet fixtures, and DIAPER-CHANGING STATIONS.

4.1.2.3 Technical Specifications

4.1.2.3.1 Accompanying~~Accompany~~ Drawings

Technical specifications for the construction of each AQUATIC VENUE and all appurtenances shall accompany the drawings for the AQUATIC FACILITY plans.

4.1.2.3.2 Technical Details

The technical specifications for each AQUATIC FACILITY and each AQUATIC VENUE shall include all construction details not shown on the plans that relate to the AQUATIC FACILITY.

4.1.2.3.3 Water Sources

The technical specifications for each AQUATIC FACILITY shall include the sources of all water supplies.

4.1.2.3.4 Area and Volume

Technical specifications shall include the water surface area and volume of each AQUATIC VENUE and associated water features, if applicable.

4.1.2.3.5 Theoretical Peak Occupancy~~Bather Load~~

The technical specifications for each AQUATIC FACILITY and each AQUATIC VENUE shall include THEORETICAL PEAK OCCUPANCY~~anticipated maximum BATHER LOAD~~, respectively.

4.1.2.3.5.1 Used for Designing Systems~~Bather Load Calculation~~

The THEORETICAL PEAK OCCUPANCY for an AQUATIC VENUE shall be used for designing systems that serve BATHERS and PATRONS. *(Note: The specified density factors are the lower limits for determining THEORETICAL PEAK OCCUPANCY.)*

4.1.2.3.5.2 Incorporate Non-Water Related Areas

The THEORETICAL PEAK OCCUPANCY for an AQUATIC FACILITY shall be used for designing systems that serve BATHERS and PATRONS and shall incorporate non-water related areas such as DECKS and other adjacent portions of the AQUATIC FACILITY not associated with the AQUATIC VENUE.

4.1.2.3.5.3 Calculating Theoretical Peak Occupancy

The THEORETICAL PEAK OCCUPANCY/BATHER LOAD shall be calculated by dividing the surface area in square feet² of the AQUATIC VENUE by the density factor (D) that fits the specific AQUATIC VENUE being considered.

$$\text{THEORETICAL PEAK OCCUPANCY/BATHER LOAD} = \text{AQUATIC VENUE surface area} / D$$

-The density factors (D) are:

Water/bather-related:

1) ~~FLAT/HORIZONTAL USE WATER density~~

2) 1) Density factor = 20 ft² (1.9 m²) per BATHER/ft² per person.

3) ~~AGITATED/VERTICAL USE WATER density~~

4) 2) Density factor = 15 ft² (1.4 m²) per BATHER/person.

5) ~~HOT WATER density~~

6) 3) Density factor = 10 ft² (0.9 m²) per BATHER/person.

4) WATERSLIDE LANDING POOL density factor = manufacturer-established capacity at any given time.

5) INTERACTIVE WATER PLAY water density factor = 10 ft² (0.9 m²) per BATHER on surface.

Non-water/PATRON-related

6) DECK density factor = 50 ft² (4.6 m²) per BATHER.

7) Stadium seating density factor = 6.6 ft² (0.6 m²) per BATHER.

4.1.2.3.5.3.1 Density Factor Modification

The density factors in MAHC Section 4.1.2.3.5.3 may be modified for higher BATHER or PATRON density, but they shall not be modified to be lower than the density factors listed in MAHC Section 4.1.2.3.5.3.

4.1.2.3.5.3.2 Aquatic Facility Theoretical Peak Occupancy

The THEORETICAL PEAK OCCUPANCY for an AQUATIC FACILITY shall be determined by adding the calculations for each AQUATIC VENUE in the AQUATIC FACILITY.

4.1.2.3.6 Equipment Characteristics and Rating

The technical specifications and supplemental engineering data for each AQUATIC FACILITY and each AQUATIC VENUE shall include:

- 1) Detailed information on the type, size, operating characteristics, and rating of all mechanical and electrical equipment;
- 2) Hydraulic computations for head loss in all piping and recirculation equipment; and
- 3) Pump curves that demonstrate that the selected recirculation pump(s) are adequate for the calculated required flows.

4.1.2.3.7 Recirculation Rate and Turnover

The technical specifications for each AQUATIC VENUE shall include the recirculation rate and TURNOVER time.

4.1.2.3.8 Filter Media

The technical specifications for each AQUATIC VENUE shall include information on the filter media such as diatomaceous earth, sand, gravel or other approved material.

4.1.2.3.9 Equipment Specifications

The technical specifications for each AQUATIC VENUE shall include information on each piece of equipment associated with that AQUATIC VENUE.

4.1.2.3.10 Safety Equipment Specifications

The technical specifications for each AQUATIC FACILITY shall include information on all aquatic SAFETY equipment.

4.1.2.3.11 Other Specifications

The technical specifications for each AQUATIC FACILITY and each AQUATIC VENUE shall include additional information related to the project requested by the AHJ for the purposes of the construction of the AQUATIC FACILITY and each AQUATIC VENUE and all appurtenances.

4.1.3 Plan Approval

4.1.3.1 New Construction

4.1.3.1.1 Approval Limitations

The AHJ shall clearly state on the plans the limitations of their approval.

~~4.1.3.1.2 Plan Review Training~~

~~The AHJ staff shall be adequately trained to conduct plan reviews.~~

~~4.1.3.1.3 Owner Responsibility~~

~~The owner shall have final responsibility for the accuracy and completeness of the plans and specifications, as well as for subsequent construction and installation.~~

~~4.1.3.1.4 Other Approvals~~

The approval shall also state that it is independent of all other required approvals such as Building, Zoning, Fire, Electrical, Structural, and any other approvals as required by local or state law or CODE and the applicant must separately obtain all other required approvals and permits.

4.1.3.1.35 Plan Review Coordination

The AHJ shall coordinate their AQUATIC FACILITY plan review and communicate their approval with other agencies involved in the AQUATIC FACILITY construction.

4.1.3.1.46 Plan Review Report

The AHJ shall provide a plan submission compliance review list to the AQUATIC FACILITY owner with the following information:

- 1) Categorical items marked satisfactory, unsatisfactory, not applicable, or insufficient information;
- 2) A comment section keyed to the compliance review list shall detail unsatisfactory and insufficient;
- 3) Indication of the AHJ approval or disapproval of the AQUATIC FACILITY construction plans;
- 4) In the case of a disapproval, specific reasons for disapproval and procedure for resubmittal; and
- 5) Reviewer's name, signature, and date of review.

4.1.3.1.57 Plans Maintained

The AQUATIC FACILITY owner shall maintain at least one set of their own approved plans made available to AHJ on-site for as long as the AQUATIC FACILITY is in operation.

4.1.3.2 Non-Substantial Alterations**4.1.3.2.1 Alteration Review**

The AQUATIC FACILITY owner planning a non-SUBSTANTIAL ALTERATION shall contact the AHJ to review proposed changes prior to starting the non-SUBSTANTIAL ALTERATION.

4.1.3.2.2 Alteration Scope

The AQUATIC FACILITY operator shall consult with the AHJ to determine if new or modified plans must be submitted for plan review and approval for other non-SUBSTANTIAL ALTERATIONS proposed.

4.1.3.2.3 Plan Review Fee

~~A plan review fee shall be paid if new or modified plans are required.~~

~~**4.1.3.2.3.1 Established**~~

~~The fees for the review of plans and associated construction inspections shall be established by the AHJ.~~

4.1.3.3 Replacements**4.1.3.3.1 Replacement Equipment Equivalency**

The replacement of pumps, filters, feeders, controllers, SKIMMERS, flow-meters, valves, or other similar equipment with identical or substantially similar equipment may be done without submission to the AHJ for approval of new or altered AQUATIC FACILITY plans.

4.1.3.3.2 Replacement Approval

The AQUATIC FACILITY owner shall submit to the AHJ the replacement equipment technical specification that verifies the proposed replacement equipment's equivalency to the originally approved and installed equipment prior to equipment's replacement.

4.1.3.3.3 Emergency Replacement

In emergencies, the replacement may be made prior to receiving the AHJ's approval, with the owner accepting responsibility for proper immediate replacement, if the equipment is not deemed equivalent by the AHJ.

4.1.3.3.3.1 Documentation

Where emergency replacements are installed as per MAHC Section 4.1.3.3.3, theThe owner shall submit documentation for review and approval of the replacement to the AHJ ~~for formal approval~~ within 45 days ~~of installation for review and approval~~.

4.1.3.3.4 Replacement Record Maintenance

The AHJ shall provide the AQUATIC FACILITY owner written approval or disapproval of the proposed replacement equipment's equivalency.

4.1.3.3.5 Documentation

Documentation of proposed, approved, and disapproved replacements shall be maintained in the AHJ's AQUATIC FACILITY files.

4.1.4 Compliance Certificate

4.1.4.1 Construction Compliance Certificate

A certificate of construction compliance shall be submitted to the AHJregulatory authority for all AQUATIC FACILITY plans for new construction and SUBSTANTIAL ALTERATIONS requiring AHJ approvals.

4.1.4.2 Certificate Preparation

This certificate shall be prepared by a licensed professional and be within the scope of their practice as defined by the state or local laws governing professional practice within the jurisdiction of the permit issuing official.

4.1.4.3 Certificate Statement

The certificate shall also include a statement that the AQUATIC FACILITY, all equipment, and appurtenances have been constructed and/or installed in accordance with approved plans and specifications.

4.1.4.4 Systems Commissioning

If commissioningCommissioning or testing reports for systems such as AQUATIC FACILITY lighting, air handling, recirculation, filtration, and/or DISINFECTION are conducted, then those reports, and ~~BATHER SAFETY~~ shall be included in furnished documentation.

4.1.4.5 Maintenance

Documentation of AQUATIC FACILITY new construction or SUBSTANTIAL ALTERATION plan compliance shall be maintained in the AHJ's AQUATIC FACILITY files.

4.1.5 Construction Permits

4.1.5.1 Building Permit for Construction

Construction permits required in this CODE and all other applicable permits shall be obtained before any AQUATIC FACILITY may be constructed.

4.1.5.2 Remodeling Building Permit

A construction permit or other applicable permits may be required from the ~~AHJ appropriate regulatory authority~~ before SUBSTANTIAL ALTERATION remodeling of an AQUATIC FACILITY.

4.1.5.3 Permit Issuance

The AHJ shall issue a permit to the owner to operate the AQUATIC FACILITY:

- 1) After receiving a certificate of completion from the design professional verifying information submitted, and
- 2) ~~When~~ When new construction, SUBSTANTIAL ALTERATIONS, or annual renewal requirements of this CODE have been met, ~~the AHJ shall issue a permit to the owner to operate the AQUATIC FACILITY.~~

4.1.5.4 Permit Denial

The permit (*license*) to operate may be withheld, revoked or denied by the AHJ for noncompliance of the AQUATIC FACILITY with the requirements of this ~~CODE~~ CODE, and the owner will be provided:

- 1) Specific reasons for disapproval and procedure for resubmittal;
- 2) Notice of the rights to appeal this denial and procedures for requesting an appeal; and
- 3) Reviewer's name, signature and date of review and denial.

4.1.5.5 Documentation

Documentation of AQUATIC FACILITY permit renewal or denial shall be maintained in the AHJ's AQUATIC FACILITY files.

4.2 Materials

4.2.1 Pools

4.2.1.1 Construction Material

~~AQUATIC~~ AQUATIC VENUES shall be constructed of reinforced concrete or impervious and structurally sound material(s), which provide a smooth, easily cleaned, watertight structure capable of withstanding the anticipated stresses/loads for full and empty

conditions taking into consideration climatic, hydrostatic, seismic, and the integration of the AQUATIC VENUE with other structural conditions and as required by applicable CODES.

4.2.1.2 Durability

All materials shall be inert, non-toxic, ~~and~~ resistant to corrosion, impervious, enduring, and resistant to damages related to environmental conditions of the installation region. ~~(such as freezing).~~

4.2.1.3 Areas Subject to Freezing

Where located in areas subject to freezing, AQUATIC VENUES and appurtenances shall be protected and designed from damage due to freezing.

4.2.1.4 Darker Colors

The AHJ may grant a variance to the color requirements of this CODE for Munsell color values less than 6.5.

4.2.1.52.2 Competitive Poolspools

Competitive or lap POOLS may have lane markings and end wall targets installed in accordance with FINA, NCAA, USA Swimming, NFSHSA, or other recognized STANDARD.

4.2.1.62.3 Design Parameters

Any graphics, color, or finish incorporated into the construction of a POOL or painted on the floor or walls must not prevent the detection of a BATHER in distress, algae, sediment, or other objects in the AQUATIC VENUE.

4.2.1.62.3.1 Permission in Writing

Permission in writing from the AHJ for the use of graphics that do not comply with the requirements of this CODE shall be obtained before the graphics are used.

4.2.1.73 Watertight

POOLS shall be designed in such a way to maintain their ability to retain the designed amount of water.

4.2.1.84 Smooth Finish

All vertical walls shall have a durable finish suitable for regular scrubbing and cleaning at the waterline.

4.2.1.84.1 Daily Cleaning

The finish shall be able to withstand daily brushing, scrubbing, and cleaning of the surface in accordance with the ~~professional society or~~ manufacturer's recommendations.

4.2.1.84.2 Skimmer Pools

SKIMMER POOLS shall have a ~~six~~6 inch (~~152~~150 mm) to 12 inch (~~305~~300 mm) high waterline finish that meets the requirements of MAHC Section 4.2.1.~~84~~ and 4.2.1.~~84~~.1.

4.2.1.~~84~~.3 Gutter / Perimeter Overflow Systems

Gutter or perimeter overflow systems shall have a minimum finish height of ~~two~~2 inches (~~51~~50 mm) that meets the requirements of MAHC Section 4.2.1.~~84~~ and 4.2.1.~~84~~.1.

4.2.1.~~84~~.4 Dark Colors

If dark colors in excess of what is required in this code are ~~used~~utilized for the POOL finish, these colors shall not extend more than ~~exceed a maximum height of~~ 12 inches (~~305~~300 mm) below the waterline.

4.2.1.95 Slip Resistant

POOL floors in areas less than ~~three~~3 feet (0.9 m) deep shall have a slip resistant finish with an acceptable coefficient of friction.

4.2.1.10 Stainless Steel, Vinyl, PVC-P or PVC Pools

Stainless steel, vinylVinyl, PVC-P, or PVC panel and liner POOL finish systems shall be acceptable provided that the system is installed on top of approved materials and design requirements as listed within this section or approved by the AHJ.

4.2.1.106.1 Damaged

If at any time the liner system is damaged or cut in such a way that its integrity is compromised, the POOL shall be shut down until the system is fully repaired.-

4.2.1.117 Not Permitted

Wood, sand, or earth shall not be permitted as an interior finish.

4.2.2 Indoor Aquatic FacilityNatatorium

4.2.2.1 Interior Finish

4.2.2.1.1- Relative Humidity

The interior finish of an INDOOR AQUATIC FACILITYa-NATATORIUM shall be designedsuitable for an indoor relative humidity as not less thanhigh as 80%.

4.2.2.2 Condensation Prevention

4.2.2.2.1 Cold Weather

INDOOR AQUATIC FACILITYNATATORIUM building envelope construction shall include a vapor-retarder/insulation arrangement to assist in preventing the condensation of water on inside building surfaces under the coldest outdoor conditions based on the ASHRAE climate data for the project locale or nearest reporting city and the highest design indoor relative humidity.

4.2.2.2.2 **Paint or Coating**

Where a paint or coating serves as the vapor retarder of an INDOOR AQUATIC FACILITY~~a NATATORIUM~~, the paint or coating shall be applied so as to produce a permeability rating of 0.2 U.S. perm ($11.4 \text{ ng}\cdot\text{s}^{-1}\cdot\text{m}^{-2}\cdot\text{Pa}^{-1}$) or less.

4.2.2.2.2.1 **Application**

The paint or coating shall be applied according to the manufacturer's recommendations for use as a vapor retarder.

4.2.2.2.3- **Perforated Interior-Finish Material**~~interior-finish-material~~

Where a perforated interior-finish material is used in an INDOOR AQUATIC FACILITY~~a NATATORIUM~~, as for acoustic effects, the perforated material shall not be considered to be a vapor retarder unless it has a listed permeability rating less than 0.2 U.S. perm ($11.4 \text{ ng}\cdot\text{s}^{-1}\cdot\text{m}^{-2}\cdot\text{Pa}^{-1}$).

4.2.2.3 **Mechanical Systems**

4.2.2.3.1- **Equipment Rooms**

For EQUIPMENT ROOMS, see MAHC Section~~section~~ 4.9.1.

4.2.2.3.2- **Chemical Storage Spaces**

For CHEMICAL STORAGE SPACES, see MAHC Section~~section~~ 4.9.2.

4.2.2.3.3 Indoor Aquatic Facility ~~Natorium~~ **Air Pressure**

AQUATIC FACILITY AIR HANDLING SYSTEM design, construction, and installation shall comply with the 2011 ASHRAE Applications Handbook on Natatorium Design ~~ASHRAE Standard~~~~ASHRAE STANDARD~~ 62.1, *Ventilation for Acceptable Indoor Air Quality*, and/or applicable local CODES with additional requirements as stated in section MAHC 4.6.2.-

4.2.2.3.3.1 **Chemical Storage Space Air Pressure**

AIR HANDLING~~VENTILATION~~ SYSTEM design for CHEMICAL STORAGE SPACES~~rooms~~ shall conform to the International Mechanical Code or Uniform Mechanical Code, and either the International Fire Code or the Uniform NFPA 1 Fire Code, and any applicable local CODES.-

4.2.2.3.4 **Air Ducts**

Where air ducts are required, they shall be resistant to corrosion from the airborne chemicals.

4.2.2.3.4.1 Material Options

Coated steel, aluminum, and fabric ducts may be options to consider.

4.2.2.3.4.2 Insulated Exterior

~~Ducts shall be insulated on the exterior of the duct with a inside, the insulation shall be rated moisture and mold-resistant material where the surface temperature of the duct is capable of being less than the airstream temperature within the duct. -resistant.~~

4.2.2.3.5- Filters

Filters for outdoor-air intake shall be rated moisture-resistant.

4.2.2.4 Indoor Aquatic FacilityNatorium Doors

4.2.2.4.1 Corrosion-Resistant

INDOOR AQUATIC FACILITYNATORIUM doors shall either be constructed of corrosion-resistant materials or have a covering or coating to withstand humid and CORROSIVE environments which is acceptable to the AHJ.

4.2.2.4.2 Uncontrolled Condensation

INDOOR AQUATIC FACILITYNATORIUM doors which may be exposed to temperatures below INDOOR AQUATIC FACILITYNATORIUM-air dew point shall have thermal breaks, insulation, and/or glazing as necessary to minimize the risk of uncontrolled condensation.-

4.2.2.4.2.1 Heating Systems

Exception-1: Other doors shall be acceptable, subject to approval by the AHJ, where heating systems are so arranged as to maintain such doors above the maximum design dew point of the INDOOR AQUATIC FACILITYNATORIUM air.

4.2.2.4.3 Biological Contaminants

INDOOR AQUATIC FACILITYNATORIUM doors and door-frame construction shall not contribute to the growth of biological CONTAMINANTS.

4.2.2.4.4 Air Leakage

INDOOR AQUATIC FACILITYNATORIUM doors and/or door frames shall be equipped with seals and/or gaskets to minimize air leakage when the door is closed.

4.2.2.4.5 Automatic Door Closer

All pedestrian doors around the INDOOR AQUATIC FACILITYNATORIUM perimeter shall be equipped with an automatic door closer capable of closing the door completely without human assistance.

4.2.2.4.5.1 Difference in Air Pressure

Door closers must be able to close the door against the specified difference in air pressure between the INDOOR AQUATIC FACILITYNATORIUMS and other INTERIOR SPACES.

4.2.2.5 Indoor Aquatic FacilityNatorium Windows

4.2.2.5.1 Frames

~~INDOOR AQUATIC FACILITY~~~~NATATORIUM~~ window frames shall be constructed of suitable materials or shall have a suitable covering or coating to withstand the expected atmosphere.

4.2.2.5.2 **Biological Contaminants**

~~INDOOR AQUATIC FACILITY~~~~NATATORIUM~~ window frames shall be constructed of materials that do not contribute to the growth of biological CONTAMINANTS.

4.2.2.5.3 **Thermal Breaks**

~~INDOOR AQUATIC FACILITY~~~~NATATORIUM~~ window frames shall have thermal breaks or be otherwise constructed to minimize the risk of uncontrolled condensation.

4.2.2.6 **Indoor Aquatic Facility**~~Natatorium~~ **Electrical Systems and Components**

Refer to MAHC Section 4.6. ~~32-~~

4.3 **Equipment Standards**

4.3.1 **General**

4.3.1.1- **Accredited Standards**~~Facility~~

Where applicable, all equipment used or proposed for use in ~~AQUATIC~~~~AQUATIC~~ FACILITIES governed under this CODE shall be:

- 1) ~~Of~~ a proven design and construction, and
- ~~2) Listed and labeled to a specific standard for the specified equipment use shall be listed by an~~NSF International, ~~Underwriters Laboratories or another~~ ANSI-accredited certification organization.

4.3.1.2 **No Standards**

Where STANDARDS do not exist, ~~technical documentation shall be submitted to the AHJ to demonstrate acceptability~~~~the design professional shall establish that adequate testing has been performed to establish suitability~~ for use in AQUATIC FACILITIES. ~~-~~

4.3.1.2.1 **Proof of Acceptability**

The AHJ shall have the authority to require tests, as proof of acceptability.

4.3.2 **Recirculation Systems and Equipment**

4.3.2.1- **ANSI-Accredited Testing**

Where applicable, all equipment used or proposed to use in AQUATIC FACILITIES shall be of proven design and construction and shall be listed and labeled by ~~an~~NSF International, ~~Underwriters Laboratories, or another~~ ANSI-accredited certification organization, or have EPA registration where applicable.

4.3.2.2 Suitable for ~~Intent~~**intention**

RECIRCULATION SYSTEMS and all materials used therein shall be suitable for their intended use and be installed in accordance with this CODE, as listed and labeled to a specific standard~~certified~~ by an ANSI-Accredited ~~third-party testing and~~ certification organization, and as specified by the manufacturer.—

4.4 Aquatic Venue Operation and Facility Maintenance **[N/A]**

4.5 Aquatic Venue Structure

4.5.1 Design for Risk Management

Design of AQUATIC FACILITIES and/or AQUATIC VENUE(s) shall include the owner and/or an aquatic risk management consultant to incorporate operational considerations such as the layout of zones of PATRON surveillance.

4.5.1.1 Basic Requirements

The AQUATIC VENUE shape shall provide for the SAFETY of swimmers, thorough and complete circulation of the water, the ability to clean and maintain the AQUATIC VENUE, and the supervision of BATHERS and PATRONS using the AQUATIC VENUE.—

4.5.1.2 Water Clarity

The water in an AQUATIC VENUE shall be sufficiently clear such that the bottom is visible while the water is static.

4.5.1.2.1 Observing Water Clarity

To make this observation, a four inch x four inch square (10.2 cm x 10.2 cm) marker tile in a contrasting color to the POOL floor or main suction outlet shall be located at the deepest part of the POOL.

4.5.1.2.2 Pools Over Ten Feet Deep

For POOLS over 10 feet deep (3.0 m) an eight inch by eight inch square (20.3 cm x 20.3 cm) marker tile in a contrasting color to the POOL floor or main suction outlet shall be located at the deepest part of the POOL.

4.5.1.2.3 Visible

This reference point shall be visible at all times at any point on the DECK up to 30 feet (9.1 m) away in a direct line of sight from the tile or main drain.

4.5.1.2.4 Spas

For SPAS, this test shall be performed when the water is in a non-turbulent state and bubbles have been allowed to dissipate.

4.5.2 Bottom Slope

4.5.2.1 Parameters and Variance

The bottom slope of a POOL shall be governed by the following parameters, but variances may be granted for special uses and situations so long as public SAFETY and health are not compromised.

4.5.2.2 Under ~~Five~~5 Feet

In water depths under ~~five~~5 feet (~~1.52~~ 1.52 m), the slope of the floor of all POOLS shall not exceed ~~one~~4 foot (~~30.5 cm~~0.3 m) vertical drop for every 12 feet (~~3.766~~ 3.766 m) horizontal.

4.5.2.3 Over ~~Five~~5 Feet

In water depths ~~five~~5 foot (~~1.5~~ 1.5 m) and greater, the slope of the floors of all POOLS shall not exceed ~~one~~4 foot (~~30.5 cm~~0.3 m) vertical to ~~three~~3 feet (0.9 m) horizontal, except that POOLS designed and used for competitive diving shall be designed to meet the STANDARDS of the sanctioning organization (such as NFSHSA, NCAA, USA Diving or FINA).

4.5.2.4 Drain

POOLS shall be designed so that they drain without leaving puddles or trapped standing water.

4.5.3 ~~Access Ladders/Recessed Steps/Stairs~~

4.5.4 ~~Pool Access / Egress~~

4.5.34.1 Accessibility

Each POOL shall have a minimum of two means of access and egress with the exception of: -

- 1) WATERSLIDE LANDING POOLS,
- 2) WATERSLIDE RUNOUTS, and
- 3) WAVE POOLS.

4.5.34.2 Acceptable Means

Acceptable means of access / egress shall include stairs / ~~handrail~~hand rails, grab rails / RECESSED STEPS, ladders, ramps, swimouts, and zero-depth entries.

4.5.34.3 Large Venues

For POOLS wider than ~~30 feet~~30' (9.144 m), such means of access / egress shall be provided on each side of the POOL, and shall not be more than ~~75 feet~~75' (22.9 m) apart.

4.5.4 Stairs**4.5.5 Stairs****4.5.5.1 Slip Resistant**

Where ~~stairs are~~ provided, ~~stairs~~ they shall be constructed with slip-resistant materials.

4.5.45.2 Outlined Edges

The leading horizontal and vertical edges of stair treads shall be outlined with slip-resistant contrasting tile or other permanent marking of not less than ~~one~~¹ inch (25.4 mm) and not greater than ~~two~~² inches (50.8 mm).

4.5.45.3 Deep Water

Where stairs are provided in POOL water depths greater than ~~five feet (1.5 m)~~, they shall ~~be recessed and not protrude into the swimming area of the POOL.~~^{4.0 feet (1.2 m)}, the lowest tread shall be not less than ~~four~~^{4.0} feet (1.2 m) below ~~normal water~~^{the DECK} elevation.

4.5.45.4 Rectangular Stairs

Traditional rectangular stairs shall have a minimum uniform horizontal tread depth of 12 inches (~~30.5 cm~~^{0.3 m}), and a minimum unobstructed tread width of 24 (~~0.6 m~~) inches (~~61.0 cm~~).

4.5.45.5 Dimensions

Dimensions of stair treads for other types of stairs shall conform to requirements of

- 1) MAHC Table 4.5.4.5.
- 2) MAHC-6, Figure 4.5.4.5.6.1,
- 3) MAHC Figure 4.5.4.5.6.2, and
- 4) MAHC Figure 4.5.4.5.6.3.

Table 4.5.4.5.6: Required Dimensions for Stair Treads and Risers

Dimensions	T-1 Standard	T-1 Convex, Concave, Triangular	T-2	W-1	H-1
Minimum	12 inches (30.5 cm)	21 inches (53.3 cm)	12 inches (30.5 cm)	24 inches (61.0 cm)	6 inches (15.2 cm)
Maximum	18 inches (45.7 cm)	24 inches (61.0 cm)	16 inches (40.6 cm)	N/A	12 inches (30.5 cm)

Dimensions	T-1 Standard	T-1 Convex, Concave, Triangular	T-2	W-1	H-1
Minimum	14"	21"	12"	24"	6"
Maximum	18"	24"	16"	N/A	12"

Figure 4.5.4.5-6.1: Stair Treads and Risers

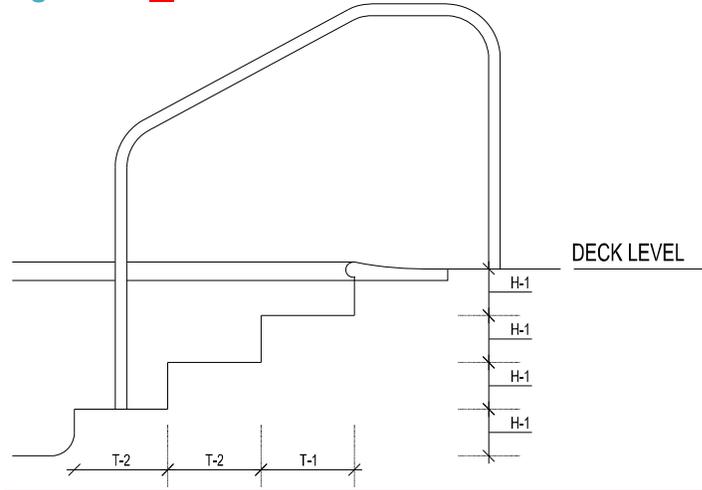


Figure 4.5.4.5-6.2: Stair Treads

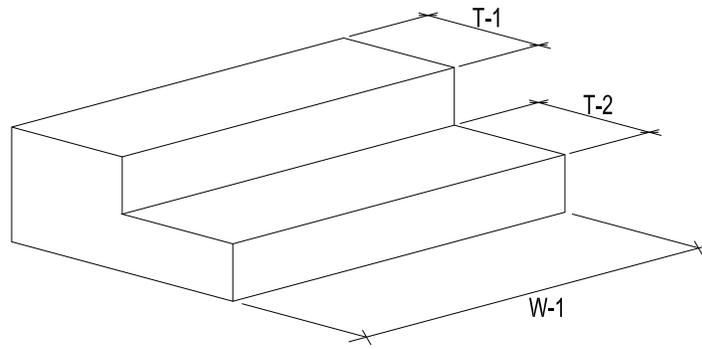
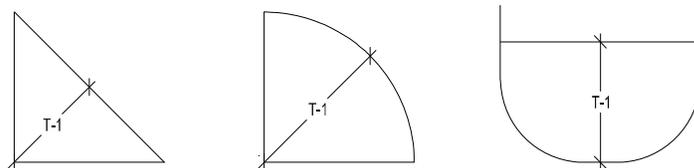


Figure 4.5.4.5-6.3: Unique Stair Treads



4.5.4.65.7 Stair Risers

Stair risers shall have a minimum uniform height of ~~six~~ inches (~~0.152 m~~) and a maximum height of 12 inches (~~30.5 cm~~), with a tolerance of ~~1/2~~ inches (~~12.743 mm~~) between adjacent risers. Stairs shall not be used underwater to transition between two sections of pool of different depths.

Note: The bottom riser may vary due to potential cross slopes with the POOL floor; however, the bottom step riser may not exceed the maximum allowable height required by this section.

4.5.4.75.8 Top Surface

The top surface of the uppermost stair tread shall be located not more than 12 inches (~~30.5 cm~~) below the POOL coping or DECK.

4.5.4.85.9 Perimeter Gutter Systems

For POOLS with PERIMETER GUTTER SYSTEMS, the gutter may serve as a step, provided that the gutter is provided with a grating or cover and conforms to all construction and dimensional requirements herein specified.

4.5.5.6 Handrails

4.5.56.1 Provided

~~Handrail~~Hand-rail(s) shall be provided for each set of stairs.

4.5.56.2 Corrosion-resistant

~~Handrails~~Hand-rails shall be constructed of corrosion-resistant materials, and anchored securely.

4.5.56.3 Upper Railing

The upper railing surface of ~~handrail~~hand-rails shall extend above the POOL coping or DECK a minimum of 28 inches (~~71.1 cm~~).

4.5.56.4 Wider Than Five than 5 feet

Stairs wider than ~~five~~5 feet (~~1.552 m~~) shall have at least one additional ~~handrail~~hand-rail for every 12 feet (~~3.765 m~~) of stair width.

4.5.56.5 ADA Accessibility

~~Handrail~~Hand-rail outside dimensions intended to serve as a means of ADA accessibility shall conform to requirements of MAHC Section 4.5.5.7.6.5.1 and 4.5.6.5.2 (below).

4.5.6.5.61 Support

~~Handrails~~Hand-rails shall be designed to resist a load of 50 pounds (22.7 kg) per linear foot applied in any direction and independently at the top and to transfer this load through the supports to the POOL or DECK structure.

4.5.6.5.2 — 200 Pound Load

~~Hand rails shall also be designed to resist a single concentrated load of 200 pounds (90.7 kg) applied in any direction at any location along the top.~~

4.5.6.5.3 — Attachment Devices

Hand rails shall ~~be designed have attachment devices and supporting structure~~ to transfer ~~these~~ loads ~~through the supports~~ to the POOL or DECK structure. ~~—~~

4.5.5.7.6.6 Dimensions

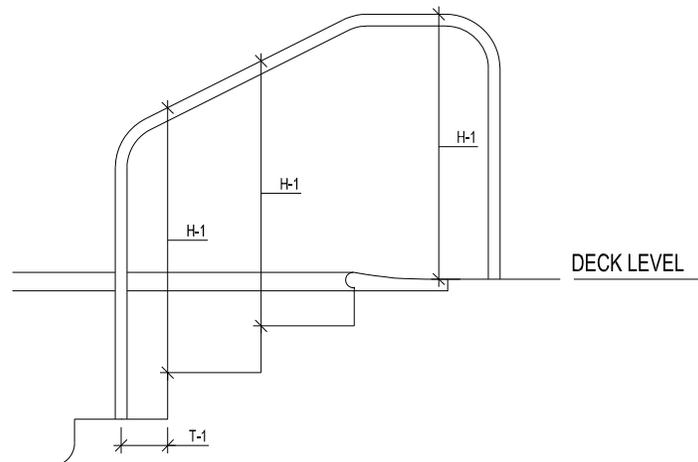
Dimensions of ~~handrailshand~~ rails shall conform to requirements of MAHC Table 4.5.56.7 and MAHC Figure 4.5.56.7.1.

Table 4.5.56.7: Stair ~~Handrail~~ Hand Rail Dimensions

Dimensions	T-1	H-1
Minimum	3 inches (7.6 cm)	28 inches (71.1 cm)
Maximum	N/A	36 inches (91.4 cm)

<i>Dimensions</i>	<i>T-1</i>	<i>H-1</i>
Minimum	3"	27"
Maximum	N/A	36"

Figure 4.5.56.7.1: Stair ~~Handrails~~ Hand Rails



4.5.67 Grab Rails

4.5.67.1 Corrosion- Resistant

Where grab rails are provided, they shall be constructed of corrosion-resistant materials.

4.5.67.2 Anchored

Grab rails shall be anchored securely.

4.5.67.3 Provided

Grab rails shall be provided at both sides of RECESSED STEPS.

4.5.67.4 Clear Space

The horizontal clear space between grab rails shall be not less than 18 inches (45.7 cm~~0.46 m~~) and not more than 24 inches (61.0 cm~~6 m~~).

4.5.67.5 Upper Railing

The upper railing surface of grab rails shall extend above the POOL coping or DECK a minimum of 28 inches (71.1 cm~~0.7 m~~).

4.5.7.6 Support 50 pounds

Grab rails shall be designed to resist a load of 50 pounds (22.7 kg) per linear foot applied in any direction and independently a single concentrated load of 200 pounds (90.7 kg) applied in any direction at any location. Grab rails shall be designed to transfer these loads through the supports to the POOL or DECK structure.at the top.

~~4.5.7.7 Transfer load~~

~~Grab rails shall be designed to transfer this load through the supports to the POOL or DECK structure.~~

~~4.5.7.8 200 Pounds~~

~~Grab rails shall also be designed to resist a single concentrated load of 200 pounds (90.7 kg) applied in any direction along the top.~~

~~4.5.7.9 Attachment Devices~~

~~Grab rails shall have attachment devices and supporting structure to transfer this load to the POOL or DECK structure.~~

4.5.8 Recessed Steps

4.5.78.1 Slip-Resistant

RECESSED STEPS shall be slip-resistant.-

4.5.78.2 Easily Cleaned

RECESSED STEPS shall be designed to be easily cleaned.-

4.5.78.3 Drain

RECESSED STEPS shall drain into the POOL.

4.5.78.4 Dimensions

Dimensions of RECESSED STEPS shall conform to requirements of:

- 1) MAHC Table 4.5.7.4,
- 2) MAHC 8.5, Figure 4.5.7.48-5.1, and
- 3) MAHC Figure 4.5.7.48-5.2.

Table 4.5.7.4: 8-5: Recessed Step Dimensions

Dimensions	H-1	H-2	W-1	D-1
Minimum	6 inches (15.2 cm)	5 inches (12.7 cm)	12 inches (30.5 cm)	5 inches (12.7 cm)
Maximum	12 inches (30.5 cm)	N/A	N/A	N/A

Dimensions	H-1	H-2	W-1	D-1
Minimum	6"	5"	12"	5"
Maximum	12"	N/A	N/A	N/A

Figure 4.5.7.48-5.1: Recessed Step Dimensions

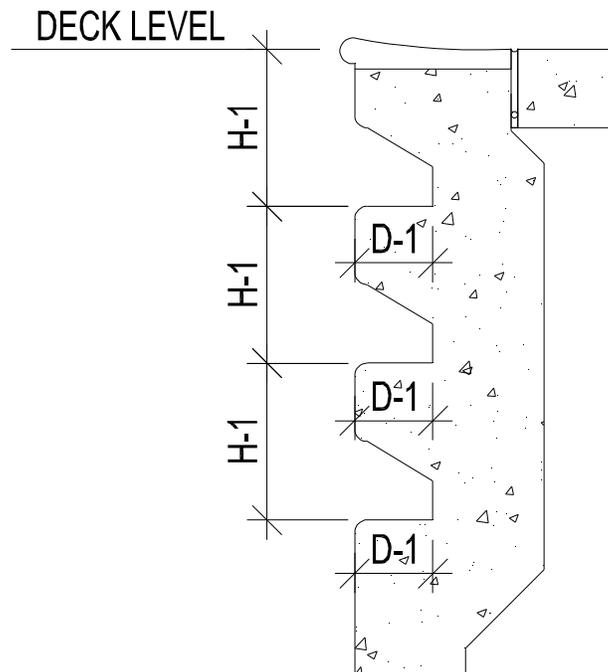
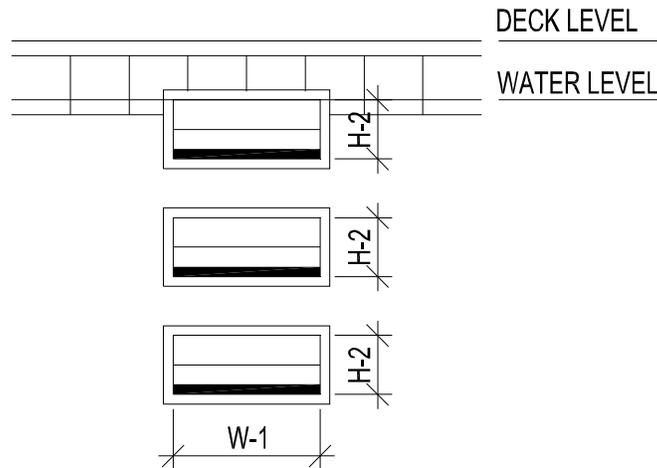


Figure 4.5.7.48-5.2: Recessed Step Dimensions

4.5.7.58-6 Uniformly Spaced

RECESSED STEPS shall be uniformly spaced not less than six inches (0.15.2 cm-m) and not more than 12 inches (30.5 cm0.3 m) vertically along the POOL wall.

4.5.8-7.6 Uppermost Step

The top surface of the uppermost RECESSED STEP shall be located not more than 12 inches (30.5 cm0.3 m) below the POOL coping or DECK.

4.5.7.78-8 Perimeter Gutter Systems

For POOLS with PERIMETER GUTTER SYSTEMS, the gutter may serve as a step, provided that the gutter is provided with a grating or cover and conforms to all construction and dimensional requirements herein specified.

4.5.89 Ladders

4.5.89.1 General Guidelines for Ladders

4.5.89.1.1 Corrosion-Resistant

Where ~~ladders are~~ provided, ladderthey shall be constructed of corrosion-resistant materials.-

4.5.89.1.2 Anchored

Ladders shall be anchored securely to the DECK.-

4.5.89.2 Ladder ~~Handrails~~Hand Rails

4.5.89.2.1 Two ~~Handrails~~ Provided

Ladders shall have two handrails.~~hand-rails~~.

4.5.89.2.2 Clear Space

The horizontal clear space between ~~handrail~~~~hand-rails~~ shall be not less than 17 inches (~~0.43~~2 cm-m) and not more than 24 inches (61.0 cm-6 m).

4.5.89.2.3 Upper Railing

The upper railing surface of ~~handrail~~~~hand-rails~~ shall extend above the POOL coping or DECK a minimum of 28 inches (710.7 cmm).

4.5.89.2.4 Pool Wall

The clear space between ~~handrail~~~~hand-rails~~ and the POOL wall shall be not less than ~~three~~3 inches (7.6 cm~~76 mm~~) and not more than ~~six~~6 inches (15.2 cm~~152 mm~~).

4.5.89.2.5 Support Resist Load

Ladders shall be designed to resist a load of 50 pounds (22.7 kg) per linear foot applied in any direction and independently a single concentrated load of 200 pounds (90.7 kg) applied in any direction at any location. at the top.

4.5.89.2.5.16- Transfer Loads

Ladders shall be designed to transfer these load~~this load~~ through the supports to the POOL or DECK structure.

4.5.89.2.7 Concentrated Load

~~Ladders shall also be designed to resist a single concentrated load of 200 pounds (90.7 kg) applied in any direction along the top.~~

4.5.9.2.8 Support

~~Ladders shall have attachment devices and supporting structure to transfer this load to the POOL or DECK structure.~~

4.5.9.3 Ladder Treads

4.5.89.3.1 Slip Resistant

Ladder treads shall be slip-resistant.

4.5.89.3.2 Tread Depth

Ladder treads shall have a minimum horizontal tread depth of 1.5 inches (3.8 cm~~38 mm~~) and the distance between the horizontal tread and the POOL wall shall not be greater than four4 inches (10.2 cm~~100 mm~~).

4.5.89.3.3 Uniformly Spaced

Ladder treads shall be uniformly spaced not less than seven7 inches (17.8 cm~~0.18 m~~) and not more than 12 inches (30.5 cm~~0.3 m~~) vertically at the ~~handrails~~~~hand-rails~~.

4.5.89.3.4 Upmost Ladder Tread

The top surface of the upmost ladder tread shall be located not more than 12 inches (30.5 cm~~0.3 m~~) below the POOL coping, gutter, or DECK.-

4.5.910 Zero Depth (Sloped) Entries

4.5.910.1 Slip Resistant

Where ZERO DEPTH ENTRIES are provided, they shall be constructed with slip-resistant materials.

4.5.910.2 Maximum Floor Slope

ZERO DEPTH ENTRIES shall have a maximum floor slope of 1:12, consistent with the requirements of MAHC Section 4.5.2.2.

4.5.910.2.1 Slope Changes

Changes in floor slope shall be permitted.

4.5.910.3 Trench Drains

Trench drains shall be used along ZERO DEPTH ENTRIES at the waterline to facilitate surface skimming. The trenches may be flat or follow the slope of the ZERO DEPTH ENTRY. Any handholds that present a trip hazard shall not be continuous along the ZERO DEPTH ENTRY.

4.5.9.3.1 Flat or Follow Slope

~~11 The trenches may be flat or follow the slope of the ZERO DEPTH ENTRY.~~

4.5.9.3.2 Handholds

~~Any handholds that present a trip hazard shall not be continuous along the ZERO DEPTH ENTRY.~~

4.5.10 Disabled Access

4.5.104.1- Conform to ADA Standards

Access for disabled persons shall conform to ADA Standards as approved by the Department of Justice.-

4.5.1112 Color and Finish

4.5.1112.1 White or Light Pastel

Floors and walls below the water line shall be white or light pastel in color such that from the POOL DECK a BATHER is visible on the POOL floor and the following items can be identified:-

- 1) Algae growth, debris or dirt within the pool, and
- 2) CRACKS in the surface finish of the POOL, and
- 3) Marker tiles defined in 4.5.1.2.

4.5.1112.1.1 Munsell Color Value

The finish shall be at least 6.5 on the Munsell color value scale.

4.5.1142.1.2 Exceptions~~Exception~~

An exception shall be made for the following AQUATIC VENUE components:

- 1) Competitive lane markings,
- 2) Dedicated competitive diving well floors,
- 3) Step or bench edge markings,
- 4) POOLS shallower than 24 inches (~~61.0 cm~~), ~~6 m~~), or
- 5) Water line tiles,
- 6) WAVE POOL and SURF POOL depth change indicator tiles, or
- 5)7) Other approved designs.

4.5.1142.1.3 Darker Colors~~colors~~

Munsell color values less than 6.5~~Darker~~ colors or designs such as rock formations may be permitted by the AHJ as long as the ~~above~~ criteria in MAHC Section 4.5.11.1 are met.

4.5.1243 Walls

4.5.1243.1 Plumb

POOL walls shall be plumb within a +/- ~~three~~3 degree tolerance to a water depth of at least ~~five~~5 feet (1.5 m), unless the wall design requires structural support ledges and slopes below to support the upper wall. Refer to MAHC Figure 4.5. ~~1243.4~~ below.

4.5.1243.2 Support Ledges and Slopes

All structural support ledges and slopes of the wall shall fall entirely within a plane slope from the water line at not greater than a +/- ~~three~~3 degree tolerance.

4.5.12.2.1 Contrasting Color

A contrasting color shall be provided on the edges of any support ledge to draw attention to the ledge for BATHER SAFETY.

4.5.1243.3 Rounded Corners

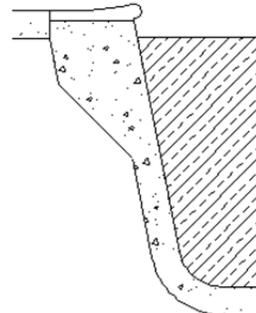
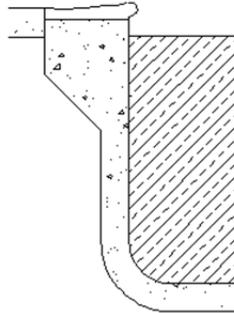
All corners created by adjoining walls shall be rounded or have a radius in both the vertical and horizontal dimensions to eliminate sharp corners.

4.5.1243.4 No Projections

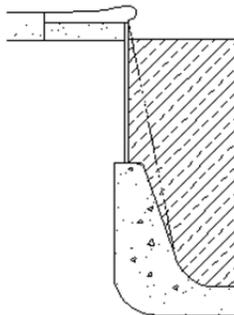
There shall be no projections from a POOL wall with the exception of structures or elements such as stairs, grab rails, ladders, ~~handhold~~~~hand holds~~, PENINSULAS, WING WALLS, underwater lights, SAFETY ropes, WATERSLIDES, play features, other approved POOL amenities, UNDERWATER BENCHES, and UNDERWATER LEDGES as described in this section. Refer to MAHC Figure 4.5. ~~1243.4~~ below.

Figure 4.5.1243.4: Pool Walls

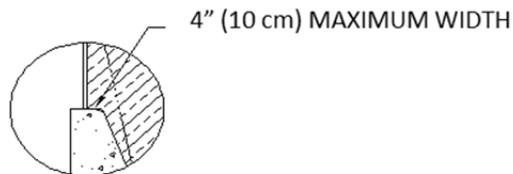
- (A) Plumb within a +/- 3 degree tolerance. (B) Uniform slope not greater than 11 degrees or 1 in 5 from plumb.



- (C) Structural support ledge all within 1 in 5 slope.



- (D) Underwater Ledge for support of upper wall.



4.5.1314 Structural Stability

4.5.1314.1 Withstand Loads

POOLS shall be designed to withstand the reasonably anticipated loads imposed by POOL water, BATHERS/POOL-PATRONS, and adjacent soils or structures.

4.5.1314.2 Hydrostatic Relief Valve

A hydrostatic relief valve and/or suitable under drain system shall be provided where the water table exerts hydrostatic pressure to uplift the pool when empty or drained~~when site conditions warrant.~~

4.5.1314.3 Freezing

POOLS and related circulation piping shall be designed with a winterizing strategy when in an area subject to freeze/thaw cycles.

4.5.14 Handholds~~15 Hand Holds~~

4.5.1415.1 Handholds~~Hand Holds~~ Provided

Where not otherwise exempted, every POOL shall be provided with handholds~~hand holds~~ (perimeter gutter system, coping, horizontal bars, recessed handholds, cantilevered

decking) around the perimeter of the POOL where the water depth at the wall exceeds 24 inches (61.0 cm). ~~0.6 m). These handholds shall be installed not greater than 12 inches (305 mm) above, or 3 inches (75 mm) below static water level.~~

4.5.14.1.1 Installed

These handholds shall be installed not greater than nine inches (22.9 cm) above, or three inches (7.6 cm) below static water level.

4.5.14.2- Horizontal Recesses

Horizontal recesses may be used for ~~handholdshand holds~~ provided they are a minimum of 24 inches (61.0 cm-~~6 m~~) long, a minimum of ~~four~~4 inches (10.2 cm~~100 mm~~) high and between ~~two~~2 inches (5.1 cm~~50 mm~~) and ~~three~~3 inches (7.6 cm~~75 mm~~) deep.

4.5.14.2.1 Drain

Horizontal recesses shall drain into the POOL.

4.5.14.2.2 Consecutive Recesses

Horizontal recesses need not be continuous but consecutive recesses shall be separated by no more than 12 inches (30.5 cm~~0.3 m~~) of wall.

4.5.14.3 Decking

Where PERIMETER GUTTER SYSTEMS are not provided, a coping or cantilevered decking of reinforced concrete or material equivalent in strength and durability, with rounded, slip-resistant edges shall be provided.

4.5.14.4 Coping Dimensions

The overhang for coping or cantilevered decking shall not be greater than ~~two~~2 inches (50 mm) from the vertical plane of the POOL wall, nor less than ~~one~~1 inch (2.5 cm~~25 mm~~).

4.5.14.5 Coping Thickness

The overhang for coping or cantilevered decking shall not exceed ~~32.5~~ inches (8.9 cm~~64 mm~~) in thickness for the last ~~two~~2 inches (5.1 cm~~50 mm~~) of the overhang.-

4.5.15.16 Infinity Edges

4.5.15.16.1 Perimeter Restrictions

Not more than fifty percent (50%) of the POOL perimeter shall incorporate an INFINITY EDGE detail, unless an adjacent and PATRON accessible DECK space conforming to MAHC Section 4.8.1 is provided.

4.5.15.16.2 Length

The length of an INFINITY EDGE shall be no more than 30 feet (9.1 m) long when in water depths greater than ~~five~~5 feet (1.5 m).

4.5.1546.2.1 Shallow Water

No maximum distance is enforced for the length of INFINITY EDGES in shallow water five feet (1.5 m) and less.

4.5.1546.3 Handholds

Handholds conforming to the requirements of MAHC Section 4.5.1415 shall be provided for INFINITY EDGES, which may be separate from, or incorporated as part of the INFINITY EDGE detail.

4.5.1546.4 Construction Guidelines

Where INFINITY EDGES are provided, they shall be constructed of reinforced concrete or other impervious and structurally rigid material(s), and designed to withstand the loads imposed by POOL water, BATHERS/POOL PATRONS, and adjacent soils or structures.

4.5.1546.5 Overflow Basins

Troughs, basins, or capture drains designed to receive the overflow from INFINITY EDGES shall be watertight and, free from STRUCTURAL CRACKS.

4.5.1546.5.1 Finish

Troughs, basins, or capture drains designed to receive the overflow from INFINITY EDGES shall have a non-toxic, smooth, and slip-resistant finish.

4.5.1546.6 Maximum Height

The maximum height of the wall outside of the INFINITY EDGE shall not exceed 30 inches (0.762 m) to the adjacent grade and capture drain.

4.5.1647 Underwater Benches

4.5.1647.1 Slip Resistant

Where provided, UNDERWATER BENCHES ~~are provided, they~~ shall be constructed with slip-resistant materials.

4.5.1647.2 Outlined Edges

The leading horizontal and vertical edges of UNDERWATER BENCHES shall be outlined with slip-resistant color contrasting tile or other permanent marking of not less than 3/4 inch (1.9 cm/19.05 mm) and not greater than two inches (5.1 cm/50 mm).

4.5.1647.3 Maximum Water Depth

UNDERWATER BENCHES may be installed in areas of varying depths, but the maximum POOL water depth in that area shall not exceed five feet (1.5 m).

4.5.1647.4 Maximum Seat Depth

The maximum submerged depth of any seat or sitting bench shall be 20 inches (50.8 cm/0.5 m) measured from the water line.

4.5.1718 Underwater Ledges

4.5.1718.1 Slip Resistant

Where UNDERWATER TOE LEDGES are provided to enable swimmers in deep water to rest, or to provide structural support for an upper wall, they shall be constructed with slip-resistant materials.

4.5.1718.2 Protrude

UNDERWATER TOE LEDGES for resting may be recessed, or protrude beyond the vertical plane of the POOL wall, provided they meet the criteria for slip resistance and tread depth outlined in this section.

4.5.1718.3 Five Feet or Greater

UNDERWATER TOE LEDGES for resting shall only be provided within areas of a POOL with water depths of five feet (1.5 m) or greater.

4.5.1718.3.1 Underwater Toe Ledge

UNDERWATER TOE LEDGES must start no earlier than four lineal feet (1.2 m) to the deep side of the five foot (1.5 m) slope break.

4.5.1718.3.2 Below Water Level

UNDERWATER TOE LEDGES must be at least four feet (1.2 m) below static water level.

4.5.1718.4 Structural Support

UNDERWATER LEDGES for structural support of upper walls are allowed.

4.5.1718.5 Outlined

The edges of UNDERWATER TOE LEDGES shall be outlined with slip-resistant color contrasting tile or other permanent marking of not less than one inch (2.5 cm~~25 mm~~) and not greater than two inches (5.1 cm~~50 mm~~).

4.5.1718.5.1 Visible

If they project past the plane of the POOL wall, the edges of UNDERWATER TOE LEDGES shall be clearly visible from the DECK.

4.5.1718.6 Tread Depths

UNDERWATER TOE LEDGES shall have a maximum uniform horizontal tread depth of four inches (10.2 cm). See MAHC~~100 mm~~. Figure 4.5.~~12~~4.

4.5.1819 Underwater Shelves

4.5.1819.1 Immediately Adjacent

UNDERWATER SHELVES may be constructed immediately adjacent to water shallower than five feet (1.5 m).

4.5.1849.2 Nosing

UNDERWATER SHELVES shall have a slip-resistant, color contrasting nosing at the leading horizontal and vertical edges on both the top of horizontal edges and leading vertical edges and should be viewable from the DECK or from underwater.

4.5.1849.3 Maximum Depth

UNDERWATER SHELVES shall have a maximum depth of 24 inches (~~61.0 cm~~ 6 m).

4.5.1920 Depth Markers and Markings**4.5.1920.1 Location****4.5.1920.1.1 Markings**

POOL water depths shall be clearly and permanently marked at the following locations:

- 1) Minimum depth,
- 2) Maximum depth,
- 3) On both sides and at each end of the POOL and,
- 4) At the break in the floor slope between the shallow and deep portions of the POOL.

4.5.1920.1.2 Depth Measurements

Depth markers shall be located on the vertical POOL wall and positioned to be read from within the POOL.

4.5.1920.1.3 Below Handhold

Where depth markings cannot be placed on the vertical wall above the water level, other means shall be used so that the markings will be plainly visible to persons in the POOL.

4.5.1920.1.4 Coping or Deck

Depth markers shall also be located on the POOL coping or DECK within 18 inches (~~0.45.7 cm~~ m) of the POOL structural wall or perimeter gutter.

4.5.1920.1.5 Read on Deck

Depth markers shall be positioned to be read while standing on the DECK facing the POOL.

4.5.1920.1.6 Twenty-Five Foot~~25'~~ Intervals

Depth markers shall be installed at not more than 25 foot (7.6 m) intervals around the POOL perimeter edge and according to the requirements of this section. In addition, for water less than five feet (1.5 m) in depth, the depth shall be marked at one foot (30.5 cm) depth intervals.

4.5.1920.2 Construction / Size

4.5.1920.2.1 Durable

Depth markers shall be constructed of a durable material resistant to local weather conditions. ~~Any depth markings that are illegible are required to be replaced.~~

4.5.1920.2.2 Slip Resistant

Depth markers shall be slip resistant when they are located on horizontal surfaces.

4.5.1920.2.3 Color and Height

Depth markers shall have letters and numbers with a minimum height of ~~four~~4 inches (~~10.2 cm~~100 mm) of a color contrasting with background.

4.5.1920.2.4 Feet and Inches

Depth markers shall be marked in units of feet and inches.

4.5.1920.2.4.1 Abbreviations

Abbreviations of “FT” and “IN” may be used in lieu of “FEET” and “INCHES.”

4.5.1920.2.4.1.1 Abbreviations

Symbols for feet (′) and inches (″) shall not be permitted on water depth signs.

4.5.1920.2.4.2 Metric

Metric units may be provided in addition to—but not in lieu of—units of feet and inches.

4.5.1920.3 Tolerance

4.5.20.3.1—Nearest 3 Inches

Depth markers shall be located to indicate water depth to the nearest ~~three~~3 inches (~~7.6 cm~~75 mm), as measured from the POOL floor ~~three~~3 feet (0.9 m) out from the POOL wall to the gutter lip, mid-point of surface SKIMMER(s), or surge weir(s).

4.5.1920.4 No Diving Markers

4.5.1920.4.1 Depths

For POOL water depths ~~5.0~~ feet (1.5 m) or shallower, all ~~deck~~ depth markers required by MAHC ~~Section~~section 4.5.1920 ~~above~~ shall be provided with “No DIVING” warning signs along with the universal international symbol for “No DIVING” ~~spaced at not more than 25 foot (7.6 m) intervals around the POOL perimeter edge. Reference: NEMA Z535~~

4.5.19.4.1.1 Spacing

“No DIVING” warning signs and symbols shall be spaced at no more than 25 foot (7.6 m) intervals around the POOL perimeter edge.

4.5.1920.4.2 Durable

“NO DIVING” MARKERS shall be constructed of a durable material resistant to local weather conditions.-

4.5.1920.4.3 Slip Resistant

“NO DIVING” MARKERS shall be slip-resistant when they are located on horizontal surfaces.-

4.5.1920.4.4 At Least Four Inches

All lettering and symbols shall be at least four inches (10.2 cm~~100 mm~~) in height.-

4.5.1920.5 Depth Marking At Break in Floor Slope**4.5.1920.5.1 Over Five Feet**

For POOLS deeper than five feet (1.5 m), a line of contrasting color, not less than two inches (5.1 cm~~50 mm~~) and not more than six inches (15.2 cm~~150 mm~~) in width, shall be clearly and permanently installed on the POOL floor at the shallow side of the break in the floor slope, and extend up the POOL walls to the waterline.

4.5.1920.5.2- Durable

Depth marking at break in floor slope shall be constructed of a durable material resistant to local weather conditions and be slip resistant.

4.5.1920.5.3 Safety Rope

One foot (30.5 cm~~0.3 m~~) to the shallow water side of the break in floor slope and contrasting band, a SAFETY float rope shall extend across the POOL surface with the exception of WAVE POOLS, SURF POOLS, and WATERSLIDE LANDING POOLS.

4.5.1920.6- Dual Marking System

Symmetrical AQUATIC VENUE designs with the deep point at the center may be allowed by providing a dual depth marking system which indicates the depth at the wall as measured in MAHC Section~~section~~ 4.5.1920.3.1 and at the deep point.

4.5.1920.7 Non-Traditional~~traditional~~ Aquatic Venues

Controlled-access AQUATIC VENUES (such as an~~activity pool, lazy rivers, and other venues with limited access~~) shall only etc. do not require depth markers but the depth shall be indicated on a sign at points of~~the~~ entry.

4.5.19.7.1 Clearly Visible

Depth marker signs shall be clearly visible to PATRONS entering the ~~such an~~ AQUATIC venue.

**4.5.19.7.2 Lettering and Symbols~~20.8~~ Spa
Depth Markers**

All lettering and symbols shall be as required for other types of depth markers.

~~Depth markers for a SPA shall meet the above requirements. Small SPAs less than 200 square feet (18.6 square m) do not require depth markers or “No Diving” signs.~~

4.5.19.820.9 Wading Pool Depth Markers

~~AQUATIC VENUES where the maximum water depth is six inches (15.2 cm) of water or less (AQUATIC VENUES such as WADING pools and water ACTIVITY POOL areas) shall or other AQUATIC VENUES are not be required to have depth markings or “No Diving” no diving signage if water depth is 6 inches (15 cm) of water or less.~~

4.5.19.920.10

Movable Floor Depth Markers

For AQUATIC VENUES with movable floors, a sign indicating movable floor and/or varied water depth shall be provided and clearly visible from the DECK.

4.5.19.920.10.1 Vertical Measurement Movable Floors

The posted water depth shall be the water level to the floor of the AQUATIC VENUE according to a vertical measurement taken ~~three~~3 feet (0.9 m~~9m~~) from the AQUATIC VENUE wall.

4.5.19.920.10.2 Signage

A sign shall be posted to inform the public that the AQUATIC VENUE has a varied depth and refer to the sign showing the current depth.

4.5.19.10 Spas

A minimum of two depth markers shall be provided regardless of the shape or size of the SPA as per MAHC Section 4.12.1.6.

4.5.2021 Aquatic Venue Shell Maintenance [N/A]

4.5.21 Special Use Aquatic Venues

4.5.21.1 Adequately Support

The design professional shall provide information to adequately support why the SPECIAL USE AQUATIC VENUE does not meet the definition and use characteristics of other categories of AQUATIC VENUES or POOLS listed in the code.

4.5.21.2 Justification

The design professional shall provide justification for design parameters that do not meet the design standards and construction requirements listed in MAHC Section 4.0.

4.6 Indoor ~~/~~Outdoor Environment

4.6.1 Lighting

4.6.1.1 General Requirements

4.6.1.1.1 Outdoor Aquatic Venues

Lighting as described in this subsection shall be provided for all outdoor AQUATIC VENUES~~POOLS~~ open for use from ~~thirty (30)~~ minutes before sunset to ~~thirty (30)~~ minutes after sunrise, or during periods of natural illumination below the levels required in MAHC Section 4.6.1.3.1.

4.6.1.1.2 Accessible

No lighting controls shall be accessible to ~~the~~-PATRONS or BATHERS.

4.6.1.2 Windows ~~/~~Natural Light

4.6.1.2.1 ~~—~~Natural Lighting Methods

Where natural lighting methods are used to meet the light level requirements of MAHC Section 4.6.1.3.1 during portions of the day when adequate natural lighting is available, one of the following methods shall be used to ensure that lights are turned on when natural lighting no longer meets these requirements:

- 1) Automatic lighting controls based on light levels or time of day, or
- 2) Written operations procedures where manual controls are used.

4.6.1.3 Light Levels

4.6.1.3.1 ~~—~~Minimum Levels

POOL water surface and DECK light levels shall meet the following minimum maintained light levels:~~*~~

- 1) Indoor Water Surface:~~—~~ 30 horizontal footcandles (~~323320~~ lux)
- 2) Outdoor Water Surface:~~—~~ 10 horizontal footcandles (~~108400~~ lux)
- 3) Deck:~~DECK—~~ 10 horizontal footcandles (~~108400~~ lux).~~.)~~

Note: Higher levels may be advisable for acceptable spectator viewing for competitive swimming and diving events.

4.6.1.4 Overhead Lighting

4.6.1.4.1 Artificial Lighting

Artificial lighting shall be provided at all AQUATIC VENUES which are to be used at night or which do not have adequate natural lighting.

4.6.1.4.2 Aquatic Venue Floor

Lighting shall illuminate all parts of the floor of the AQUATIC VENUE to enable a QUALIFIED LIFEGUARD or other person to determine whether a BATHER is on the floor of the AQUATIC VENUE.

4.6.1.4.3 Aquatic Venue Illumination

Lighting shall illuminate all parts of the AQUATIC VENUE including the water, the depth markers, signs, entrances, restrooms, SAFETY equipment, and the required DECK area and walkways.

4.6.1.5 Underwater Lighting

4.6.1.5.1 Minimum Requirements

Underwater lighting, where provided, shall be ~~of~~ not less than eight~~6~~ initial rated lumens per square foot of POOL water surface area. ~~shall be provided.~~

4.6.1.5.1.1 Location

Such underwater lights, in conjunction with overhead or equivalent DECK lighting, shall be located to provide illumination so that all portions of the AQUATIC VENUE, including the AQUATIC VENUE bottom and drain(s), may be readily seen.

4.6.1.5.1.2 Higher Light Levels

Higher underwater light levels shall be considered for deeper water to achieve this outcome.

4.6.1.5.2 Dimmable Lighting

Dimmable lighting shall not be used for underwater lighting.

4.6.1.6 Night Swimming with No Underwater Lighting

4.6.1.6.1 Minimum Requirements

Where outdoor POOLS are open for use from ~~thirty~~ (30) minutes before sunset to ~~thirty~~ (30) minutes after sunrise, or during periods of low illumination, underwater lighting may be excluded where:

- 1) ~~Maintained~~ Maintained POOL surface lighting levels are a minimum of 15 horizontal footcandles (~~161460 lux~~) and
- 2) ~~All~~ portions of the POOL, including the bottom and drain(s), are ~~may be~~ readily visible as required in MAHC Section 5.7.6.1. ~~seen.~~

4.6.1.7 Emergency Lighting

4.6.1.7.1 Emergency Egress Lighting

POOL areas requiring lighting shall be provided with emergency egress lighting in compliance with the applicable building codes ~~Building Code~~.

4.6.1.7.2 Footcandles

~~The~~ ~~in no case shall the~~ path of egress shall be illuminated to at least ~~less than~~ a ~~maintained~~-value of 0.56 footcandles (5.46 lux).

4.6.1.8 Glare

~~4.6.1.8.1~~ **Windows**

Windows and any other features providing natural light into the POOL space and overhead or equivalent DECK lighting shall be designed or arranged to inhibit or reduce glare on the POOL water surface that would prevent seeing objects on the POOL bottom.

4.6.2 Indoor Aquatic Facility Ventilation

4.6.2.1 Purpose

INDOOR AQUATIC FACILITY AIR HANDLING SYSTEMS shall be designed, constructed, and installed to support the health and SAFETY of the building's PATRONS.

4.6.2.2 Exemptions

INDOOR AQUATIC FACILITY AIR HANDLING SYSTEM design requirements do not apply to AQUATIC FACILITIES that do not meet the definition of a "Building" in the International Building Code 2012.

4.6.2.3 Indoor Aquatic Facility

AIR HANDLING SYSTEM design requirements shall apply to new or SUBSTANTIALLY ALTERED INDOOR AQUATIC FACILITIES including the area of the building's AQUATIC VENUES and the surrounding BATHER and spectator/stadium seating areas.

4.6.2.4 Mechanical Code

INDOOR AQUATIC FACILITY AIR HANDLING SYSTEM design, construction, and installation shall comply with applicable local CODES.

4.6.2.5 ASHRAE 62.1 Compliance

INDOOR AQUATIC FACILITY AIR HANDLING SYSTEM design, construction, and installation shall comply with ASHRAE standard 62.1 2013, *Ventilation for Acceptable Indoor Air Quality*, and/or applicable local CODES with additional requirements as stated in ~~section~~-MAHC Section 4.6.2.6.

4.6.2.6 Air Handling System Design

4.6.2.6.1 **Mechanical Systems**

Ventilation shall be provided through mechanical systems and/or engineered openings for natural ventilation.

4.6.2.6.2 **Design Factors and Performance Requirements**

The AIR HANDLING SYSTEM design engineer shall provide plan drawings and documentation with the following components showing the design meets the performance requirements per MAHC Section 4.6.2.7:

- 1) Building layout identifying the location of the INDOOR AQUATIC FACILITY;_{1.7}
- 2) INDOOR AQUATIC FACILITY size including area in square feet and volume in cubic feet;_{1.7}
- 3) The area in square feet for DECK and for stadium seating sections;_{1.7}
- 4) THEORETICAL PEAK OCCUPANCY~~Maximum BATHER LOAD~~ per AQUATIC VENUE and DECK spaces;~~maximum number of building occupants;~~
- ~~5) Individual AQUATIC VENUE water quality systems, including water recirculation, filtration, DISINFECTION, and secondary treatment systems;~~
- ~~6)5) Placement of AIR HANDLING SYSTEM and other building outdoor air intakes exterior to the building;_{1.7}~~
- ~~7)6) Placement of AIR HANDLING SYSTEM and other building exhaust vents exterior to the building;_{1.7}~~
- ~~8)7) Placement of return air intakes within the INDOOR AQUATIC FACILITY;_{1.7}~~
- ~~9)8) Placement of supply air locations within the INDOOR AQUATIC FACILITY;_{1.7}~~
- ~~10)9) Identify system capabilities, if utilized, to automatically or manually modulate the amount of outdoor air for the purposes of reducing the number of cubic feet per minute (cfm) of outdoor air when occupancy is lower than THEORETICAL PEAK OCCUPANCY;BATHER/OCCUPANT LOAD, and~~
- ~~11)10) Identify system design to maintain negative air pressure in the INDOOR AQUATIC FACILITY relative to the indoor areas external to it. -~~

4.6.2.6.3 Other Air Handling Systems

AIR HANDLING SYSTEM design for CHEMICAL STORAGE SPACES, mechanical, toilet, shower, and dressing rooms are not included in the scope of this section of the CODE, but shall be considered for their effects on the performance requirements of MAHC Section 4.6.2.7 such as maintaining negative pressure, temperature differences, and contribution to the air volume of the INDOOR AQUATIC FACILITY.

4.6.2.6.4 High Volume, Low Speed Paddle Fans

AIR HANDLING SYSTEM design may not consider mechanical fans used to push air within the space as part of the outdoor air calculations for the INDOOR AQUATIC FACILITY as defined in MAHC Section 4.6.2.7.

4.6.2.6.4.1 Air Delivery Rate Turnover

Mechanical fans used to push air within the space may be used in the calculation for air delivery rate (turnover).-

4.6.2.6.5 Occupied and Open All Seasons

AIR HANDLING SYSTEM design may include natural ventilation calculated in accordance with the ASHRAE Handbooks to substitute the corresponding portion of mechanical ventilation only if all the calculated exterior openings will be continuously controlled open during all times the INDOOR AQUATIC FACILITY is occupied, regardless of season.

4.6.2.6.6 Air Distribution Design

The design of the distribution of supply air and distribution of exhaust or return air shall consider obstacles such as support columns, architectural structures, and AQUATIC FEATURES.

4.6.2.7 Performance Requirements for Air Handling Systems

4.6.2.7.1 Minimum Outdoor Air Requirements

The AIR HANDLING SYSTEM shall have a design capability to supply the minimum outdoor air requirements using ASHRAE standard 62.1 2013, *Ventilation for Acceptable Indoor Air Quality*.

4.6.2.7.2 System Alarm

The AIR HANDLING SYSTEM design shall provide system features to notify the operator if the outdoor air flow rate entering the indoor AQUATIC FACILITY is below 0.48 cfm/ft² (1.8 m³/h).

4.6.2.7.3 Real-Time Occupancy

Design of the AIR HANDLING SYSTEM shall meet the ~~maximum~~ ~~BATHER/PATRON~~ requirements for the number of cfm/ft² based on the THEORETICAL PEAK OCCUPANCY.

4.6.2.7.3.1 Method to Determine

~~If, however, if~~ a method to determine real-time actual occupancy is available, then the system may modulate to reduce outdoor air cubic feet per minute ~~cfm~~ to meet the requirement for the actual occupancy for the associated time frame.

4.6.2.7.4 Air ~~Delivery~~ Deliver Rate

The AIR HANDLING SYSTEM shall supply an air delivery rate as defined in ASHRAE Handbook – HVAC Applications 2011, Places of Assembly, Natatoriums.

4.6.2.7.5 Consistent Air Flow

INDOOR AQUATIC FACILITY AIR HANDLING SYSTEM shall be designed to provide consistent air flow through all parts of the INDOOR AQUATIC FACILITY to preclude any stagnant areas.

4.6.2.7.6 Relative Humidity

The AIR HANDLING SYSTEM shall maintain the relative humidity in the space as defined in ASHRAE Handbook: HVAC Applications, 2011, Places of Assembly, Natatoriums.

4.6.2.7.6.1 Dew Point

The AIR HANDLING SYSTEM shall be designed to maintain the dew point of the interior space less than the dew point of the interior walls at all times so as to prevent damage to structural members and to prevent biological growth on walls.

4.6.2.7.6.2 Condensation & Mold Control

The AIR HANDLING SYSTEM shall be designed to achieve several objectives including maintaining space conditions, delivering the outside distribute air to the breathing area, and to flush the outside toward walls and windows, which can have the lowest surface temperature and therefore the greatest chance for to reduce condensation, and mold growth.

4.6.2.7.7 Negative Air Pressure

AIR HANDLING SYSTEM System air flow shall be designed to maintain negative air pressure in the INDOOR AQUATIC FACILITY relative to the areas external to it such as adjacent indoor spaces and outdoor ambient space).

4.6.2.7.8 Disinfection By-Product Byproduct Removal

Sufficient return air intakes shall be placed near AQUATIC VENUE surfaces such that they remove the highest concentration of airborne DISINFECTION BY-PRODUCT contaminated air.

4.6.2.7.8.1 Airflow Across Water Surface

The AIR HANDLING SYSTEM shall be designed considering airflow across the water surface to promote removal of DISINFECTION BY-PRODUCTS.

4.6.2.7.9 Re-Entrainment entrainment of Exhaust

AIR HANDLING SYSTEM outdoor air intakes shall be placed to minimize RE-ENTRAINMENT of exhaust air from building systems back into the facility.

4.6.2.7.9.1 System Exhaust

AIR HANDLING SYSTEM exhaust from CHEMICAL STORAGE SPACES, mechanical, toilet, shower, and dressing rooms shall not be directed into the AQUATIC FACILITY.

4.6.2.7.10 Access Control

The AIR HANDLING SYSTEM shall be designed to provide a means to limit physical or electronic access to system control to the operator and anyone the operator deems to have access.

4.6.2.7.11 Purge

The AIR HANDLING SYSTEM shall have the capability to periodically PURGE air for air quality maintenance or for emergency situations.

4.6.2.7.11.1 Purge Capacity

The AIR HANDLING SYSTEM shall have a PURGE capacity equal or greater than two2 times the ASHRAE STANDARD 62.1 2013CODE level.

4.6.2.7.11.1.1 Manual Activation

This PURGE shallwould be capable of beingactivated manually activated. and run for a time that achieved one complete air turn of the space.

4.6.2.7.11.2 Outdoor Air

Outdoor air required for PURGE ~~shall~~would not be required to be heated or otherwise treated.

4.6.2.7.12 Air Handling System Filters

The AIR HANDLING SYSTEM design shall include filters for outdoor air and recirculated air with a Minimum Efficiency Reporting Value (MERV) rating of ~~eight~~8.

4.6.2.8 Air Handling System Installation

4.6.2.8.1 Air Handling System Procedures

The contractor installing the INDOOR AQUATIC FACILITY AIR HANDLING SYSTEM shall provide the AQUATIC FACILITY owner with an operating manual from the manufacturer which includes:

- 1) Startup and shutdown procedures;
- 2) PURGING and other SAFETY procedures;
- 3) Cleaning procedures;
- 4) General maintenance requirements with parts listings and frequency of maintenance (*i.e., filter cleaning frequencies, motor bearing maintenance*);
- 5) Pressure differential specifications for filter replacement, filter replacement type, and frequency of cleaning or replacement;
- 6) Troubleshooting processes;
- 7) Frequency of required calibration of equipment;
- 8) Descriptions of general operating schemes; and
- 9) Contact information for the manufacturer.

4.6.2.9 Air Handling System Commissioning

4.6.2.9.1 System Commissioning

A qualified, licensed professional shall commission the AIR HANDLING SYSTEM to verify that the installed system is operating properly in accordance with the system design.

4.6.2.9.2 Written Statement

A written statement of commissioning shall be provided to the AQUATIC FACILITY owner ~~including~~to include but is-not limited to:

- 1) The number of cubic feet per minute of outdoor air flowing into the INDOOR AQUATIC FACILITY at the time of commissioning;
- 2) The number of cubic feet per minute of exhaust air flowing through the system at the time of commissioning; and,
- 3) A statement that the amount of outdoor air meets the performance requirements of MAHC Section 4.6.2.7.

4.6.3 Indoor Aquatic Facility Electrical Systems and Components-

4.6.3.1 General Guidelines

4.6.3.1.1 NEC Requirements~~Providing Relief~~

Nothing in this CODE shall be construed as providing relief from any applicable requirements of the National ~~Electrical~~Electric Code (NEC) or other applicable CODE, ~~except where modified by this MAHG.~~

4.6.3.1.2 Indoor Aquatic Facilities~~Natatoriums~~

An INDOOR AQUATIC FACILITY~~NATATORIUMS~~ shall be considered a wet and CORROSIVE ~~environment~~environments.

4.6.3.2 Electrical Equipment in Interior Chemical ~~_~~Storage Spaces~~Space~~

4.6.3.2.1 Wet and Corrosive

CHEMICAL STORAGE SPACES shall be considered wet and CORROSIVE environments.

4.6.3.2.2 Electrical Conduit

Electrical conduit shall not enter or pass through an interior CHEMICAL STORAGE SPACE, except as required to service devices integral to the function of the room, such as pumps, vessels, controls, lighting and SAFETY devices or, if allowed by the NEC.

4.6.3.2.2.1 Sealed and Inert

Where required, the electrical conduit in an interior CHEMICAL STORAGE SPACE shall be sealed and made of materials that will not interact with any chemicals in the chemical storage space.

4.6.3.2.3 Electrical Devices

Electrical devices or equipment shall not occupy an interior CHEMICAL STORAGE SPACE, except as required to service devices integral to the function of the room, such as pumps, vessels, controls, lighting and SAFETY devices.

4.6.3.2.4 Protected Against Breakage

Lamps, including fluorescent tubes, installed in interior CHEMICAL STORAGE SPACES shall be protected against breakage with a lens or other cover, or be otherwise protected against the accidental release of hot materials.

4.6.4 Pool Water Heating

4.6.4.1 High Temperature

When designing POOL heating equipment, measures shall be taken to prevent BATHERPATRON exposure to water temperatures in excess of 104°F (40°C).

~~4.6.4.1.1~~ **Low Temperature**

~~When designing POOL heating equipment, measures shall be taken to prevent PATRON exposure to water temperatures in excess of such lower maximum temperature as shall be recommended by the manufacturer for their equipment.~~

4.6.4.2 **Pressure ~~Relief~~Relieve Device**

Where POOL water heating equipment is installed with valves capable of isolating the heating equipment from the POOL, a listed pressure-relief device shall be installed to limit the pressure on the heating equipment to no more than the maximum value specified by the heating-equipment manufacturer and applicable CODES.

4.6.4.3 **Code Compliance**

POOL-water heating equipment shall be selected and installed to preserve compliance with the applicable CODES, the terms of listing and labeling of equipment, and with the equipment manufacturer's installation instructions and applicable CODES.

4.6.4.4 **Equipment Room Requirements**

Where POOL_-water heaters use COMBUSTION and are located inside a building, the space in which the heater is located shall be considered to be an EQUIPMENT ROOM, and the. The requirements of MAHC Section 4.9.1 shall apply.

4.6.4.5 **Exception**

Heaters listed and labeled for the atmosphere shall be acceptable without isolation from chemical fumes and vapors.

4.6.5 **First Aid ~~Area~~Room**

4.6.5.1 **Station Design**

Design and construction of new AQUATIC FACILITIES shall include an area designated for first aid equipment and/or treatment.

4.6.6 **Emergency Exit**

4.6.6.1 **Emergency Exit**

~~The AQUATIC VENUE emergency exit(s) shall not be blocked by objects or secured in a manner that prevents PATRONS from exiting in the event of an emergency.~~

~~4.6.6.2~~ **Labeling**

~~Gates~~Unless all gates or doors are so equipped, those gates and/or doors which will allow egress without a key shall be clearly and conspicuously labeled in letters at least four inches (10.2 cm~~10cm~~) high "EMERGENCY EXIT."

4.6.7 Drinking Fountains

4.6.7.1 Provided

A drinking fountain shall be provided inside an AQUATIC FACILITY.

4.6.7.1.1 Alternative

Alternate locations or the use of bottled water shall be evaluated by the AHJ.

4.6.7.1.2 Common Use Area

If the drinking fountain cannot be provided inside the AQUATIC FACILITY, it shall be provided in a common use building or area adjacent to the AQUATIC FACILITY entrance and on the normal path of BATHERS going to the AQUATIC FACILITY entrance.

4.6.7.2 Readily Accessible

The drinking fountain shall be located where it is readily accessible and not a hazard to BATHERS [PER MAHC Section 4.10.2.](#)

4.6.7.2.1 Not Located

The drinking fountain shall not be located in a shower area or toilet area.

4.6.7.3 Single Fountain

A single drinking fountain shall be allowed for one or more AQUATIC VENUES within an AQUATIC FACILITY.

4.6.7.4 Angle Jet Type

The drinking fountain shall be an angle jet type installed according to applicable plumbing CODES.

4.6.7.5 Potable Water Supply

The drinking fountain shall be supplied with water from an approved potable water supply.

4.6.7.6 Wastewater

The wastewater discharged from a drinking fountain shall be routed to an approved sanitary sewer system or other approved disposal area according to applicable plumbing CODES.

4.6.8 Garbage Receptacles

4.6.8.1 Sufficient Number

A sufficient number of receptacles shall be provided within an AQUATIC FACILITY to ensure that garbage and refuse can be disposed of properly to maintain safe and sanitary conditions.

4.6.8.2 Number and Location

The number and location of receptacles shall be at the discretion of the AQUATIC FACILITY manager.

4.6.8.3 ~~Tightly Closable~~

Receptacles shall be designed to be ~~tightly~~ closed with a lid or other cover so they remain closed until intentionally opened.

4.6.9 Food and Drink Concessions

4.6.9.1 Meet AHJ Requirements

Concessions for food and drink in an AQUATIC FACILITY shall meet all AHJ requirements.

4.6.10 Spectator Areas

4.6.10.1 Within Aquatic Facility Enclosure

An area designed for use by spectators may be located within an AQUATIC FACILITY ENCLOSURE.

4.6.10.2 Deck

When a spectator area or an access to a spectator area is located within the AQUATIC FACILITY ENCLOSURE~~AQUATIC FACILITY ENCLOSURE~~, the DECK adjacent to the area or access shall provide egress width for the spectators in addition to the width required by MAHC Section 4.8.1.5.

4.6.10.2.1 Additional Width

The additional width shall be based on the egress requirements in the applicable building CODE based on the THEORETICAL PEAK OCCUPANCY of the AQUATIC FACILITY~~maximum OCCUPANT LOAD~~ served with a minimum width of four4 feet (1.2 m) and have either of the following qualities outlined in MAHC Section 4.6.10.2.1.1. or MAHC Section 4.6.10.2.1.2.:-

4.6.10.2.1.1 Barrier

A BARRIER as defined in MAHC Section 4.8.6.1 located on the DECK to separate the DECK used by spectators from the PERIMETER DECK used by BATHERS.

4.6.10.2.1.1.1 Openings

The BARRIER may have one or more openings directly into the BATHER areas.

4.6.10.2.1.2 Demarcation Line

A demarcation line on the DECK that shows the separation between the DECK used by spectators and the PERIMETER DECK used by BATHERS.

4.6.10.3 Balcony

A spectator or other area located in a balcony within ~~ten~~10 feet (3.0 m) of or overhanging any portion of an AQUATIC VENUE shall be designed to deter jumping or diving into the AQUATIC VENUE.

4.6.10.4 Bleachers

Bleachers in a spectator area shall be designed according to the International Code Council's most recent version of the 300 Standard ~~which has been approved for reference~~ or another applicable CODE.

4.7 Recirculation and Water Treatment

4.7.1 Recirculation Systems and Equipment

4.7.1.1 General

4.7.1.1.1 Equipped and Operated

All AQUATIC FACILITIES shall be equipped and operated with a recirculation and filtration system capable of meeting the provisions outlined in MAHC Section 4.7.

4.7.1.1.2 Component Installation

The installation of the recirculation and the filtration system components shall be performed in accordance with the designer's and ~~manufacturer's~~manufacturers' instructions.

4.7.1.1.3 Recirculation System

A water RECIRCULATION SYSTEM consisting of one or more pumps, pipes, return INLETS, suction outlets, tanks, filters, and other necessary equipment shall be provided.

4.7.1.2 Combined Aquatic Venue Treatment

4.7.1.2.1 Maintain and Measure

When treatment systems of multiple AQUATIC VENUES are combined, the design shall include all appurtenances to maintain and measure the required water characteristics including but not limited to flow rate, pH, and disinfectant concentration in each AQUATIC VENUE ~~or AQUATIC~~ FEATURE.

4.7.1.2.2 Secondary Disinfection

If SECONDARY DISINFECTION is required for an INCREASED RISK AQUATIC VENUE as per MAHC Section 4.7.3.3.1.2, then SECONDARY DISINFECTION shall be required for all treatment systems that are combined with the INCREASED RISK AQUATIC VENUE.

4.7.1.2.3 Isolate

~~When multiple~~Each AQUATIC ~~VENUES are~~VENUE ~~of a~~ combined in onevenue treatment system, each AQUATIC VENUE ~~—~~shall be capable of being isolated for maintenance purposes.

4.7.1.3 Inlets

4.7.1.3.1 General

4.7.1.3.1.1 Hydraulically Balanced

The RECIRCULATION SYSTEM shall be designed with sufficient flexibility to achieve a HYDRAULIC APPORTIONMENT that will ensure the following:

- 1) Effective distribution of treated water, and
- 2) Maintenance of a uniform DISINFECTANT residual and pH throughout the AQUATIC VENUE.

4.7.1.3.1.1.1 Alternative Design Justification

Alternative designs shall be allowed based on adequate engineering justification.

4.7.1.3.1.2 Inlets

Effective distribution of treated water shall be accomplished by either a continuous PERIMETER OVERFLOW system with integral INLETS or by means of directionally adjustable INLETS adequate in design, number, and location.

4.7.1.3.1.3 Adequate ~~Mixing~~ mixing

POOLS shall use wall and/or floor INLETS to provide adequate mixing.

4.7.1.3.1.3.1 Greater Than ~~Fifty~~ 50 Feet Wide

For POOLS greater than 50 feet wide (15.224 m), floor INLETS shall be required.

4.7.1.3.1.4 Other Inlet Types

All other types of INLET systems not covered in this section shall be subject to approval by the AHJ with proper engineering justification.

4.7.1.3.1.5 Hydraulically Sized

INLETS shall be hydraulically sized to provide the design flow rates for each POOL area of multi-zone POOLS based on the required design TURNOVER RATE for each zone.

4.7.1.3.2 Floor Inlets

4.7.1.3.2.1 Uniformly Spaced

Floor INLETS shall be spaced to effectively distribute the treated water throughout the POOL, ~~and~~

4.7.1.3.2.2 Flush with Bottom

Floor INLETS shall be flush with the bottom of the POOL.

~~4.7.1.3.2.1~~ 3.2.2.1 Distance

Distance between floor INLETS shall be no greater than 20 feet (6.1 m).

4.7.1.3.2.24.2 Row

A row of floor INLETS shall be located within 15 feet (4.6 m) of each side wall.

4.7.1.3.2.32 Spaced

Floor INLETS, used in combination with wall INLETS, shall be spaced no greater than 25 feet (7.6 m) from nearest side walls.

4.7.1.3.3 Wall Inlets**4.7.1.3.3.1 Effective Mixing**

Wall INLET velocity shall mix the water effectively.

4.7.1.3.3.2 Adjustable

INLETS shall be directionally adjustable to provide effective distribution of water.

4.7.1.3.3.3 Inlet Spacing

Wall INLETS shall be spaced no greater than 20 feet (6.1 m) apart.

4.7.1.3.3.3.1 Corner

INLETS shall be placed within ~~five~~5 feet (1.5 m) of each corner of the POOL.

4.7.1.3.3.3.2 Skimmers

INLETS shall be placed at least ~~five~~5 feet (1.~~552~~ m) from a SKIMMER.

4.7.1.3.3.3.3 Isolated

INLETS shall be placed in each recessed or isolated area of the POOL.

4.7.1.3.3.4 Directional Flow

Wall INLETS ~~shall not require design to provide directional flow if that are~~ part of a manufactured gutter system in which the filtered return water conduit is contained within the gutter structure. ~~do not need to be designed to provide directional flow.~~

4.7.1.3.3.5 Dye Testing

Dye testing may be required by the AHJ to evaluate the mixing characteristics of the RECIRCULATION SYSTEM.

4.7.1.3.3.5.1 Failed Test

If dye test reveals inadequate mixing in the POOL after 20 minutes, the RECIRCULATION SYSTEM shall be adjusted or modified to assure adequate mixing.

4.7.1.4 Perimeter Overflow Systems/Gutters**4.7.1.4.1 General****4.7.1.4.1.1 Skimming**

All POOLS shall be designed to provide SKIMMING for the entire POOL surface area with engineering rationale provided by the design professional.

4.7.1.4.1.1 Around Entire Pool

For POOLS that require a perimeter overflow system, the perimeter overflow system POS shall extend around the entire POOL perimeter except where noted in this CODE.

4.7.1.4.1.2 Zero-Depth Entry

ZERO DEPTH ENTRY POOLS shall have a continuous overflow trench that terminates as close to the side walls as practical including any zero--depth portion of the POOL perimeter.

4.7.1.4.1.2.1 Ends

Where a perimeter overflow system POS cannot be continuous, the ends of each section shall terminate as close as practical to each other.

4.7.1.4.2 Perimeter Overflow System Gutter Size and Shape

4.7.1.4.2.1 Continuous Water Removal

The gutter system shall be designed to allow continuous removal of water from the POOL'S upper surface at a rate of at least 125 percent of the approved total recirculation flow rate chosen by the designer.

4.7.1.4.2.2 Inspection

Gutters shall permit ready inspection, cleaning, and repair.

4.7.1.4.3 Gutter Outlets

4.7.1.4.3.1 ~~Design Capacity~~

Drop boxes, converters, return piping, or FLUMES used to convey water from the gutter shall be designed to:

- 1) Prevent prevent flooding and BACKFLOW of skimmed water into the POOL, and
- 2) Handle handle at least 125 percent of the approved total recirculation flow.

4.7.1.4.4 Surge Tank Capacity

4.7.1.4.4.1 Net Surge Capacity

All perimeter overflow systems POS shall be designed with an effective net surge capacity of not less than one4 gallon for each square foot (40.744 L/m²) of POOL surface area.

4.7.1.4.4.1.1 Surge Components

Surge shall be provided within a surge tank, or the gutter or filter above the normal operating level flow line, or elsewhere in the system.

4.7.1.4.4.2 Tank Capacity

The tank capacity specified shall be the net capacity.

4.7.1.4.4.3 Tank Levels

The design professional shall define the minimum, maximum, and normal POOL operating water levels in the surge tank.

4.7.1.4.4.3.1 Marked

The surge tank's minimum, maximum, and normal POOL operating water levels shall be marked on the tank so as to be readily visible for inspection.

4.7.1.4.4.4 Overflow Pipes

Surge tanks, shall have overflow pipes to convey excess water to waste via an air gap or other approved BACKFLOW prevention device.

4.7.1.4.5 Tolerances

~~4.7.1.4.5.1 Venue Perimeter~~

Gutters shall be level within a tolerance of plus or minus $1/16$ inch (1.6 mm) around the perimeter of the AQUATIC VENUE.

4.7.1.4.6 Makeup Water System

4.7.1.4.6.1 Automatic Makeup

Automatic makeup water supply equipment shall be provided to maintain continuous skimming of POOLS with perimeter overflow systems.~~POS.~~

4.7.1.4.6.2 Air Gap

Makeup water shall be supplied through an air gap or other approved BACKFLOW prevention device.

~~4.7.1.5 Skimmers and Alternative Gutter Technologies Using In-Pool Surge Capacity~~

~~SKIMMERS and Alternative Gutter Technologies Using In-Pool Surge Capacity~~

4.7.1.5.1 General

4.7.1.5.1.1 Manufactured

The use of manufactured direct suction SKIMMERS shall be in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations.

4.7.1.5.1.2 Provided

Where SKIMMERS are used, at least one surface SKIMMER shall be provided for each 500 square feet (46 m²) of surface area or fraction thereof.

4.7.1.5.1.2.1 Conditions

Additional SKIMMERS may be required to achieve effective skimming under site-specific conditions (e.g., heavy winds and/or contaminant loading) and/or to comply with all applicable building CODES.

4.7.1.5.1.3 Hybrid Systems

Hybrid systems that incorporate ~~surge weirs~~ SKIMMERS in the overflow gutters to provide for in-POOL surge shall meet all of the requirements specified for ~~overflow gutter~~ ~~each system~~ (with the exception of the surge or balance tank, since the surge capacity requirement will be alternately met by the in-pool surge capacity).

4.7.1.5.1.3.1 Surge Weirs

The number of surge weirs shall be based on the individual surge weir capacity and the operational apportionment of the design recirculation flow rate.

4.7.1.5.1.3.1.1 Locations

The location of the required number of surge weirs shall be uniformly spaced in the gutter sections.

4.7.1.5.1.4 Design Capacity

~~When used, the~~ SKIMMER SYSTEM, ~~when used~~, shall be designed to handle up to 100% of the total recirculation flow rate chosen by the designer.

4.7.1.5.1.5 Pool Width Limitations

POOLS using SKIMMERS shall not exceed 30 feet (9.1 m) in width.

4.7.1.5.2 Skimmer Location

4.7.1.5.2.1 Effective

SKIMMERS shall be so located as to provide effective skimming of the entire water surface.

4.7.1.5.2.2 Steps and Recessed ~~Areas~~ ~~areas~~

SKIMMERS shall be located so as not to be affected by restricted flow in areas such as near steps and within small recesses.

4.7.1.5.2.3 Wind Direction

Wind direction shall be considered in number and placement of SKIMMERS.

4.7.1.5.3 Skimmer Flow Rate

~~4.7.1.5.3.1~~ ~~NSF 50~~

The flow rate for the SKIMMERS shall comply with manufacturer data plates or NSF/ANSI 50 including Annex K.

4.7.1.5.4 Control

4.7.1.5.4.1 Weir

Each SKIMMER shall have a weir that adjusts automatically to variations in water level over a minimum range of ~~four~~4 inches (10.2 cm).

4.7.1.5.4.2 Trimmer Valve

Each SKIMMER shall be equipped with a trimmer valve capable of distributing the total flow between individual SKIMMERS.

4.7.1.5.5 Tolerances

4.7.1.5.5.1 Skimmer Base

The base of each SKIMMER shall be level with all other SKIMMERS in the POOL within a tolerance of plus or minus ¼ inch (6.4 mm).

~~4.7.1.5.6 Testing~~

~~4.7.1.5.6.1 Flotation Tests~~

~~Flotation tests should be performed annually to ensure effective skimming and proper adjustment of flow distribution between SKIMMERS.~~

4.7.1.6 Submerged Suction Outlet

4.7.1.6.1 General

~~4.7.1.6.1.1 Conform~~

Submerged suction outlets, including sumps and covers, shall listed and labeled~~conform~~ to the requirements of ANSI/APSP-16 2011.

4.7.1.6.2 Number and Spacing

4.7.1.6.2.1 Hydraulically Balanced

A minimum of two HYDRAULICALLY BALANCED filtration system outlets are required in the bottom.

4.7.1.6.2.1.1 Located on the Bottom

One of the outlets may be located on the bottom of a side/end wall at the deepest level.

4.7.1.6.2.1.2 Connected

The outlets shall be connected to a single main suction pipe by branch lines pip~~ed to provide hydraulic balance between the drains~~.

4.7.1.6.2.1.3 Valved

The branch lines shall not be valved so as to be capable of operating independently.

4.7.1.6.2.2 Spaced

Outlets shall be equally spaced from the POOL side walls.

4.7.1.6.2.3 Located

Outlets shall be located no less than ~~three~~3 feet (~~0.9 m~~91 cm) apart, measuring between the centerlines of the suction outlet covers.

4.7.1.6.3 Tank Connection

4.7.1.6.3.1 Gravity Drains

Where gravity outlets are used, the main drain outlet shall be connected to a surge tank, collection tank, or balance tank/pipe.

4.7.1.6.4 Flow Distribution and Control

4.7.1.6.4.1 Design Capacity

The main drain system shall be designed at a minimum to handle recirculation flow of 100% of total design recirculation flow rate.

4.7.1.6.4.1.1 Two Main Drain Outlets

~~Where there are two main drain outlets, the~~The branch pipe from each main drain outlet shall be designed to carry 100% of the recirculation flow rate.

4.7.1.6.4.1.2 Three or More Drains

Where ~~three~~3 or more main drain outlets are connected by branch piping in accordance with MAHC Section 4.7.1.6.2.1.1 through MAHC Section 4.7.1.6.2.1.3, the design flow through each branch pipe from each main drain outlet may be as follows:

- 1) ~~Q_{max}~~ Q_{max} for each drain = $Q(\text{total recirculation rate}) / (N)$ (~~number of drains less one~~), and
- 2) ~~$Q_{max} = Q_{total} / (N-1)$~~

4.7.1.6.4.2 Proportioning Valve

The single main drain suction pipe to the pump shall be equipped with a proportioning valve(s) to adjust the flow distribution between the main drain piping and the surface overflow system piping.

4.7.1.6.5 Flow Velocities

4.7.1.6.5.1 Standards

Flow velocities shall meet ANSI/APSP-16 2011 based on 100% design flow through each main drain cover.

4.7.1.7 Piping

4.7.1.7.1 Design

4.7.1.7.1.1 Materials

Piping system components in contact with swimming POOL water shall be of non-toxic material, resistant to corrosion, able to withstand operating pressures, chemicals, and temperatures.

4.7.1.7.1.2 Standards

Piping and piping system component materials shall be suitable for potable water contact and shall ~~be listed~~ meet NSF/ANSI STANDARD 61 and labeled to NSF/ANSI Standard 14, NSF/ANSI Standard 50, and NSF/ANSI Standard 61, as applicable.

4.7.1.7.1.2.1 Certified

Piping and piping system component materials shall be listed and labeled to a specific standard ~~certified~~ by an ANSI-accredited certification organization.

4.7.1.7.2 Velocity in Pipes

4.7.1.7.2.1 Discharge Piping

RECIRCULATION SYSTEM piping shall be designed so that water velocities do not exceed ~~eight~~ 8 feet (2.4 m) per second on the discharge side of the recirculation pump unless alternative values have proper engineering justification.

4.7.1.7.2.2 Suction Piping

Suction piping shall be sized so that the water velocity does not exceed six feet per second (1.8 m/s) ~~6 ft/s~~ unless alternative values have proper engineering justification.

4.7.1.7.2.3 Additional Considerations

Gravity piping shall be sized with consideration of available system head or as demonstrated by detailed hydraulic calculations at the design recirculation flow rate.

4.7.1.7.3 Drainage and Installation

4.7.1.7.3.1 Temperature Variations

Provisions shall be made for expansion and contraction of pipes due to temperature variations.

4.7.1.7.3.2 Drainage

Provisions shall be made for complete drainage of all ~~AQUATIC VENUE~~ POOL piping ~~for winterization~~.

4.7.1.7.3.3 Supported

All piping shall be supported continuously or at sufficiently close intervals to prevent sagging and settlement.

4.7.1.7.4 Piping and Component Identification

4.7.1.7.4.1 Clearly Marked

All exposed piping shall be clearly marked to indicate function.

4.7.1.7.4.2 Flow Direction and Source

All piping shall be clearly marked to indicate type or source of water and direction of flow with clear labeling and/or color coding.

4.7.1.7.4.3 Valves

All valves shall be clearly marked to indicate function with clear labeling and/or color coding.

4.7.1.7.4.4 Schematic Displayed

A complete, easily readable schematic of the entire ~~AQUATIC VENUEPOOL~~ RECIRCULATION SYSTEM shall be openly displayed in the mechanical room or available to maintenance and inspection personnel.

4.7.1.7.5 Testing

4.7.1.7.5.1 Static Water Pressure Test

Suction and supply ~~POOL~~ piping shall be subjected to a static hydraulic water pressure test for the duration specified by the design engineer and/or AHJ.

4.7.1.7.5.2 Greater

~~Suction~~~~New and renovated suction~~ and supply ~~AQUATIC VENUEPOOL~~ piping shall be able to maintain the greater of the two following amounts of pressure:

- 1) 25% greater than the maximum design operating pressure of the system, or
- 2) 25 psi (172 KPa).

4.7.1.8 Strainers and Pumps

4.7.1.8.1 Strainers

4.7.1.8.1.1 Strainer / Screen

All filter recirculation pumps, except those for vacuum filter installations, shall have a strainer/screen device on the suction side to protect the filtration and pumping equipment.

4.7.1.8.1.2 Materials

All material used in the construction of strainers and screens shall be:

- 1) Nontoxic, impervious, and enduring,
- 2) Able to withstand design stresses, and
- 3) Designed to minimize friction losses.

4.7.1.8.2 Pumping Equipment

4.7.1.8.2.1 Variable Frequency Drives

Variable frequency drives (VFDs) may be installed to control all recirculation and feature pumps.

4.7.1.8.2.2 Total Dynamic Head

The recirculation pump(s) shall have adequate capacity to meet the recirculation flow design requirements in accordance with the maximum total dynamic head required by the entire RECIRCULATION SYSTEM under the most extreme operating conditions (e.g., *clogged filters in need of backwashing*).

4.7.1.8.2.3 Required Flow Rate

The pump shall be designed to maintain design recirculation flows under all conditions.

4.7.1.8.2.4 Vacuum Limit Switches

Where vacuum filters are used, a vacuum limit switch shall be provided on the pump suction line.

4.7.1.8.2.5 Maximum

The vacuum limit switch shall be set for a maximum vacuum of 18 inches (45.746 cm) of mercury.

4.7.1.8.2.6 Pump Priming

All recirculation pumps shall be self-priming or flooded-suction.

4.7.1.8.2.7 Net Positive Suction Head (NPSH) Requirement

All recirculation pumps shall meet the minimum NPSH requirement for the system.

4.7.1.8.3 Operating Gauges

4.7.1.8.3.1 Vacuum Gauge

A compound vacuum-pressure gauge shall be installed on the pump suction line as close to the pump as possible.

4.7.1.8.3.2 Suction Lift

A vacuum gauge shall be used for pumps with suction lift.

4.7.1.8.3.3 Installed

A pressure gauge shall be installed on the pump discharge line adjacent to the pump.

4.7.1.8.3.4 Easily Read

Gauges shall be installed so they can be easily read.

4.7.1.8.3.5 Valves

All gauges shall be equipped with valves to allow for servicing under operating conditions.

4.7.1.9 Flow Measurement ~~Measure~~ and Control

4.7.1.9.1 Flow Meters

A flow meter accurate to within +/- 5% of the actual design flow shall be provided for each filtration system.

4.7.1.9.1.1 Listed and Labeled ~~Certified~~

Flow meters shall be listed and labeled ~~to certified in accordance with~~ NSF/ANSI Standard 50 by an ANSI-accredited certification organization.

4.7.1.9.2 Valves

All pumps shall be installed with a manual adjustable discharge valve to provide a backup means of flow control as well as for system isolation.

4.7.1.10 Flow Rates / Turnover Times

Table 4.7.1.10: Aquatic Venue Maximum Allowable Turnover Times

Type of Aquatic Venue	Turnover Maximum	Spa, Therapy*, & Exercise Pools		
Activity Pools	2 hours or less	Temperatures	Load	Turnover Maximum
Diving Pools	8 hours or less			
Interactive Play*	0.5 hours or less	≤ 72°-93°F (22°-34°C)	> 2500 gals/person (9.46 m ³)	4 hours or less
Lazy River	2 hours or less	≤ 72°-93°F (22°-34°C)	> 450 gals/person (1.7 m ³)	2 hours or less
Plunge Pools	1 hour or less	≤ 72°-93°F (22°-34°C)	≤ 450 gals/person (1.7 m ³)	1 hour or less
Runout Slide	1 hour or less	≥ 93-104°F (34°-40°C)	All	0.5 hours or less
Wading Pools*	1 hour or less	*Shall have secondary disinfection systems		
Wave Pools	2 hours or less			
All Other Pools	6 hours or less			
*Shall have secondary disinfection systems				

4.7.1.10.1 Maximum Allowable

All AQUATIC VENUES shall comply with the above following maximum allowable TURNOVER times shown show in MAHC Table 4.7.1.10: “Maximum Allowable Turnover Times.”

4.7.1.10.2 Calculated

The TURNOVER time shall be calculated based on the total volume of water divided by the flow rate through the filtration process.

4.7.1.10.2.1 Unfiltered Water

Unfiltered water such as water that may be withdrawn from and returned to the AQUATIC VENUE for such AQUATIC FEATURES as slides by a pump separate from the filtration system, shall not factor into TURNOVER time.

Table 4.7.1.10: Aquatic Venue Maximum Allowable Turnover Times

Type of Aquatic Venue	Turnover Maximum	States with these Values in their Codes
Activity Pools	2 hours or less	FL, WI
Diving Pools	8 hours or less	IL,KY,MS,OR, UT, MD, MO-KC,
Interactive Play*	0.5 hours or less	WI, MT, OH, AL-Baldwin, GA, MO-STL, , NE
Lazy River	2 hours or less	MT, IL, IA, WI, MI
Plunge Pools	1 hour or less	IA, MA, MI, MT, NE, NH, WI, AL-Baldwin, OR, SC, TN
Runout Slide	1 hour or less	IA, UT, TN, SC, WI, NE, GA-Fulton, DE
Wading Pools*	1 hour or less	CO, GA, IN, IA, MI,MT,NH, OR, SC, TN, WA, FL, DE, MO-St. Charles, NE, TX, UT
Wave Pools	2 hours or less	IN, IA, SD, WI, AL-Baldwin, MT, NY, SD
All Other Pools	6 hours or less	MOST
*Shall have secondary disinfection systems		

Spa, Therapy*, Exercise Pools (from WI, SC similar)		
Temperatures	Load (gals/person)	Turnover Maximum
≤ 72-93 °F	> 2500	4 hours or less
≤ 72-93 °F	> 450	2 hours or less
≤ 72-93 °F	≤ 450	1 hour or less
≤ 93-104 °F	All	0.5 hours or less
*Shall have secondary disinfection systems		

4.7.1.10.3 Turnover Variance

The AHJ may grant a TURNOVER time variance for AQUATIC VENUES with extreme volume or operating conditions based on proper engineering justification.

~~The AHJ may grant a TURNOVER time variance for AQUATIC VENUES with extreme volume or operating conditions based on proper engineering justification.~~

4.7.1.10.4 Turnover Times

TURNOVER times shall be calculated based solely on the flow rate through the filtration system.

~~TURNOVER times shall be calculated based solely on the flow rate through the filtration system.~~

4.7.1.10.4.1 Required

The required TURNOVER time shall be the lesser of the following options:

- 1) ~~The~~ specified time in MAHC Table 4.7.1.10, or
- 2) ~~The~~ time required for individual components (e.g., ~~three~~ skimmers with flow rates set by the manufacturer and an additional 20% for the main drains could exceed the minimum value in the table).

4.7.1.10.4.2 Total Volume

The total volume of the ~~AQUATIC VENUE POOL~~ system shall include the ~~AQUATIC VENUE POOL~~ and any surge/balance tank.

4.7.1.10.4.3 Supply Water

~~Where water is drawn from the AQUATIC VENUE to supply water to AQUATIC FEATURES~~ Supply water to attractions (e.g., slides, LAZY RIVERS, and tube rides), the ~~water~~ may be reused prior to filtration provided the DISINFECTANT and pH levels of the supply water are maintained at required levels.

4.7.1.10.5 Secondary Disinfection

~~SECONDARY DISINFECTION SYSTEMS (e.g. UV or Ozone) for INTERACTIVE WATER PLAY VENUES shall be installed on the total recirculation flow.~~

4.7.1.10.5.1 Reuse Ratio

The ratio of INTERACTIVE WATER PLAY ~~AQUATIC VENUE~~ FEATURE water to filtered water shall be no greater than 3:1 in order to maintain the efficiency of the FILTRATION SYSTEM.

4.7.1.10.6 Flow Turndown System

For AQUATIC FACILITIES that intend to reduce the recirculation flow rate below the minimum required design values when the POOL is unoccupied, the flow turndown system shall be designed as follows in MAHC Section 4.7.1.10.6.1 ~~through MAHC Section~~ 4.7.1.10.6.27.

4.7.1.10.6.1 Flowrate

The system flowrate shall not be reduced more than 25% lower than the minimum design requirements and only reduced when the ~~AQUATIC VENUE POOL~~ is unoccupied.

4.7.1.10.6.1.1 Clarity

The system flowrate shall be based on ensuring the minimum water clarity required under MAHC ~~Section~~ 5.7.64.5 is met before opening to the public.

4.7.1.10.6.1.2 Disinfectant Levels

The turndown system shall be required to maintain required DISINFECTANT and pH levels at all times.

4.7.1.10.6.2 Increase

When the turndown system is also used to intelligently increase the recirculation flow rate above the minimum requirement (e.g., *in times of peak use to maintain water quality goals more effectively*), the following requirements shall be met at all times:

- 1) Velocity requirements inside of pipes (*per MAHC Section 4.7.1.7.2*), and
- 2) Maximum filtration system flows.

4.7.2 Filtration**4.7.2.1 All Filters****4.7.2.1.1 Required**

Filtration shall be required for all AQUATIC VENUES that recirculate water.

4.7.2.2 Granular Media Filters**4.7.2.2.1 General****4.7.2.2.1.1 Valves and Piping**

The granular media filter system shall have valves and piping to allow isolation, venting, complete drainage (*for maintenance or inspections*), and backwashing of individual filters.

4.7.2.2.1.2 ~~Filtration Accessories~~Influent Pressure Gauge

Filtration accessories shall include the following items:

- 1) Influent pressure gauge,
- 2) Effluent pressure gauge .
- 2)3) Backwash sight glass or other means to view backwash water clarity, and
- ~~3) Backwash sight glass, and~~
- 4) Manual air relief system.—

4.7.2.2.1.3 Listed

All filters shall be listed and labeled~~certified~~ to NSF/ANSI 50 by an ANSI-accredited certification organization.

4.7.2.2.2 Filter Location and Spacing**4.7.2.2.2.1 Installed**

Filters shall be installed with adequate clearance and facilities for ready and safe inspection, maintenance, disassembly, and repair.

4.7.2.2.2.2 Media Removal

A means and access for easy removal of filter media shall be required.

4.7.2.2.3 Filtration and Backwashing Rates

4.7.2.2.3.1 Operate

High-rate granular media filters shall be designed to operate at no more than 15 gallons per minute per square foot (37gpm/ft² (29.3 m/h)) when a minimum bed depth of 15 inches (38.1 cm) is provided per manufacturer.

4.7.2.1.3.1.1 Less than ~~Fifteen~~ 15 Inch Bed Depth

When a bed depth is less than 15 inches (38.1 cm), filters shall be designed to operate at no more than 12 gallons per minute per square foot (29gpm/ft² (29.3 m/h)).

4.7.2.2.3.2 Backwash System Design

The granular media filter system shall be designed to backwash each filter at a rate of at least 15 gallons per minute per square foot (37~~36.7~~ m/h) of filter bed surface area, unless explicitly prohibited by the filter manufacturer and ~~or~~ approved at an alternate rate as specified in ~~their~~the NSF/ANSI 50 listing.

4.7.2.2.4 Minimum Filter Media Depth Requirements

4.7.2.2.4.1 ~~Minimum~~

The minimum depth of filter media cannot be less than the depth specified by the manufacturer.

4.7.2.2.5 Differential Pressure Measurement Gauges

4.7.2.2.5.1 ~~Gauges~~

Influent and effluent pressure gauges shall have the capability to measure up to a 20 pounds per square inch~~psi~~ (138 KPa) increase in the differential pressure across the filter bed in increments of one pound per square inch~~1 psi~~ (6.9 KPa) or less.

4.7.2.2.6 Coagulant Injection Equipment Installation

4.7.2.2.6.1 ~~Installed~~

If coagulant feed systems are used, they shall be installed with the injection point located before the filters as far ahead as possible, ~~and for pressure filters, on the suction side of the recirculation pump(s)~~ with electrical interlocks in accordance with MAHC Section 4.7.3.2.1.3.

4.7.2.3 Precoat Filters

4.7.2.3.1 General

4.7.2.3.1.1 Listed

All precoat, filters (*i.e.*, *pressure and vacuum*) shall be listed and labeled~~certified~~ to NSF/ANSI 50 by an ANSI-accredited certification organization.

4.7.2.3.1.2 Appropriate Media

Filters should be used with the appropriate filter media as recommended by the filter manufacturer for maximum clarity and cycle length for AQUATIC VENUE use.

4.7.2.3.1.2.1 ~~Listed, Labeled, Certified~~ and Sized

Filter media shall be ~~listed and labeled~~certified to NSF/ANSI Standard 50 by an ANSI-accredited certification organization and within the size specifications provided by the filter manufacturer and NSF/ANSI 50.

4.7.2.3.1.2.2 Alternate Types

Alternate types of filter media shall be permitted in accordance with the filter manufacturer's recommendation for AQUATIC VENUE use.

4.7.2.3.1.2.3 NSF Standard

Alternate types of filter media shall be ~~listed and labeled to in accordance with~~ NSF Standard 50 by and ANSI-accredited certification organization.

4.7.2.3.2 Filtration Rates

4.7.2.3.2.1 Vacuum Precoat

The design filtration rate for vacuum precoat filters shall not be greater than either:

- 1) ~~2.0~~ gallons per minute per square foot (4.9 m/h), or
- 2) 2.5 gallons per minute per square foot~~gpm/sf~~ (6.1 ~~m~~⁴m/h) when used with a continuous precoat media feed (*commonly referred to as "body-feed"*).—

4.7.2.3.2.2 Pressure Precoat

The design filtration rate for pressure precoat filters shall not be greater than ~~2.0~~ gallons per minute per square foot (4.9 m/h) of effective filter surface area.

4.7.2.3.2.3 Calculate

The filtration surface area shall be ~~based on~~calculated as the ~~outside~~measured surface area of the media with the manufacturer's recommended thickness~~septum plus 1/8 inch layer~~ of precoat media and consistent with their NSF/ANSI 50 listing and labeling.

4.7.2.3.3 Precoat Media Introduction System

~~4.7.2.3.3.1~~ ~~Precoat Process~~

The precoat process shall follow the manufacturer's recommendations and requirements of NSF/ANSI Standard 50.

4.7.2.3.4 Continuous Filter Media Feed Equipment

4.7.2.3.4.1 Manufacturer Specification

If equipment is provided for the continuous feeding of filter media to the filter influent, the equipment shall be used in accordance with the manufacturer's specifications.

4.7.2.3.4.2 Filter Media Discharge

All discharged filter media shall be handled in accordance with local and state laws, rules, and regulations.

4.7.2.4 Cartridge Filters

4.7.2.4.1 Listed

Cartridge filters shall be installed in accordance with the filter manufacturer's recommendations and listed and labeled~~certified~~ to NSF/ANSI 50 by an ANSI-accredited certification organization.

4.7.2.4.2 Filtration Rates

The design filtration rate for surface-type cartridge filter shall not exceed 0.30 gallons per minute per square foot (0.20 L/s/m^2).

4.7.2.4.3 Supplied and Sized Elements

Filter cartridges shall be supplied and sized in accordance with the filter manufacturer's recommendation for AQUATIC VENUE use.

4.7.2.4.4 Spare Cartridge

One complete set of spare cartridges shall be maintained on site in a clean and dry condition.

4.7.3 Disinfection and pH Control~~control~~

4.7.3.1 Chemical Addition Methods

4.7.3.1.1 Disinfection and pH

DISINFECTION and pH control chemicals shall be automatically introduced through the RECIRCULATION SYSTEM.

4.7.3.1.1.1 Controller Used

A chemical controller, as specified in MAHC Section 4.7.3.2.8~~40~~ shall be provided and used for MONITORING and control of DISINFECTANT and pH feed equipment.

4.7.3.1.1.2 Feeder

DISINFECTION and pH control chemicals shall be added using a feeder that meets the requirements outlined in MAHC Section 4.7.3.2.

4.7.3.2 Feed Equipment

4.7.3.2.1 General

4.7.3.2.1.1 Required

Chemical feeders shall be required upon adoption of this CODE.

4.7.3.2.1.2 Feeders & Devices

The AQUATIC FACILITY~~POOL~~ shall be equipped with chemical feed equipment such as flow-through chemical feeders, electrolytic chemical generators, mechanical chemical feeders, chemical feed pumps, and AUTOMATED CONTROLLERS that are listed~~is tested~~ and

~~labeled to NSF-ANSI 50 certified~~ by an ANSI-accredited certification organization ~~in conformance with NSF-ANSI 50.~~

~~4.7.3.2.1.2~~ ~~—~~ ~~Maintained~~

~~All chemical feed equipment shall be maintained in good working condition.~~

~~4.7.3~~ ~~Interlock~~ ~~2.1.3~~ ~~Controls and No or Low Flow Deactivation~~

All chemical feeders shall be provided with an automatic means to be disabled through an electrical interlock with at least two of the following:

- 1) Recirculation ~~pump power~~ ~~Pump Power~~,
- 2) Flow ~~meter/flow~~ ~~Meter/Flow~~ switch in the return line,
- 3) Chemical ~~control power~~ ~~Control Power~~ and ~~paddle wheel~~ ~~Paddle Wheel~~ or ~~flow cell~~ ~~Flow Cell~~ on the chemical controller if safety test confirms feed systems are disabled through the controller when the pump is turned off, loses prime, or filters are backwashed.

4.7.3.2.1.4 Installation

The chemical feeders shall be installed according to the manufacturer's instructions.

4.7.3.2.1.4.1 Protective Cover

A physical BARRIER shall be installed between chemical feed pumps supplying acid or liquid hypochlorite solution and other POOL components to shield staff and equipment from chemical sprays from leaking connections.

4.7.3.2.2 Sizing of Disinfection Equipment

4.7.3.2.2.1 Sizing

Feeders shall be capable of supplying DISINFECTANT and pH control chemicals to the AQUATIC VENUE to maintain the minimum required DISINFECTION levels at all times in accordance with the MAHC.

4.7.3.2.2.2 Chlorine Dosing

All CHLORINE dosing and generating equipment including erosion feeders, or in line electrolytic and brine/batch generators, shall be designed with a capacity to provide the following:

- 1) Outdoor AQUATIC VENUES (*unstabilized*): 4.0 lbs of FAC/day/10,000 gal (1.8 kg FAC/day/37,854 L)gals. of POOL water;
- 2) Indoor AQUATIC VENUES (*unstabilized*): 2.5 lbs FAC/day/10,000 gal (1.1 kg FAC/day/37,854 L)gals. of POOL water.

4.7.3.2.2.3 Rates

The rates above are suggested minimums & in all cases the engineer shall validate the feed and production equipment specified.

4.7.3.2.3 Introduction of Chemicals

4.7.3.2.3.1 Separation

The injection point of disinfection chemicals shall be located before any pH control chemical injection point with sufficient physical separation of the injection points to reduce the likelihood of mixing of these chemicals in the piping during periods of interruption of recirculation system flow.

4.7.3.2.3.2 Backflow

Means of injection shall not allow BACKFLOW into the chemical system from the POOL system.

4.7.3.2.3.3 Coagulants

Coagulants shall be metered and injected through a pump system prior to the filters per the manufacturer's recommended rate.

4.7.3.2.4 Compressed Chlorine Gas

4.7.3.2.4.1 Prohibited for New Construction

Use of compressed CHLORINE gas shall be prohibited for new construction and after SUBSTANTIAL ALTERATION to existing AQUATIC FACILITIES.

4.7.3.2.4.2 In Existing Aquatic Facilities

Use of compressed chlorine gas in existing AQUATIC FACILITIES is covered in MAHC Section 4.9.2.11.

4.7.3.2.5 Types of Feeders

4.7.3.2.5.1 Liquid Solution Feeders

Liquid solution feeders shall include positive displacement pumps such as peristaltic pumps, diaphragm pumps, and piston pumps.

4.7.3.2.5.1.1 Feed Rates

Feed rates shall be locally adjusted on the pumps and also on/off controlled using an AUTOMATED CONTROLLER~~chemical controllers~~.

4.7.3.2.5.2 Erosion

Erosion feeders may be pressure, pressure differential, or spray erosion types.

4.7.3.2.5.2.1 Dry Chemical Feeders

Dry chemicals shall be granules or tablets.

4.7.3.2.5.2.2 Located

Feeders shall have isolation valves on each side of the feeder to be closed before opening the unit.

4.7.3.2.5.2.3 Source Water

Erosion feeders shall use AQUATIC VENUE water post-filtration as the source water unless approved by the feeder manufacturer.

4.7.3.2.5.3 Gas Feed Systems

Carbon dioxide and ozone are the only gas feed systems permitted in AQUATIC FACILITIES.

4.7.3.2.5.4 Ventilation

Proper ventilation shall be required for all gas systems.

4.7.3.2.5.5 Alarms

Where CO₂ cylinders are located indoors, a monitor and alarm shall be provided to alert PATRONS/operator of high CO₂ and/or low O₂ levels.

4.7.3.2.5.6 UV Systems

Where used, ultraviolet light (*UV*) systems shall be installed in the RECIRCULATION SYSTEM after the filters.

4.7.3.2.5.6.1 Bypass

A bypass pipe that is valved on both ends shall be installed to allow maintenance on the UV unit while the POOL is in operation.

4.7.3.2.5.6.2 Interlock

UV system operation shall be interlocked with the recirculation pump -so that power to the UV system is interrupted when there is no water flow to the UV unit per MAHC Section 7.

~~4.7.3.2.15.6.3~~ ~~Strainer~~

~~An inline strainer shall be installed after the UV unit to capture broken lamp glass or sleeves.~~

4.7.3.2.6 Salt Electrolytic Chlorine Generators, Brine Electrolytic Chlorine, or Bromine Generators

4.7.3.2.6.1 Salt Electrolytic Chlorine Generators

In-line generator(s) or brine (*batch*) generator(s) shall be permitted on AQUATIC VENUES.

4.7.3.2.6.2 In-line Method

In-line generators shall use POOL-grade salt dosed ~~through an electrolytic chamber~~ into the AQUATIC VENUE POOL to produce and introduce CHLORINE into the AQUATIC VENUE treatment loop through an electrolytic chamber. ~~POOL vessel.~~

4.7.3.2.6.3 Batch ~~Method~~method

Brine (*Batch*) generators shall produce CHLORINE through an electrolytic cell.

4.7.3.2.6.3.1 Chlorine Production

CHLORINE shall be produced from brines composed of POOL-grade salt.

4.7.3.2.6.4 TDS Readout

Electrolytic generators shall have a TDS or salt (NaCl) readout and a low salt indicator.

4.7.3.2.6.5 Feed Rate

The feed rate shall be adjustable from zero (0) to full range.

4.7.3.2.6.6 Capacity

~~The generator(s) shall be capable of providing a CHLORINE dosage equivalent to 100% of the total daily facility requirement.~~

4.7.3.2.6.7 ~~UL Standard Certified~~

The generator unit shall be ~~UL-listed and labeled to third party certified in accordance with~~ UL 1081 ~~(for electrical/fire/shock safety) by an ANSI-accredited certification organization.~~

4.7.3.2.6.78 Interlock

The generator(s) shall be interlocked per MAHC Section 4.7.3.2.1.3.

4.7.3.2.6.89 Installed

The generator units shall be installed according to the manufacturer's instructions.

4.7.3.2.6.89.1 Saline Content

The saline content of the POOL water shall be maintained in the required range specified by the manufacturer.

4.7.3.2.7 Feeders for pH Adjustment**4.7.3.2.7.1 Provided**

Feeders for pH adjustment shall be provided on all AQUATIC VENUES upon adoption of this CODE as in MAHC Section 4.7.3.2.1.2.

4.7.3.2.7.2 Approved Substances

Approved substances for pH adjustment shall ~~include but not be limited to~~be muriatic (hydrochloric) acid, sodium bisulfate, carbon dioxide, sulfuric acid, sodium bicarbonate, and soda ash.

4.7.3.2.7.32.1 ~~Prohibited~~

~~Sodium hydroxide use shall be prohibited.~~

4.7.3.2.7.3 ~~Positive Displacement~~

~~pH adjustment feeders shall be positive displacement type.~~

4.7.3.2.7.4 Adjustable

pH adjustment feeders shall be adjustable from zero (0) to full range.

4.7.3.2.7.45 **Marked**

Reservoirs shall be clearly marked and labeled with contents.

4.7.3.2.8 **Automated Controllers**

4.7.3.2.8.1 **Required**

AUTOMATED CONTROLLERS shall be installed for MONITORING and turning on or off ~~a~~ chemical feeders used for pH and disinfectants~~feeder~~ at all AQUATIC VENUES.

4.7.3.2.8.1.1 **Installed**

AUTOMATED CONTROLLERS shall be required within one year from ~~time of~~ adoption of this CODE.

4.7.3.2.8.2 **NSF Standard**

All automated chemical controllers for pH and disinfectant MONITORING/control shall be listed and labeled~~certified~~ to NSF/ANSI 50 by an ANSI-accredited certification organization.

4.7.3.2.8.3 **Operation Manuals**

Operation manuals or other instructions that give clear directions for cleaning and calibrating AUTOMATED CONTROLLER probes and sensors shall be provided in close proximity to~~the same room as~~ the AUTOMATED CONTROLLER.

4.7.3.2.8.4 **Interlocked**

~~The AUTOMATED CONTROLLERS shall be interlocked per MAHC Section 4.7.3.2.1.4.~~

~~**4.7.3.2.8.5** **Set Point**~~

A set point shall be used to target the disinfectant level and the pH level.

4.7.3.3 **Secondary Disinfection Systems**

4.7.3.3.1 **General Requirements**

4.7.3.3.1.1 **ANSI Listing and Labeling**~~Certified~~

SECONDARY DISINFECTION SYSTEMS shall be listed and labeled~~certified~~ to ANSI/NSF 50 by an ANSI-accredited ~~Accredited third party testing and~~ certification organization approved by the AHJ.

4.7.3.3.1.2 **Required Facilities**

The new construction or SUBSTANTIAL ALTERATION of the following INCREASED RISK AQUATIC VENUES shall be required to use a SECONDARY DISINFECTION SYSTEM after adoption of this CODE:

- 1) ~~AQUATIC~~ AQUATIC VENUES designed primarily for ~~DIAPER-AGED~~ children under (~~children <5 years old~~), such as
 - a. ~~WADING~~ wading POOLS,
 - b. ~~INTERACTIVE~~ INTERACTIVE WATER PLAY VENUES with no standing water, and
- 2) THERAPY POOLS.

4.7.3.3.1.3 Other Aquatic Venues

Optional SECONDARY DISINFECTION SYSTEMS may be installed on other AQUATIC VENUES not specified in MAHC Section 4.7.3.3.1.2.

4.7.3.3.1.4 Labeled

If installed and labeled as SECONDARY DISINFECTION SYSTEMS, then they shall conform to all requirements specified under MAHC Section 4.7.3.3.

4.7.3.3.1.5 Conform

If not labeled as SECONDARY DISINFECTION SYSTEMS, then they shall be labeled as SUPPLEMENTAL TREATMENT SYSTEMS and conform to requirements listed under MAHC Section 4.7.3.4.

4.7.3.3.2 3-log Inactivation and Oocyst Reduction

4.7.3.3.2.1 3-log Inactivation

SECONDARY DISINFECTION SYSTEMS shall be designed to achieve a minimum 3-log (99.9%) reduction in the number of infective *Cryptosporidium parvum* OOCYSTS per pass through the SECONDARY DISINFECTION SYSTEM.

4.7.3.3.2.2 Installation

The SECONDARY DISINFECTION SYSTEM shall be located in the treatment loop (*post filtration*) and treat a portion (*up to 100%*) of the ~~filtration~~ recirculation flow prior to return of the water to the AQUATIC VENUE or AQUATIC FEATURE.

4.7.3.3.2.3 Manufacturer's Instructions

The SECONDARY DISINFECTION SYSTEM shall be installed according to the manufacturer's directions.

4.7.3.3.2.4 Minimum Flow Rate Calculation

The flow rate (Q) through the SECONDARY DISINFECTION SYSTEM shall be determined based upon the total volume of the AQUATIC VENUE or AQUATIC FEATURE (V) and a prescribed dilution time (T) for theoretically reducing the number of assumed infective *Cryptosporidium* OOCYSTS from an initial total number of 100 million (108) OOCYSTS to a concentration of ~~one OOCYST/1000000 mL~~ one OOCYST/100 mL.

4.7.3.3.2.5 Equation

Accounting for a 3 log (99.9%) reduction of infective *Cryptosporidium* ~~OOCYSTS~~ OOCYSTS through the SECONDARY DISINFECTION SYSTEM with each pass, the SECONDARY DISINFECTION SYSTEM flow rate (Q) shall be:

$Q = V \times \frac{((14.8 - \ln(V)))}{(60 \times T)}$; where:

- Q = SECONDARY DISINFECTION SYSTEM flow rate (gpm)
- V = Total water volume of the AQUATIC VENUE OR AQUATIC FEATURE, including surge tanks, piping, equipment, etc. (gals)
- T = Dilution time (hrs.)-

4.7.3.3.2.6 Time for Dilution Reduction

The dilution time shall be the lesser of nine hours or 75% of the uninterrupted time an AQUATIC VENUE is closed in a 24 hour period.

4.7.3.3.2.7 Flow Rate Measurements

Where a SECONDARY DISINFECTION SYSTEM is installed, a means shall be installed to confirm the required flow rate to maintain a minimum 3 log (99.9%) reduction of infective *Cryptosporidium* ~~OOCYSTS~~ at the minimum flow rate ~~as prescribed above~~.

4.7.3.3.2.7.1 Flow Rate Defined

The minimum required flow rate through the SECONDARY DISINFECTION SYSTEM shall be as defined in MAHC Section 4.7.3.3.2. ~~56~~.

4.7.3.3.3 Ultraviolet Light Systems

4.7.3.3.3.1 Third Party Validation

UV equipment shall be third party validated in accordance with the practices outlined in the *US EPA Ultraviolet Disinfectant Guidance Manual* dated November, 2006, publication number EPA 815-R-06-007.

4.7.3.3.3.1.1 Validation ~~Standard~~

The *US EPA Ultraviolet Disinfectant Guidance Manual* shall be considered a recognized national STANDARD in the MAHC.

4.7.3.3.3.2 Suitable for Intended Use

UV ~~systems~~ and all materials used therein shall be suitable for their intended use and be installed:

- 1) ~~In~~ accordance with the MAHC,
- 2) As listed and labeled to a specific standard ~~as certified~~ by an ANSI-accredited ~~Accredited third party testing and~~ certification organization, and
- 3) As specified by the manufacturer.-

4.7.3.3.3.3 Installation

The UV equipment shall be installed after the filtration and before addition of primary DISINFECTANT.

4.7.3.3.3.3.1 Labeled

UV equipment shall be labeled with the following design specifications: maximum flow rate, minimum transmissivity, minimum intensity, and minimum dosage, ~~and maximum gallons of water disinfected by the unit.~~

4.7.3.3.3.2 Strainer Installation

~~An inline~~A simple strainer shall be ~~installed after fitted downstream of~~ the UV ~~units~~system to ~~capture broken lamp~~prevent any glass ~~or sleeves~~returning to the AQUATIC VENUE in the event of accidental breakage of the quartz sleeve.

4.7.3.3.3.4 Comply with all Codes

~~The UV equipment, electrical components, wiring and installation shall comply with all CODES in force where the unit is to be installed.~~

4.7.3.3.3.5 Electronically Interlocked

The equipment shall be electrically interlocked with feature pump(s) or automated feature supply valves, such that when the UV equipment fails to produce the required dosage as measured by automated sensor, the water features do not operate.

4.7.3.3.3.45.1 Operation

UV systems shall not operate if the RECIRCULATION SYSTEM is not operating.

4.7.3.3.3.56 Calibrated UV Sensors

The UV equipment shall be complete with calibrated UV sensors, which record the output of all the UV lamps installed in a system.

4.7.3.3.3.56.1 Multiple Lamps

Where multiple lamps are fitted, sufficient sensors shall be provided to measure each lamp.

4.7.3.3.3.56.2 Fewer Sensors

If the design utilizes fewer sensors than lamps, the location of lamps and sensors shall be such that the output of all lamps is adequately measured.-

4.7.3.3.3.67 Equipment Audit

In order to ensure that equipment supplied meets all the requirements of the STANDARD the manufacturer shall maintain a quality assurance system audited on a regular basis to a recognized quality STANDARD.

4.7.3.3.3.67.1 Accreditation

An ISO9000:2000 accreditation or ~~listing to listings of~~ NSF Standard 50 are both acceptable methods of meeting this equipment requirement.

4.7.3.3.3.78 Automated Shut Down

The automated shut down of the UV equipment for any reason shall initiate a visual alarm or other indication which will alert staff on-site or remotely.

4.7.3.3.3.78.1 Signage

Signage instructing staff or PATRONS to notify facility management shall be posted adjacent to the visual indication.

4.7.3.3.3.78.2 Not Staffed

If the AQUATIC FACILITY is not staffed, the sign shall include a means to contact management whenever the AQUATIC FACILITY is in use.

4.7.3.3.3.89 Reports and Documentation

The UV equipment shall be supplied with the appropriate validation reports and documentation for that equipment model.

4.7.3.3.3.940 Manufacturer 3-log Inactivation Chart

This documentation will include a graph or chart indicating the dose at which a 3-log inactivation is guaranteed for the system in question.

4.7.3.3.3.940.1 RED Bias

This dose shall be inclusive of validation factors and REDUCTION EQUIVALENT DOSE ~~EQUIVALENT DOSE~~ (RED) BIAS.

4.7.3.3.3.940.2 System Performance Curves

System performance curves that do not include such factors are not considered validated systems.-

4.7.3.3.3.1044 Minimum RED

Validation records shall include the graph indicating the minimum intensity reading required at the operational flow for the minimum RED required to achieve 3-log reduction.

4.7.3.3.3.1044.1 Minimum Intensity Shown

Where systems are validated to a specific dose, the graph shall show the minimum intensity reading required at the operational flow for that dose.-

4.7.3.3.3.1142 Recommended Validation Protocol

Based on the recommended validation protocol presented in the US EPA Disinfection Guidance Manual, UV reactors certified by ÖNORM and DVGW for a *Bacillus subtilis* RED of 40mJ/cm² shall be granted 3-log *Cryptosporidium* and 3-log *Giardia* inactivation credit as required in this CODE.

4.7.3.3.4 Ozone Disinfection**4.7.3.3.4.1 3-log Inactivation**

SECONDARY DISINFECTION SYSTEMS using ozone shall provide the required inactivation of *Cryptosporidium* in the full flow of the SECONDARY~~SECONDARY~~ DISINFECTION SYSTEM after any side-stream has remixed into the full flow of the SECONDARY~~SECONDARY~~ DISINFECTION SYSTEM.

4.7.3.3.4.2 Third Party Validation

Ozone systems ~~shall~~**must** be validated by an ANSI-accredited third party testing and certification organization to confirm that they provide a minimum 3 log (99.9%) inactivation of *Cryptosporidium* in the full ~~SECONDARY~~~~SECONDARY~~ DISINFECTION SYSTEM flow after any side-stream has remixed into the full ~~SECONDARY~~~~SECONDARY~~ DISINFECTION SYSTEM flow and prior to return of the water to the AQUATIC VENUE OR AQUATIC FEATURE recirculation treatment loop.

4.7.3.3.4.3 Suitable for Use

Ozone systems and all materials used therein shall be suitable for their intended use and shall be installed:

- 1) In accordance with all applicable requirements,
- 2) ~~As listed and labeled to a specific standard~~~~as certified~~ by an ANSI-accredited ~~Accereditd third party testing and~~ certification organization, and
- 3) ~~As~~ specified by the manufacturer.-

4.7.3.3.4.4 Ozone System Components

An ozone system shall be a complete system consisting of the following (*either skid-mounted or components*):

- 1) Ozone generator.
- 2) Injector / injector manifold.
- 3) Reaction tank (*contact tank*) / mixing tank / degas tower.
- 4) Degas valve (*if applicable, to vent un-dissolved gaseous ozone*).
- 5) Ozone destruct (*to destroy un-dissolved gaseous ozone*).
- 6) ORP monitor / controller.
- 7) Ambient ozone monitor / controller.
- 8) Air flow meter / controller, and
- 9) Water BACKFLOW prevention device in gas delivery system.

4.7.3.3.4.5 Appropriate Installation

These components (*or skid*) shall be installed as specified by the manufacturer~~manufacture~~ to maintain the required system validation as noted above.

4.7.3.3.4.6 ORP Monitor

The ozone generating equipment shall be designed, sized, and controlled utilizing an ORP (*oxidation REDUCTION POTENTIAL*) monitor / controller (*independent of and in addition to any halogen ORP monitor/controller*).

4.7.3.3.4.6.1 Placed Downstream

The device shall be placed in the AQUATIC VENUE and AQUATIC FEATURE recirculation water downstream of the ozone side-stream loop and before the halogen feed location.

4.7.3.3.4.6.2 Minimum ORP Reading

The minimum ORP reading shall be no less than 600 mV measured directly after (~~one~~ to ~~five~~ feet ~~(30.5 cm to 1.5 m))~~) the ozone side-stream remixes into the full flow of the RECIRCULATION SYSTEM.

4.7.3.3.4.6.3 Maximum ORP Reading

The maximum ORP reading shall be no greater than 900 mV.-

4.7.3.3.4.7 Installation and Injection Point

The ozone system injection point shall be located in the AQUATIC VENUE return line after the filtration and heating equipment, prior to the primary disinfectant injection point.

4.7.3.3.4.7.1 Injection and Mixing

The injection and mixing system shall not prevent the attainment of the recirculation rate required elsewhere in this CODE.-

4.7.3.3.4.7.2 Gas Monitor / Controller

An ambient ozone gas monitor/controller located adjacent to the ozone reactor/contact tank shall be utilized to disable the ozone system in the event of an ozone gas leak.

4.7.3.3.4.8 Comply with ~~Uniform~~ Fire Code

Ozone system installations shall comply with ~~Annex G~~ of the NFPA 1 ~~Uniform~~ Fire Code or ~~Section 3705~~ of the International Fire Code and any other CODES, STANDARDS, or requirements as mandated by the AHJ.

4.7.3.3.4.9 Air Space Testing

At the time the ozone generating equipment is installed, again after 24 hours of operation, and annually thereafter, the air space within ~~6~~ (six) inches of the AQUATIC VENUE water shall be tested to determine compliance of less than 0.1 PPM (mg/L) gaseous ozone.

4.7.3.3.4.9.1 Results

Results of the test shall be maintained on site for review by the AHJ ~~local enforcing agency~~.

4.7.3.3.4.10 Automatic Shut Down

Automatic shutdown shall occur under any condition that would result in the ozone system not operating within the established parameters needed to achieve 3-log inactivation of *Cryptosporidium* (i.e. low feed gas supply, loss of vacuum or pressure, high dew point in feed air, water in ozone gas delivery line).-

4.7.3.3.4.10.1 Electrically Interlocked

The equipment shall be electrically interlocked with AQUATIC VENUEFEATURE pump(s) or automated feature supply valves, such that when the ozone equipment fails to produce the required dosage as measured by ORP, the AQUATIC VENUESFEATURES do not operate.

4.7.3.3.4.11 ORP Reading Alarm or Visual Indication

If the ORP reading for the ozone system drops below 600 mV (*regardless of the cause*) a visual alarm or other indication shall be initiated that will alert staff on-site or remotely.-

4.7.3.3.4.11.1 Signage

Signage to notify facility management shall be present adjacent to the visual alarm.-

4.7.3.3.4.12 Regular Audits

In order to ensure that the supplied ozone system ~~supplied~~ meets all the requirements of the STANDARD, the manufacturer shall maintain a quality system audited on a regular basis to a recognized quality STANDARD.

4.7.3.3.4.12.1 Listed

Ozone equipment shall be listed to NSF/ANSI Standard 50.I.-

4.7.3.3.4.13 Reports and Documentation

The ozone system shall be supplied with the appropriate validation reports and documentation for that equipment model.-

4.7.3.3.4.13.1 3-log Inactivation Chart

Ozone validation reports shall ~~This will~~ include a graph, ~~or~~ chart, or other documentation which clearly indicates the required operating parameters for which a 3-log inactivation is guaranteed for the system in question.

4.7.3.3.4.13.2 Inclusive

This dose shall be inclusive of validation factors.-

4.7.3.3.4.13.3 System Performance Curves

System performance curves that do not include such factors are not considered validated systems.-

4.7.3.4 Supplemental Treatment Systems

4.7.3.4.1 General Requirements

4.7.3.4.1.1 Optional

~~AQUATIC~~ AQUATIC VENUES that do not require SECONDARY DISINFECTION SYSTEMS may install SUPPLEMENTAL TREATMENT SYSTEMS for the purpose of enhancing overall system performance and improving water quality.—

4.7.3.4.1.2 Not Required

SUPPLEMENTAL TREATMENT SYSTEMS shall not be required on any AQUATIC VENUES.-

4.7.3.4.1.3 Clearly Noted ~~Does not meet Secondary Disinfection System Requirements~~

It shall be clearly noted in the AQUATIC FACILITY operating instructions that these SUPPLEMENTAL TREATMENT SYSTEMS do not meet the requirements of a SECONDARY DISINFECTION SYSTEM, and as such, are only considered SUPPLEMENTAL TREATMENT SYSTEMS.

4.7.3.4.1.4 No 3-log Inactivation Required

SUPPLEMENTAL TREATMENT SYSTEMS shall meet all of the requirements of this CODE, except:

- 1) They do not need to achieve a 3-log (99.9%) inactivation of *Cryptosporidium parvum* as required in MAHC Section 4.7.3.3,
- 2) They do not need to be able to reduce the total number of infective OOCYSTS to ~~one OOCYST~~ per 100 mL as required in MAHC Section 4.7.3.3, and
- 3) Except as noted in MAHC Sections 4.7.3.4.2 and 4.7.3.4.3 below.

4.7.3.4.1.5 Clearly Labeled

Each system shall be clearly labeled, "Supplemental Water Treatment System—Does Not meet the requirements for Secondary DISINFECTION."

4.7.3.4.2 Ultraviolet Light

4.7.3.4.2.1 UV as Supplemental Treatment Requirement

When UV is used as a SUPPLEMENTAL TREATMENT SYSTEM, all requirements of MAHC Section 4.7.3.3.3.2 ~~through~~ 4.7.3.3.3.4 shall be met.

4.7.3.4.2.3 Water Features

Water features ~~shall~~ not ~~require~~ ~~to be~~ shut off if the supplemental UV system does not produce the required dosage.

4.7.3.4.2.4 Exempt

The equipment is exempt from the validation requirements of MAHC Section 4.7.3.3.3.1.4.

4.7.3.4.3 Ozone

4.7.3.4.3.1 Ozone as Supplemental Treatment Requirement

When ozone is used as a SUPPLEMENTAL TREATMENT SYSTEM, all requirements of MAHC Section 4.7.3.3.4.3 thru 4.7.3.3.4.9 shall be met.

4.7.3.4.3.2 Maximum ORP Reading

The maximum ORP reading shall be no greater than 900 mV.

4.7.3.4.4 Copper / Silver Ion Systems

4.7.3.4.4.1 Only EPA-Registered Disinfectants

Only those systems that are EPA-REGISTERED for use as disinfectants in AQUATIC VENUES or SPAS in the United States shall be permitted.-

4.7.3.4.4.2 Suitable

Copper/silver systems, and all materials used therein, shall be suitable for their intended use.-

4.7.3.4.4.3 Installed

Copper/silver systems, and all materials used therein, shall be installed in accordance with all applicable requirements and manufacturer's instructions. _

4.7.3.4.5 Ultraviolet Light / Hydrogen Peroxide Systems

4.7.3.4.5.1 ~~Prohibited~~

Ultraviolet ~~light / hydrogen peroxide~~Light / Hydrogen Peroxide combination systems shall be prohibited for use in AQUATIC FACILITIES.-

4.7.3.5 Water Quality Testing Devices and Kits

4.7.3.5.1 Compliance

WATER QUALITY TESTING DEVICES and kits shall be listed and labeled~~certified~~ to NSF/ANSI 50 by an ANSI-accredited certification organization.

4.7.3.5.2 Water Clarity Device

~~Refer~~Note: For info regarding water clarity devices, refer to MAHC Section 5.7.6.

4.7.3.6 Microbiological Testing Equipment

4.7.3.6.1 EPA-Approved

Microbiological testing equipment and methods shall be

- 1) EPA-Approved, EPA-Accepted, EPA-Equivalent,
- 2) ~~Conforming~~conforming to the latest edition of *Standard Methods for the Examination of Water and Wastewater*, or
- 1)3) Listed and labeled~~certified~~ to NSF/ANSI 50 by an ANSI-accredited certification organization.-

4.7.4 Water Replenishment System

4.7.4.1 Pool Wastewater

~~Waste streams generated by POOLS shall be properly discharged in accordance with MAHC Section 4.11.6.-~~

4.7.4.2 Discharge and Measure

A means of intentionally discharging and measuring or calculating the volume of both discharged AQUATIC VENUE water and filter backwash wastewater (*or alternate means of achieving the same result*) shall be provided installed.

4.7.4.12.1 Alternate System

An alternate system capable of removing an equivalent amount of dissolved small organic compounds and salts shall also be acceptable in lieu of discharging AQUATIC VENUE water.

4.7.4.12.1.1 Product Water

When an alternate system is used ~~if applicable~~, the return water from the alternate system shall maintain salt and total organic carbon concentrations that are less than or equal to tap water.

4.7.4.1.2.3 Discharge

This system shall be designed to discharge (*or treat and reuse*) AQUATIC VENUE water at a rate of up to four4 gallons (15 L) per BATHER per day per AQUATIC VENUE.

4.7.5 Spas

4.7.5.1 General

4.7.5.1.1 Requirements

SPAS shall conform to the design, operation, and maintenance requirement of AQUATIC VENUES except as required below.

4.7.5.2 Flow Rates/Turnover Times

4.7.5.2.1 Maximum Allowable

All SPAS as defined in the MAHC shall be designed to have a maximum allowable TURNOVER time of 0.5 hour or less.

4.7.5.2.2 Turnover Time Variance

The AHJ may grant a TURNOVER time variance for AQUATIC VENUES with extreme volume or operating conditions based on proper engineering justification.

~~The AHJ may grant a TURNOVER time variance for AQUATIC VENUES with extreme volume or operating conditions based on proper engineering justification.~~

4.7.5.2.3 Turnover Times

TURNOVER times shall be calculated based solely on the flow rate through the filtration system.

4.7.5.3 Filtration System Inlets

~~4.7.5.3.1~~ *Minimum*

SPAS shall have a minimum of two adjustable filter system INLETS spaced at least ~~three~~³ feet (~~0.994~~ m) apart and designed to distribute flow evenly.

4.7.5.4 Jet System Inlets

4.7.5.4.1 *Air Flow*

Air flow shall be permitted through the jet system and/or when injected post-filtration.

4.7.5.4.2 *Skimmer*

Submerged suction SKIMMERS shall be allowed provided that the manufacturer's recommendations for use are followed.

4.8 Decks and Equipment

4.8.1 Decks

4.8.1.1 General Standards for All Decks

4.8.1.1.1 *Constructed*

DECKS shall be constructed in conformance with all applicable provisions of this chapter.

4.8.1.1.2 *Lifeguard Placement and Safety Considerations*

DECKS shall be designed to allow for QUALIFIED LIFEGUARD placement per the zone of ~~BATHERPATRON~~ surveillance in MAHC Section 6.3.~~32~~.1.1 and SAFETY areas and equipment in MAHC Section 4.~~86~~.5.4.

4.8.1.1.2.1 *Deck Clearance*

DECKS shall have a minimum of ~~four~~⁴ feet (~~1.2~~ m) of clearance from AQUATIC VENUE edge to fencing or other obstruction to allow for QUALIFIED LIFEGUARD transit, roaming, or change of positioning to maximize viewing of the zone of ~~BATHERPATRON~~ surveillance as well as execution of water extrication.

4.8.1.1.2.2 *Access Points*

Access points shall be provided to QUALIFIED LIFEGUARDS to transit to QUALIFIED LIFEGUARDS positions.

4.8.1.1.2.3 *BatherPatron Zone Surveillance*

The designer and owner shall consider impact on ~~BATHERPATRON~~ zone surveillance when determining placement of structural, operational, and theming elements.

4.8.1.1.2.3.1 Elements for Deck Placement

These elements shall include but are not limited to chairs, fencing, ADA access equipment, and AQUATIC FEATURES.

4.8.1.1.3 Joints or Gaps

Conditions between adjacent DECK materials, components, and concrete pours shall not have open joints or gaps larger than 3/16 inches wide (~~4.85~~ mm), nor a maximum difference in vertical elevation of ¼ inches (6.4 mm).

4.8.1.1.3.1 Vertical Elevation

Any change in vertical elevation shall be considered an edge condition.-

4.8.1.1.3.2 Fillers

Open joints or gaps larger than 3/16 inches (4.8" (5 mm)) wide or with vertical elevations exceeding ¼ inches 1/4" (6.45 mm) shall be rectified using appropriate fillers.-

4.8.1.1.3.3 Sealants

The use of fillers such as caulk or sealant in joints or gaps shall be permitted for expansion and contraction and shall not be in violation of MAHC Section 4.8.1.1.~~32~~.

4.8.1.1.4 Rounded Edges

All DECK edges shall be beveled, rounded, or otherwise relieved to eliminate sharp corners.

4.8.1.1.5 Minimize Cracks

Joints in decking shall be provided to minimize the potential for CRACKS due to a change in elevation, for movement of the slab and for shrinkage control.

4.8.1.1.6 Concrete Decking

Where concrete is used as a DECK material, it shall be installed in accordance with the latest edition of the American Concrete Institute (ACI) Standards and in accordance with local building CODES.

4.8.1.2 Standards for Perimeter Decks

4.8.1.2.1 Impervious

Finish materials for the PERIMETER DECK shall be suitable for the POOL environment, non-toxic, and substantially impervious.-

4.8.1.2.2 Watertight Expansion

Continuous watertight EXPANSION JOINT material shall be provided between PERIMETER DECKS and POOL coping.

4.8.1.2.2.1 Expansion Joint

Where applicable, the EXPANSION JOINT shall be designed and constructed so as to protect the coping and its mortar bed from damage as a result of movement of adjoining DECK.

4.8.1.2.3 Watertight Expansion

All conditions between adjacent concrete PERIMETER DECK pours shall be constructed with watertight EXPANSION JOINTS.

4.8.1.2.3.1 Joint Measurements

Joints shall be at least 3/16 inches (5 mm) in continuous width.

4.8.1.2.3.2 Vertical Differential

The maximum allowable vertical differential across a joint shall be ¼ inches (6.5 mm).

4.8.1.3 Drains

—Also, refer to MAHC Section 4.11.43.

4.8.1.3.1 Slope

DECKS shall be sloped away from the AQUATIC VENUE and in accordance with MAHC Table 4.8.1.32 below:

Table 4.8.1.3 Minimum Slopes for Drainage

Minimum Slopes for Drainage	
SURFACE	MINIMUM SLOPE
Smooth finishes; such as tile, hand-finished concrete & lightly-broomed concrete	1/8 inch per foot (3.2 mm/30.5 cm)
Moderately textured finishes; such as exposed aggregate or medium-broomed concrete	1/4 inch per foot (6.4 mm/30.5 cm)
Heavily textured finishes; such as brick (where permitted)	3/8 inch per foot (9.5 mm/30.5 cm)

4.8.1.3.1.1 Accessible Routes

Table 4.8.1.2: Minimum slopes for drainage	
SURFACE	MINIMUM SLOPE*
Smooth finishes; such as tile, hand-finished concrete & lightly-broomed concrete	1/8 inch per foot
Moderately textured finishes; such as exposed aggregate or medium-broomed concrete	1/4 inch per foot
Heavily textured finishes, such as brick	3/8 inch per foot (where permitted)

***Note: Accessibility:** Where DECK areas or portions thereof serve as ACCESSIBLE ROUTES or portions thereof, slopes in any direction shall not exceed ADA requirements.

4.8.1.3.1.24 All Water

All water ~~that touches areas defined as DECK~~, including water originating in the AQUATIC VENUE POOL, ~~that touches areas defined as DECK~~ shall drain effectively to either perimeter areas or to DECK drains.—

4.8.1.3.1.32 Remove Wastewater

Drainage shall remove AQUATIC VENUE POOL water that splashes outside of the AQUATIC VENUE and beyond a POOL gutter system, DECK cleaning water, and rain water without leaving standing water.—

4.8.1.3.2 Placement

The placement of DECK drains, where provided, shall effectively carry water away from the AQUATIC VENUE and off ~~of~~ the DECK without ponding.—

4.8.1.3.3 Cross Connection Control

There shall be no direct connection between the DECK drains and the sanitary or storm sewer system, or the AQUATIC VENUE gutter or RECIRCULATION SYSTEM.

4.8.1.3.3.1 Discharge to Sewer or Other Ground Water

If the AHJ requires an outdoor POOL to have DECK drains that discharge to a storm sewer system, ground surface, or holding pond, ~~the pool they~~ shall be plumbed through an air-gap, BACKFLOW preventer, or other approved device as allowed by the AHJ.

4.8.1.3.3.24 No Drain

DECK drains shall not drain to the POOL, POOL gutter, or RECIRCULATION SYSTEMS.—

4.8.1.3.4 Drain Bodies

Drain receptacles shall consist of non-CORROSIVE or corrosion-resistant materials.

4.8.1.3.5 Drain Covers

Drain covers shall be suitable for bare foot traffic with openings no greater than ~~1/2 one-~~ half inch (1.3 cm) and easily removable with a simple tool to facilitate regular cleaning.-

4.8.1.4 Materials / Slip Resistance

4.8.1.4.1 General

PERIMETER DECK and POOL DECK shall be constructed with a uniform, and easily cleaned, surface such as concrete, tile, manufactured or acrylic surfaces.-

4.8.1.4.2 Slip Resistance

All DECKS shall have slip-resistant, textured finishes, which are not conducive to slipping under contact of bare feet in wet or dry conditions.

4.8.1.4.3 Carpet

Carpet and artificial turf shall be prohibited materials for PERIMETER DECK and POOL DECK.

4.8.1.4.4 Wood

Wood shall be a prohibited material for use as PERIMETER DECK.

4.8.1.4.5 Dry Deck

DRY DECK shall be easily maintained and not create a public health hazard.

4.8.1.4.5.1 Not Required

DRY DECK ~~shall~~is not be required to be hard-paved or impervious.-

4.8.1.4.5.2 Wood Decking

Wood decking may beis a permitted ~~material~~ for DRY DECK.

4.8.1.4.6 Landscaping

Loose plant material or bedding ~~shall~~is not be permitted within PERIMETER DECKS.

4.8.1.4.6.1 Stable Materials

Stable materials are permitted ~~as allowed by MAHC Section 4.8.1.5.~~

4.8.1.5 Deck Size / Width

4.8.1.5.1 Perimeter Deck

4.8.1.5.1.1 Width

PERIMETER DECKS shall be ~~four~~4 feet (1.222 m) minimum in unobstructed width around the POOL perimeter as prescribed in this section.-

4.8.1.5.1.1.1 Circulation Path

PERIMETER DECK may serve as part of the CIRCULATION PATH.—

4.8.1.5.1.1.2 Flush with Pool Wall

PERIMETER DECK areas shall be flush with POOL walls/copings except where special conditions exist, such as elevated beam or parapet, raised transfer walls, or as permitted by other sections of this CODE.—

4.8.1.5.1.2 Perimeter Decking

PERIMETER DECKS shall be provided around 100% of the AQUATIC VENUE perimeter except where special conditions exist as permitted by other sections of this CODE.—

4.8.1.5.1.3 Unguarded Aquatic Venues

For ~~unguarded POOLS, PERIMETER~~ ~~Unguarded POOLS: PERIMETER~~ DECKS shall be provided in compliance with at least one of two options:

- 1) Provide PERIMETER DECK around 100% of the of the POOL perimeter; or
- 2) Provide PERIMETER DECK such that the entire perimeter and depth of the POOL is readily reachable by a pole and hook from the PERIMETER DECK.—

4.8.1.5.1.4 Spectator Seating

~~Refer For Spectator Seating, refer to MAHC Section 4.6.10.7 for additional requirements.—~~

~~4.8.1.5.2- Fixed Equipment~~

4.8.1.5.2.1 Unobstructed Deck

Unobstructed DECK area ~~four~~4 feet (~~1.2 m~~2.2m) minimum in width shall be provided for access around:

- 1) ~~Diving~~diving equipment,
- 2) ~~Special~~special feature stairways (*such as a waterslide*),
- 3) ~~Lifeguard~~lifeguard stands,
- 4) ~~Diving~~diving boards,
- 5) ~~Similar~~similar DECK equipment,
- 5)6) ~~ADA access equipment~~, and
- 6)7) ~~Structural~~structural columns.

4.8.1.5.2.2 Circulation Path

This ~~unobstructed~~ area may overlap the CIRCULATION PATH.

4.8.1.5.2.3 Queuing Space

Where reasonably anticipated, queuing space shall be provided at applicable equipment to minimize encroachment into the CIRCULATION PATH.

4.8.1.5.2.4 Free Space

Free area around equipment may consist of PERIMETER DECK and/or POOL DECK, as applicable.

4.8.1.5.3- Circulation Path

4.8.1.5.3.1 Conformance

A continuous and unobstructed CIRCULATION PATH shall be provided in conformance with ADA requirements for an ACCESSIBLE ROUTE.

4.8.1.5.3.2 Equipment and Furniture

DECK furniture locations shall be designed not intrude upon anythe CIRCULATION PATH.

4.8.1.5.3.3 Connect

CIRCULATION PATHPATH(s) shall connect all site amenities, entrances and exits as required by ADA.

4.8.1.5.3.4 Deck Types

CIRCULATION PATHS may consist of any combination of permitted DECK types.

4.8.1.6 Wing Walls or Peninsulas

4.8.1.6.1 No Perimeter Deck

WING WALLS or PENINSULAS less than 18 inches (~~0.45.7 cm-m~~) in width shall not be considered a part of the PERIMETER DECK.

4.8.1.6.1.1 Use by Lifeguards

A WING WALL or PENINSULA greater than 18 inches (~~0.45.7 cm-m~~) wide but less than 48 inches (*1.2 m*) wide may be used by QUALIFIED LIFEGUARD personnel but shall not be considered as part of the PERIMETER DECK.

4.8.1.6.1.2 Slip Resistant

Any WING WALL or PENINSULA intended to be accessed by QUALIFIED LIFEGUARDS shall be constructed of slip-resistant materials.

4.8.1.6.2 Perimeter Overflow System

~~WING WALLS or PENINSULAS project into the POOL area and inside the perimeter overflow system.~~

4.8.1.6.2.1 Impractical

If it is impractical to design a PERIMETER OVERFLOW SYSTEM into the WING WALL or PENINSULA due to width or height, then the overflow system may bypass the WING WALL or PENINSULA.

4.8.1.6.3 Pool Perimeter

WING WALLS and PENINSULAS shall be considered part of the POOL.

4.8.1.6.3.1 Calculating

WING WALLS and PENINSULAS shall not be accounted for in calculating the POOL perimeter.-

4.8.1.6.4 Normal Operating Water Level

WING WALLS and PENINSULAS shall be at or above the normal operating water level of the POOL.

4.8.1.6.5 Deck Drainage

DECK drainage shallis not be required for WING WALLS or PENINSULAS as they are considered part of the POOL.

4.8.1.6.5.1 Crowned

The tops shall be crowned to prevent standing water and sloped to the POOL or overflow system.-

4.8.1.6.6 Vertical Depth Markers

Vertical depth markers shall be provided around WING WALLS and PENINSULAS in accordance with MAHC Section 4.5.19.

4.8.1.7 Islands**4.8.1.7.1 Minimum Width Clearance**

An ISLAND not more than 18 inches (~~0.45.7 cm~~-m) in width shall be designed to discourage a person from walking on the ISLAND by not providing stairs, ladders, or bridges to the ISLAND.

4.8.1.7.2 Slip Resistant

The surface of ISLANDS intended for foot traffic shall be slip resistant.

4.8.1.7.3 Lifeguards

An ISLAND 18 inches (~~0.45.7 cm~~-m) to 48 inches (1.2 m) wide may be allowed for use only by QUALIFIED LIFEGUARDS.

4.8.1.7.4 Vertical Depth Markers

Vertical depth markers shall be provided around ISLANDS in accordance with MAHC Section 4.5.19 and visible from all sides.

4.8.1.7.5 Horizontal Depth Markers

Horizontal depth markings and warning signs shall also be required per MAHC Section 4.5.19 if the ISLAND is designed for BATHER use.-

4.8.1.7.5.1 Islands Not Intended for Bather Use

If the island is not designed for bather use, warning signs stating "No Entry" shall be required.

4.8.1.7.6 Bridge or Stairway

An ISLAND designed for BATHER traffic shall be accessible by bridge, ramp, ladder, or stairway from the POOL.

4.8.1.7.7 Minimum Clearance

All bridges spanning a POOL or any other structures not intended for interactive play shall have a minimum clearance of seven7 feet (2.1 m) from the bottom of the POOL to any structure overhead.

4.8.1.7.8 ~~No~~ Guard Rails

Any bridge shall have a minimum 42 inch (1.1 m) high BARRIER on both sides.

4.8.1.8 Heated Decks

4.8.1.8.1 Freeze Protection

Where heated DECKS are provided for the purpose of freeze protection, the extent of heated area shall minimally include the entire required PERIMETER DECK and required CIRCULATION PATH(S).

4.8.1.8.2 Clearly Delineated

Heated DECK paths must be clearly delineated with respect to un-heated DECKS.

4.8.1.9 Hose Bibbs

4.8.1.9.1 General

Domestic water hose bibbs~~source points~~ shall be provided in sufficient quantity, spacing, and type to easily wash down PERIMETER DECK and POOL DECK areas using a hose of no longer than 100 ft (30.5 m)~~adequate length~~.

4.8.1.9.2 Backflow Prevention

All hose bibbs shall be equipped with BACKFLOW prevention devices.

4.8.2 Diving Boards and Platforms

4.8.2.1 Diving Envelope

4.8.2.1.1 Competitive Diving~~Conforms~~

Diving boards shall be~~are~~ permitted only when the diving envelope conforms to the STANDARDS of the certifying agency that regulates competitive diving at the AQUATIC FACILITY. Such certifying agencies include:

- 1) National Collegiate Athletic Association (NCAA),
- 2) the National Federation of State High School Associations (NFSHSA),
- 3) the Federation Internationale de Natation Amateur (FINA), or
- 4) U.S.A. Diving, Inc.

4.8.2.1.2 Non-Competitive Diving

If the AQUATIC VENUE does not have competitive diving, then the diving envelope ~~shall~~**must** conform to the diving envelope STANDARDS of

- 1) MAHC Table 4.8.2.2.
- 2) MAHC Figure ~~4.8.2.2.1: Diving Platform Areas~~, MAHC Figure ~~4.8.2.2.4.2: Diving Platform Longitudinal Section~~, and
- 1)3) MAHC Figure ~~4.8.2.2.24.3: Diving Platform Cross Section~~.

4.8.2.2 Steps and Guardrails

4.8.2.2.1- Higher than Twenty-One21 Inches

Diving stands higher than 21 inches (~~53.3 cm~~**0.5 m**) measured from the DECK to the top of the butt end of the board or platform shall have steps or a ladder and handrails.-

4.8.2.2.2 Self-Draining Treads

Steps or ladder treads shall be self-draining, corrosion resistant, non-slip, and designed to support the maximum expected load.-

4.8.2.2.3- Short Platforms

Diving stands or platforms that are ~~one~~**1** meter (~~3.438 ft~~) or higher must be protected with guard rails at least 30 inches (~~0.76.2 cm~~**m**) above the board, extending at least to the edge of the water along with intermediate rails.

4.8.2.2.4 Tall Platforms

Diving stands or platforms that are ~~two~~**2** meters (~~6.6 ft~~) or higher must have guard rails with the top rail at least 36 inches (~~0.9 m~~) above the board and a second rail approximately half the distance from the platform to the upper rail.-

Table ~~4.8.2.2:4.4:~~ Diving Platform Areas

PUBLIC SWIMMING POOLS					
Table 1					
Diving Areas					
Letters below refer to Figure 1	Board height-meters	0.5 Meter	0.75 Meter	1.0 Meter	3.0 Meters
	Board height (feet)	1'8"	2'6"	3'4"	9'11"
	Board length (feet)	10'0"	12'0"	16'0"	16'0"
	Board width (feet)	1'8"	1'8"	1'8"	1'8"
Minimum dimensions in feet					
A	Distance from plummet back to pool wall	3'0"	4'6"	6'0"	6'0"
B	Distance from plummet to pool wall at side	10'0"	10'0"	10'0"	11'6"
C	Distance from plummet to adjacent plummet	8'10"	8'10"	8'10"	8'6.5"
D	Distance from plummet to pool wall ahead	26'0"	27'10"	29'7"	33'8"
E	Height, board to ceiling at plummet & distances F and G	16'0"	16'0"	16'0"	16'0"
F	Clear overhead distance behind and each side of plummet	8'0"	8'0"	8'0"	8'0"
G	Clear overhead distance ahead of plummet	16'0"	16'0"	16'0"	16'0"
H	Depth of water at plummet	9'6"	10'9"	12'0"	12'6"
J	Distance ahead of plummet to depth K	12'0"	14'3"	16'6"	19'9"
K	Depth at distance J ahead of plummet	8'9"	10'0"	11'3.375"	12'2"
L	Distance at each side of plummet to depth M	8'0"	8'1.5"	8'3"	9'11"
M	Depth at distance L on each side of plummet	9'1"	10'4"	11'7.5"	12'2"
N	Maximum slope to reduce height E	30°	30°	30°	30°
p	Maximum floor slope to reduce depth ahead of K, to the sides of M, or back to pool wall behind H	3:1	3:1	3:1	3:1

Figure 4.8.2.2.1.4.2: Diving Platform Longitudinal Section

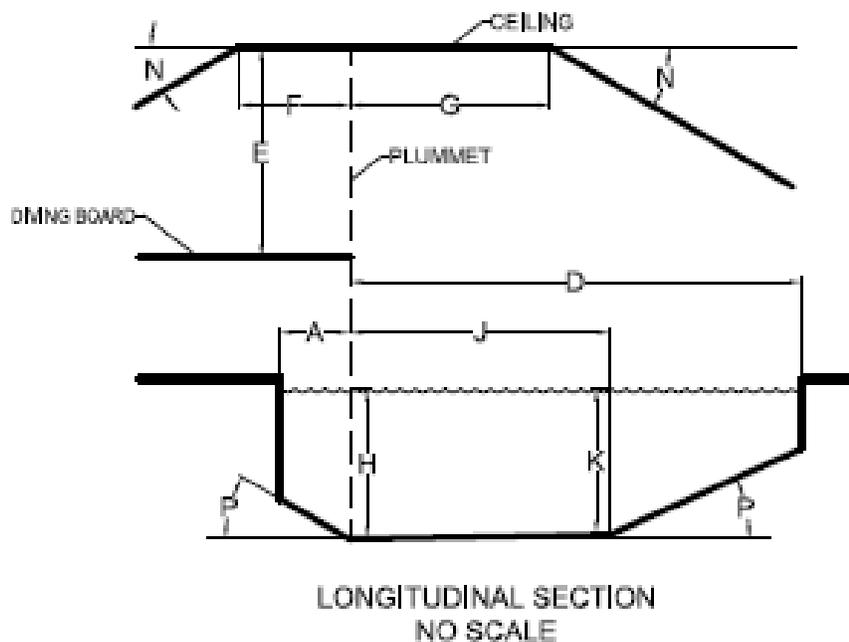
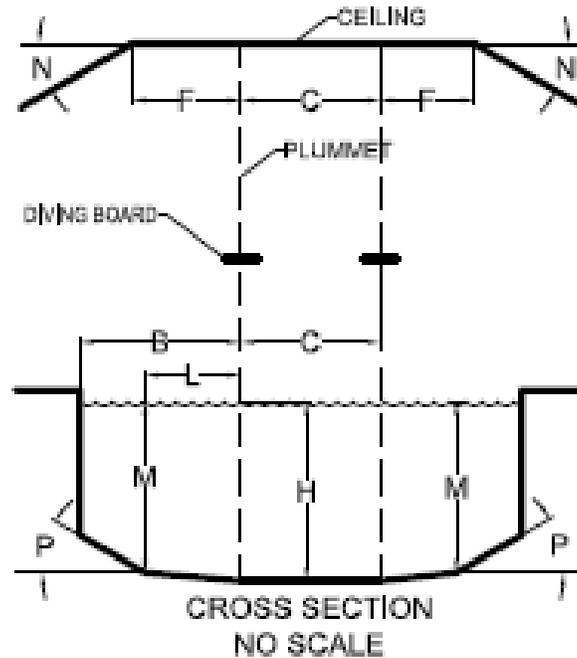


Figure 4.8.2.2.2:4.3- Diving Platform Cross Section



4.8.3- Starting Platforms

4.8.3.1 Conform to Standard Codes

Starting platforms shall be installed and conform to applicable SAFETY STANDARDS established by:

- 1) Federation Internationale de Natation (*FINA*),
- 2) U.S.A. Swimming,
- 3) National Collegiate Athletic Association (*NCAA*),
- 4) National Federation of State High Schools Associations (*NFSHSA*),
- 5) YMCA, or
- 6) ~~Other~~ other sanctioning body.-

4.8.3.2 ~~Competitive Training and Competition~~

~~Starting platforms shall only be used for competitive swimming competition and training.~~

~~4.8.3.2.1 — Supervision~~

~~Starting platforms shall only be used under the direct supervision of a coach or instructor.-~~

~~4.8.3.2.2 — Removed or Restricted~~

~~Starting platforms shall be removed if possible or prohibited from use during all recreational or non-competitive swimming activity.-~~

4.8.3.3 ~~Minimum Water Depth~~

Starting platforms shall be installed in a minimum water depth of ~~four~~4 feet (1.2 m).

4.8.3.34 **Leading Edge**

The leading edge of starting platforms shall have a maximum height of 30 inches (~~76.2 cm~~0.8 m) above the water surface.-

4.8.3.45 **Slip Resistant**

Starting platforms shall have slip resistant tread surfaces.-

4.8.3.56 **Secure and Stable**

Starting platforms shall be installed and secured per manufacturer's recommendations at all times when in use.

4.8.4 **PoolDeck Slides [N/A]****4.8.5** **Lifeguard- and Safety-Related Equipment****4.8.5.1** **Equipment Inspection and Maintenance [N/A]****4.8.5.2** **Safety Equipment Required at all Aquatic Facilities****4.8.5.2.1** **Emergency Communication Equipment**

The AQUATIC FACILITY or each AQUATIC VENUE, as necessary, shall have a functional telephone or other communication device that is hard wired and capable of directly dialing 911 or function as the emergency notification system.

4.8.5.2.1.1 **Conspicuous and Accessible**

The telephone or communication system or device shall be conspicuously provided and accessible to AQUATIC VENUE users_-such that it can be reached immediately.

4.8.5.2.1.2 **Alternate Communication Systems**

Alternate systems or devices are allowed with approval of the AHJ in situations when a telephone is not logistically sound, and an alternate means of communication is available, which meet the requirements of MAHC Section 5.8.5.2.1.2.

4.8.5.2.1.3 **Internal Communication**

The AQUATIC FACILITY design shall include a method for staff to communicate in cases of emergency.

4.8.5.2.1.4 **Signage**

A sign shall be posted at the telephone providing dialing instructions, address and location of the AQUATIC VENUE location, and the telephone number.

4.8.5.3 ~~1.4~~ **Replacement Cables**

~~Replacement communication cables shall not be installed closer than 6 feet (1.8 m) horizontally to the nearest inner edge of a BODY OF WATER.~~

~~4.8.5.1.1.4.1~~ ~~Permanent BARRIER~~

~~Exception (a): A communication cable may be used within 6 feet of the nearest edge of a BODY OF WATER if a permanent floor, wall, ceiling, or roof exists between the BODY OF WATER and any part of the cord that is within 6 feet (1.8 m) of the BODY OF WATER.~~

~~4.8.5.1.1.4.2~~ ~~Enclosed Conduit~~

~~Exception (b): A communication cable may be used within 6 feet (1.8 m) of the nearest edge of a BODY OF WATER where the cable is completely enclosed in rigid conduit, intermediate conduit, or electrical metallic tubing for the entire length that is within 6 feet (1.8 m) horizontally of the nearest inner edge of a BODY OF WATER~~

~~4.8.5.1.2~~ ~~First Aid Equipment~~

~~4.8.5.1.3~~ ~~Signage~~

4.8.5.2 Safety Equipment Required at ~~Aquatic~~ Facilities with Lifeguards

4.8.5.32.1 Lifeguard Chair and Stand Placement

The designer shall coordinate with the owner and/or an aquatic consultant to consider the impact on ~~BATHERPATRON~~ zone surveillance zones for placement of chairs and stands designed to be permanently installed so as to provide an unobstructed view of the ~~BATHERPATRON~~ surveillance zones.

4.8.5.32.2 Lifeguard Chair and Stand Design

The chairs/stands must be designed:

- 1) With no sharp edges or protrusions;
- 2) ~~With To be made of~~ sturdy, durable, and UV resistant materials;
- 3) ~~To provide~~ Provide enough height to elevate the lifeguard to an eye level above the heads of the BATHERS; and
- 4) ~~To provide~~ Provide safe access and egress for the lifeguard.

4.8.5.32.3 UV Protection for Chairs and Stands

~~Where~~ When provided, permanently installed chairs/stands, where QUALIFIED LIFEGUARDS can be exposed to ultraviolet radiation, shall include protection from such ultraviolet radiation exposure.

4.8.6 Barriers and Enclosures

4.8.6.1 General Requirements

4.8.6.1.1 Enclosed Enclosures

All AQUATIC FACILITIES, CHEMICAL STORAGE SPACES, and ~~AQUATIC VENUE~~POOL mechanical spaces shall be enclosed to prevent~~have SECURE PERIMETER ENCLOSURES preventing~~ unauthorized entry.-

4.8.6.1.1.12 Barriers

The ~~ENCLOSURE~~A SECURE PERIMETER may consist of any combination of building envelopes, site walls, or fencing as provided for in this section.-

4.8.6.1.1.23 Patron Accessibility

BARRIERS shall be provided between CHEMICAL STORAGE SPACES, POOL, mechanical spaces, and areas accessible to the public, in accordance with local building CODES.

4.8.6.2 Construction Requirements

4.8.6.2.1 ~~Discourage Climbing~~Local Code

BARRIERS OR ENCLOSURES~~shall be constructed in accordance with the CODE of the AHJ.~~

~~4.8.6.2.2~~ ~~No Enticements~~

~~ENCLOSURES~~ shall discourage climbing by preventing access to~~not allowing~~ nearby structures to simplify climbing over it, such as: light poles, site furnishings, overhanging tree limbs or other obvious footholds or handholds.-

~~4.8.6.2.13~~ ~~Discourage Climbing~~

~~ENCLOSURES shall be constructed in such a way as to discourage climbing.~~

4.8.6.2.3.1 Horizontal Mid-Rails

Horizontal mid-rails shall not be permitted.

4.8.6.2.1.23.3 Mesh Fencing

Chain-link fencing constructed of a maximum opening of 14³/₄ inches (44.4 mm) mesh shall be permitted.

~~4.8.6.2.2~~ ~~4~~

~~Building-Emergency Exit Paths~~

Enclosures for AQUATIC VENUES~~VENUE-ENCLOSURES~~ shall not block or encumber a required emergency egress path from other structures.

4.8.6.2.24.1 Pathways

Where a required emergency egress path enters an area occupied by an outdoor AQUATIC VENUE, emergency exit pathways from the building(s) shall continue on DECK of least equally unencumbered width, and continue to the ENCLOSURE and through gates.-

4.8.6.2.24.2 Exit Pathways

Exit pathways shall be separated with a BARRIER from AQUATIC VENUES not in operation.

~~4.8.6.2.24.3~~ — **Enclosure Requirements**

~~Such separation shall meet the requirements of an ENCLOSURE.~~

4.8.6.2.4.4 Seasonal Separation

Seasonal separation may be employed at seasonally operated AQUATIC VENUES~~POOLS~~, subject to the same physical requirements of permanent barriers~~ENCLOSURES~~.

~~4.8.6.2.4.4.1~~ — **Exception**

~~**Exception:** Unguarded AQUATIC VENUE are not required to provide separated paths of egress, but must maintain unencumbered exit paths to and through the ENCLOSURE.~~

~~4.8.6.2.5~~ — **Upper Level Balconies**

~~Upper level building balconies shall not come to within ten feet horizontally of any POOL edge without a BARRIER of its own that is at least equal in height to that of the required POOL ENCLOSURE.~~

~~4.8.6.2.5.1~~ — **Exception**

~~**Exception:** For spectator areas, refer to MAHC Section 4.6.10 for AQUATIC VENUES further information.~~

~~4.8.6.2.36~~ **Windows**

Windows on a building that forms part of ~~ana POOL~~ ENCLOSURE around an AQUATIC VENUE shall have a maximum opening width not to exceed four~~4~~ inches (10.2 cm).~~:-~~

~~4.8.6.2.36.1~~ **Opened**

If ~~they are~~ designed to be opened, windows~~they~~ shall also be provided with a non-removable screen.-

~~4.8.6.2.47~~ **Height**

For the purposes of this section, height shall be measured from finished grade to the top of the BARRIER on the side outside of the BARRIER surrounding an AQUATIC VENUE, ENCLOSURE.-

~~4.8.6.2.47.1~~ **Change in Grade**

Where a change in grade occurs at a BARRIER, height shall be measured from the uppermost grade to the top of the BARRIER.-

~~4.8.6.2.47.2~~ **Fencing Requirements**

AQUATIC FACILITY ENCLOSURES~~ENCLOSURES~~ shall not be less than six~~6~~ feet (1.883 ~~m~~) in height.—

~~4.8.6.2.47.3~~ **Other Barriers**

~~All Other BARRIERS (Not Serving as Part of an Enclosure~~

~~ENCLOSURES~~): Except where otherwise noted, all other BARRIERS not serving as part of an AQUATIC FACILITY ENCLOSURE shall not be less than 42 inches (1.1 m) in height.-

4.8.6.3 Gates and Doors

4.8.6.3.1 Self-Closing and Latching

All primary public access gates or doors serving as part of an AQUATIC FACILITY ENCLOSURE or required AQUATIC VENUE ENCLOSURE shall be self-closing and self-latching from any open position.

4.8.6.3.1.1 Locked

All gates or doors shall be capable of being locked from the exterior.

4.8.6.3.1.2 Emergency Egress

Gates or doors ~~They~~ shall be designed in such a way that they do not prevent egress in the event of an emergency.-

~~4.8.6.3.1.3 Exception~~

~~Gates or doors used solely for after-hours maintenance shall remain locked at all times not in use by staff.~~

~~4.8.6.3.1.4 Propping Open~~

~~Propping open perimeter ENCLOSURE gates or doors shall be prohibited.-~~

4.8.6.3.2 Gates

Gates shall be at least equal in height at top and bottom to the BARRIER of which they are a component.

4.8.6.3.3 Turnstiles

Turnstiles shall not form a part of an AQUATIC FACILITY~~a POOL~~ ENCLOSURE.-

4.8.6.3.4 Exit Gates

EXIT GATES shall be conspicuously marked on the inside of the AQUATIC VENUE or AQUATIC FACILITY. ~~Doors.~~

4.8.6.3.4.1 Quantity, Location, and Width

Quantity, location, and width(s) for EXIT GATES ~~or doors~~ shall be provided consistent with local building and fire CODES and applicable accessibility guidelines.

4.8.6.3.5 Swing Outward

EXIT ~~DOORS or~~ GATES shall swing away from the AQUATIC VENUE ENCLOSURE except where emergency egress CODES require them to swing into the AQUATIC VENUE ENCLOSURE.-

4.8.6.3.6 Absence of Local Building Codes

Where local building CODES do not otherwise govern, at least one EXIT GATE ~~OR DOOR~~ shall be required for each logical AQUATIC VENUE area including individual POOLS or grade levels or both.—

4.8.6.3.7 Unguarded Pools

For unguarded AQUATIC VENUES, self-latching mechanisms must be located not less than 3 ½ feet (1.1 m) above finished grade.—

4.8.6.3.7.1 Operable by Children

For unguarded AQUATIC VENUES, self-latching mechanisms shall not be operable by small children on the outside of the ~~AQUATIC VENUES~~ ENCLOSURE around the AQUATIC VENUE.

4.8.6.3.8 Other Aquatic Venues

For all other AQUATIC VENUES, EXIT GATES or doors shall be constructed so as to prevent unauthorized entry from outside of the ~~POOL~~ ENCLOSURE around the AQUATIC VENUE.—

4.8.6.4 Indoor Aquatic Venues Pools

4.8.6.4.1 Enclosure

Building walls enclosing an indoor AQUATIC FACILITY may be designated ~~VENUE shall serve~~ as the AQUATIC FACILITY ~~VENUE~~ ENCLOSURE.

4.8.6.4.1.1 ~~Local Building Code~~

~~Local building CODES for construction requirements in indoor applications shall have jurisdiction.~~

4.8.6.4.1.2 ~~Further Information~~

~~For further information regarding indoor CHEMICAL STORAGE rooms and AQUATIC VENUE mechanical rooms, refer to MAHC Section 4.9.—~~

4.8.6.4.2 Securable

Indoor AQUATIC VENUES shall be securable from unauthorized entry from other building areas or ~~as well as~~ the exterior.

4.8.6.4.3 Indoor and Outdoor Aquatic Venues

Where separate indoor and outdoor AQUATIC VENUES are located on the same site, an AQUATIC VENUE ENCLOSURE shall be provided between them.

4.8.6.4.3.1 Year-Round Operation

Exception: Where all AQUATIC VENUES are operated continuously 12 months a year on the same schedule.

4.8.6.4.4 Wall Separating

For a passage through a wall separating the indoor portion of ~~ana~~ AQUATIC VENUE from an outdoor portion of the same AQUATIC VENUE, the overhead clearance of the passage to the AQUATIC VENUE floor shall be at least ~~six~~6 feet ~~eight~~8 inches (2.~~003~~ m) to any solid structure overhead.-

4.8.6.5 Multiple Aquatic Venues

4.8.6.5.1 One Enclosure

Except as otherwise required in this CODE, one ENCLOSURE may surround multiple AQUATIC VENUES at one facility.-

4.8.6.5.2 Wading Pools

WADING POOLS ~~shall~~do not ~~require separation~~~~need to be separated~~ from other WADING POOLS by a BARRIER. ~~Refer to~~Reference MAHC Section 4.12.9 for additional guidance about WADING POOLS.-

4.8.7 Aquatic Venue~~Pool~~ Cleaning Systems

4.8.7.1 No Hazard

The cleaning system provided shall not create an entanglement or suction entrapment hazard or interfere with the operation or use of the AQUATIC VENUE.

4.8.7.2 Common Cleaning Equipment

If there are multiple AQUATIC ~~VENUES~~VENUE at one AQUATIC FACILITY, ~~the~~that AQUATIC FACILITY may use common cleaning equipment.

4.8.7.3 Integral Vacuum Systems

Use of integral vacuum systems, meaning a vacuum system that uses the main circulating pump or a dedicated vacuum pump connect to the pool with PVC piping and terminating at the pool with a flush-mounted vacuum port fitting, shall be prohibited.

4.8.7.4 GFCI Power

Where ~~used,~~PORTABLE VACUUM cleaning equipment ~~is used,~~they shall be powered by circuits having GROUND-FAULT CIRCUIT INTERRUPTERS.

4.8.7.5 Separation of Receptacles

~~Separation between receptacles shall be spaced so that all areas of the AQUATIC VENUE can be cleaned using a PORTABLE VAGUUM without the use of extension cords.~~

4.8.7.6 Low Voltage

Any ROBOTIC CLEANERS shall utilize low voltage for all components that are immersed in the POOL water.

4.8.7.67 GFCI Connection

Any ROBOTIC CLEANER power supply shall be connected to a circuit equipped with a ground fault interrupter, and should not be operated using an extension cord.

~~4.8.7.8 Power Cord~~

~~The power supply power cord length shall be shorter than the distance between the receptacle and the edge of the closest AQUATIC VENUE.~~

4.9 Filter/Equipment Room

4.9.1 Equipment Room

4.9.1.1 General Requirements

4.9.1.1.1 Nonabsorbent Material

The equipment ~~ENCLOSURE,~~ area, or room floor shall be of concrete or other suitable material having a smooth slip resistant finish and shall have positive drainage, including a sump drain pump if necessary.

4.9.1.1.2 Floor Slope

Floors shall have a slope toward the floor drain and/or sump drain pump adequate to prevent standing water at all times.

4.9.1.1.3 Opening

The opening to the EQUIPMENT ROOM or area shall be designed to provide access for all anticipated equipment.

4.9.1.1.4 Hose Bibb

At least one ~~(1)~~ hose bibb with BACKFLOW preventer shall be located in the EQUIPMENT ROOM or:

~~4.9.1.1.4.1 Installed~~

~~Hose bibbs shall be installed in accordance with the International Plumbing Code or accessible within an adequate distance of the EQUIPMENT ROOM so that a hose can service the entire EQUIPMENT ROOM.~~

4.9.1.2 Construction

4.9.1.2.1 Size

The size of the equipment ~~ENCLOSURE,~~ room, or area shall provide working space to perform routine operations and equipment service.

4.9.1.2.1.1 Adequate Storage Space

EQUIPMENT ROOMS also intended for STORAGE ~~use~~ shall have adequate space provided for such STORAGE, without reducing the working spaces.

4.9.1.2.2 Lighting

Equipment ~~ENCLOSURES~~, rooms or areas shall be lighted to provide 30 foot candles (~~323320 lux~~) of illumination at floor level in accordance with ~~IESNA~~ ~~IES~~ guidelines.

4.9.1.3 Electrical

4.9.1.3.1 Conform to NEC

All electrical wiring shall conform to the edition of NEC adopted by the AHJ.

4.9.1.3.2 Conform to NRTL

Equipment, components, and their application and installation shall conform to the ~~National Recognized Testing Laboratories~~ (NRTL) listing.

4.9.1.4 Ventilation

4.9.1.4.1 Code Conformance

EQUIPMENT ROOM ventilation shall address:

- 1) ~~COMBUSTION~~ ~~COMBUSTION~~ requirements,
- 2) ~~Heat~~ ~~heat~~ dissipation from equipment,
- 3) ~~Humidity~~ ~~humidity~~ from surge or balance tanks,
- 4) ~~Ventilation~~ ~~ventilation~~ to the outside, and
- 5) ~~Air~~ ~~air~~ quality.

4.9.1.5 Markings

4.9.1.5.1 Piping Identified

All piping in the EQUIPMENT ROOM shall be permanently identified by its use and the AQUATIC VENUE and AQUATIC FEATURE it serves and use.

4.9.1.5.1.1 Components to Identify ~~Provided~~

Identification shall be provided for:

- 1) ~~Main~~ ~~main~~ drains and SKIMMERS,
- 2) ~~Filtered~~ ~~filtered~~ water,
- 3) ~~Make~~ ~~make~~-up water,
- 4) ~~Backwash~~ ~~backwash~~ water,
- 5) ~~CHLORINE~~ ~~CHLORINE~~ (or disinfection) feeds,
- 6) ~~Acid~~ ~~acid~~ (or pH) feeds,
- 7) ~~Compressed~~ ~~compressed~~ air lines,
- 8) Gutters,
- 8) ~~9) Chemical sample piping~~ ~~gutters~~, and
- 9) ~~10) POOL~~ ~~POOL~~ heating lines.-

4.9.1.5.2 Piping Marked

All piping shall be marked with directional arrows as necessary to determine flow direction.

4.9.1.5.3 Valves Identified

All valves shall be clearly identified by number with a brass tag, plastic laminate tags, or permanently affixed alternate.

4.9.1.5.3.14 Valves Described

Valves shall be described as to their function and referenced in the operating instruction manual

4.9.1.5.3.2 Piping Diagram

~~A water-resistant, easily read, and wall-mounted piping diagram shall be furnished and installed inside the EQUIPMENT ROOM, provided.~~

4.9.1.6 Equipment Rooms Containing Combustion Equipment [N/A]

See Annex Language

4.9.1.7 Separation from Chemical Storage Spaces

4.9.1.7.1 Equipment

4.9.1.7.1.1 Contaminated Air

Combustion equipment, air-handling equipment, and electrical equipment shall not be exposed to air contaminated with CORROSIVE chemical fumes or vapors.

4.9.1.7.1.2 Equipment Restrictions

Spaces containing combustion equipment, air handling equipment, and/or electrical equipment and spaces sharing air distribution with spaces containing such equipment shall not ~~at the same time~~ be used as CHEMICAL STORAGE SPACES at the same time.

4.9.1.7.1.2.1 Listed and Labeled

Exception—1: Equipment listed and labeled for use in that atmosphere shall be acceptable, where approved by the AHJ.—

4.9.1.7.1.3 Isolated

Spaces containing combustion equipment, air-handling equipment, and/or electrical equipment and spaces sharing air distribution with spaces containing such equipment shall be isolated from CHEMICAL STORAGE SPACE air.

4.9.1.7.2 Doors and Openings

4.9.1.7.2.1 Between Equipment and Chemical Storage

A door or doors shall not be installed in a wall between such EQUIPMENT ROOMS and an interior CHEMICAL STORAGE SPACE.

4.9.1.7.2.2 No Openings

There shall be no ducts, grilles, pass-throughs, or other openings connecting such EQUIPMENT ROOMS to CHEMICAL STORAGE SPACES, except as permitted by the fire code~~International Fire Code~~.

4.9.1.7.2.3 Indoor Aquatic Facility~~Natorium~~ Air

Spaces containing combustion equipment, air-handling equipment, and/or electrical equipment and spaces sharing air distribution with spaces containing such equipment shall be isolated from INDOOR AQUATIC FACILITY~~NATORIUM~~ air.

4.9.1.7.2.3.1 Listed Equipment

Exception-1: Equipment listed for the atmosphere shall be acceptable.-

4.9.1.7.2.4 No Openings

There shall be no ducts, grilles, pass-throughs, or other openings connecting such spaces to an INDOOR AQUATIC FACILITY~~a NATATORIUM~~.

4.9.1.7.2.4.1 Air Handlers

Note:~~Ducts which connect the INDOOR AQUATIC FACILITY~~NATORIUM~~ to the duct connections of air handlers shall not be construed as connecting the air-handler space to the INDOOR AQUATIC FACILITY~~NATORIUM~~.~~

4.9.1.7.2.4.2 HVAC Equipment

Exception-1: HVAC equipment which is rated for INDOOR AQUATIC FACILITY~~NATORIUM~~ atmosphere and which serves only that INDOOR AQUATIC FACILITY~~NATORIUM~~ shall be acceptable.

4.9.1.7.2.5 Openings / Gaps

Where building construction leaves any openings or gaps between floors and walls, or between walls and other walls, or between walls and ceilings, such gaps shall be permanently sealed against air leakage.

4.9.1.7.3 Indoor Aquatic Facility~~Natorium~~ Access

4.9.1.7.3.1 Floor Slope

Where a door or doors must be installed in a wall between an EQUIPMENT ROOM and an INDOOR AQUATIC FACILITY~~a NATATORIUM~~, the floor of the EQUIPMENT ROOM shall slope per local building requirements back into the EQUIPMENT ROOM in such a way as to prevent any equipment-room spills from running under the door into the INDOOR AQUATIC FACILITY~~NATORIUM~~.

4.9.1.7.3.1.1 Four Inches

Exception-1: This requirement may be met by a floor all of which is at least 4four inches (10.2 cm) below the level of the nearest part of the INDOOR AQUATIC FACILITY~~NATORIUM~~ floor.

4.9.1.7.3.1.2 Dike

Exception: -2. This requirement may be met by a continuous dike not less than four inches (10.2 cm) high located entirely within the EQUIPMENT ROOM, which will prevent spills from reaching the INDOOR AQUATIC FACILITY NATATORIUM floor.

4.9.1.7.3.1.3 Floor Drains

Note: Equipment-room floor drains may be required by the AHJ.-

4.9.1.7.3.2 Automatic Closer

Such door or doors between an EQUIPMENT ROOM and an INDOOR AQUATIC FACILITY shall be equipped with an automatic closer.

4.9.1.7.3.2.1 Maintained to Close Reliably

The door, frame, and automatic closer shall be installed and maintained so as to ensure that the door closes completely and latches without human assistance.-

4.9.1.7.3.3 Automatic Lock

Such door or doors between an EQUIPMENT ROOM and an INDOOR AQUATIC FACILITY shall be equipped with an automatic lock.-

4.9.1.7.3.3.1 Restrict Access

Such lock shall require a key or combination to open from the INDOOR AQUATIC FACILITY NATATORIUM side.-

4.9.1.7.3.3.2 One Hand

Such lock shall be so designed and installed as to be opened by one hand from the inside of the room under all circumstances, without the use of a key or tool.

4.9.1.7.3.4 Warning Sign

Such doors shall be equipped with permanent signage warning against unauthorized entry.

4.9.1.7.3.5 Gasket

All sides of such doors shall be equipped with a gasket.

4.9.1.7.3.1.5 Prevent Air Passage

The gasket shall be so installed as to prevent the passage of air, fumes, or vapors when the door is closed.-

4.9.1.7.3.6 Not Relief

This section shall not be construed as granting relief from MAHC Section 4.9.1.~~78~~.2.1.

4.9.1.8 Other Equipment Room Guidance**4.9.1.8.1 Access Space**

Where ventilation, air filtration, or space dehumidification, heating, or cooling for an INDOOR AQUATIC FACILITY~~a NATATORIUM~~ is by mechanical equipment located in an EQUIPMENT ROOM, adequate access space shall be provided to allow for inspection and service.

4.9.1.8.1.1 Size Requirements

The access spaces shall be the greater of:

- 1) Those required by OSHA, NEC, National Fuel Gas Code, or other official requirements; or
- 2) The equipment-manufacturers' recommendations.

4.9.1.8.2 Adequate Space

Where ventilation, air filtration, or space heating or cooling for an INDOOR AQUATIC FACILITY~~a NATATORIUM~~ is beside mechanical equipment located in an EQUIPMENT ROOM, adequate space for required straight lengths of duct shall be provided as the greater of those described in AMCA 201, SMACNA Duct Manual, ACCA Manual SPS Sec. 13, or the equipment manufacturer's recommendations.

4.9.1.8.3 Minimize Hazards

Where an EQUIPMENT ROOM contains equipment requiring regular service or maintenance, the room shall be so designed and constructed as to minimize the hazards of such maintenance and service.

4.9.1.8.3.1 Ladder Installed

Where a ladder will be required for service or maintenance of equipment, other permanently installed equipment shall not be so located as to interfere with the use of the ladder.

4.9.1.8.3.2 Alternative Access

Where a ladder cannot be safely or practically used to service equipment where any serviceable component is more than 6.5 feet (~~2.01-98 m~~) above the floor, a mezzanine floor, platform, or other arrangement for safe access shall be provided.

4.9.1.8.3.2.1 Exception

Exception-1: Where otherwise specifically allowed by OSHA.

4.9.1.8.3.2.2 Stricter Requirements

Exception-2: Where OSHA or other applicable CODES or STANDARDS have stricter requirements, those stricter requirements shall prevail.—

4.9.1.8.4 Refrigeration Equipment

Where refrigeration equipment such as an air-conditioner or dehumidifier is located indoors in a building intended for occupation, arrangements for refrigerant relief (*if any*) shall be according to the applicable mechanical CODE~~INTERNATIONAL MECHANICAL CODE~~ or other applicable CODE.

4.9.2 Chemical Storage Spaces

~~Note:~~ Nothing in this section shall be construed as providing relief from applicable requirements of fire CODES, mechanical CODES, electrical CODES, etc.

4.9.2.1 Outdoor / Indoor Storage

4.9.2.1.1- Stored Outdoors

~~If POOL chemicals, acids, fertilizers, salt, de-icing chemicals, oxidizing cleaning materials, or other CORROSIVE or oxidizing chemicals are STORED outdoors, they shall, and pesticides should be stored outdoors in a well-ventilated protective area with an installed BARRIER to prevent unauthorized access as per MAHC 4.9.2.3. ENCLOSURE.~~

4.9.2.1.2 Minimize Vapors

Where such materials must be stored in a building intended for ~~occupancy~~ occupation, the transfer of chemical fumes and vapors from the CHEMICAL STORAGE SPACE to other parts of the building shall be minimized.—

4.9.2.1.3 Dedicated Space

At least one space dedicated to CHEMICAL STORAGE SPACE shall be provided. ~~This space need not be an INTERIOR SPACE.~~

~~4.9.2.1.4 Safe Spaces~~

~~The number of required CHEMICAL STORAGE SPACES shall be as necessary to allow safe STORAGE of the chemicals present.~~

~~4.9.2.1.5 Additional Space~~

~~Where the listing, labeling, or MSDS of chemicals indicates incompatibility of STORAGE with other chemicals present, other CHEMICAL STORAGE SPACE(S) shall be provided.—~~

4.9.2.1.6 Eyewash

In all CHEMICAL STORAGE SPACES ~~rooms~~ in which pool chemicals will be STORED, an emergency eyewash station shall be provided.—

4.9.2.1.46.1 Outside

Eyewash stations may be provided outside of the CHEMICAL STORAGE SPACE as an alternative.—

~~4.9.2.1.4.9.2.1.6.2~~ AHJ Requirements

If more stringent requirements are dictated by the AHJ, then those shall govern and be applicable.

4.9.2.2 Construction

4.9.2.2.1 Foreseeable Hazards

The construction of the CHEMICAL STORAGE SPACE shall take into account the foreseeable hazards.-

4.9.2.2.2 Protected

The construction of the CHEMICAL STORAGE SPACE shall, to the extent practical, protect the STORED materials against tampering, wild fires, unintended exposure to water, etc.

4.9.2.2.3 Floor

The floor or DECK of the CHEMICAL STORAGE SPACE shall be protected against substantial chemical damage.

4.9.2.2.4 Minimize Fumes

The construction and operation of a CHEMICAL STORAGE SPACE shall minimize the transfer of chemical fumes into any INTERIOR SPACE of a building intended for occupation.

4.9.2.2.5 Surfaces

Any walls, floors, doors, ceilings, and other building surfaces of an interior CHEMICAL STORAGE SPACE shall join each other tightly.

4.9.2.2.6 No Openings

There shall be no permanent or semi-permanent opening between a CHEMICAL STORAGE SPACE and any other INTERIOR SPACE of a building intended for occupation.

4.9.2.3 Exterior Chemical Storage Spaces

4.9.2.3.1 Outdoor Equipment

Equipment listed for outdoor use may be located in an exterior CHEMICAL STORAGE ~~SPACES~~AREA as permitted.

4.9.2.3.2 Fencing

~~Exterior~~~~Outdoor~~ CHEMICAL STORAGE SPACES not joined to a wall of a building shall be completely enclosed by fencing that is at least ~~six~~6 feet (~~1.883~~ m) high and meets the non-climbability requirements of MAHC Section 4.8.~~65.2.13~~.

4.9.2.3.3 Gate

Fencing shall be equipped with a self-closing and self-latching gate having a permanent locking device.

4.9.2.4— Chemical Storage Space Doors

4.9.2.4.1 Signage

All doors opening into CHEMICAL STORAGE SPACES shall be equipped with permanent signage:

- 1) Warning against unauthorized entry, and

- 2) Specifying the expected hazards, and
- 3) Specifying the location of the associated SDSMSDS forms, and-
- 4) Product chemical hazard NFPA chart.

4.9.2.4.2 Emergency Egress

Where a single door is the only means of egress from a CHEMICAL STORAGE SPACE, the door shall be equipped with an emergency-egress device.

4.9.2.4.3 Interior Door

Where a CHEMICAL STORAGE SPACE door must open to an INTERIOR SPACE, spill containment shall be provided to prevent spilled chemicals from leaving the CHEMICAL STORAGE SPACE.

4.9.2.4.4 Equipment Space

Where a CHEMICAL STORAGE SPACE door must open to an INTERIOR SPACE, the door shall not open to a space containing combustion equipment, air-handling equipment, or electrical equipment.-

4.9.2.4.4.1 Corrosive

Such door shall be acceptable where all equipment thus exposed is listed for the CORROSIVE atmosphere.-

4.9.2.4.5 Interior Opening

Where a CHEMICAL STORAGE SPACE door must open to an INTERIOR SPACE, such door shall have all of the following requirements outlined from MAHC Sections 4.9.2.4.5.1 to 4.9.2.4.5.7.2.

4.9.2.4.5.1 Corrosion-Resistant

Such doors shall be constructed of corrosion-resistant materials.-

4.9.2.4.5.2 Automatic Lock

Such doors shall be equipped with a corrosion-resistant, automatic lock to prevent unauthorized entry.-

4.9.2.4.5.2.1 Key or Combination

Such lock shall require a key or combination to open from the outside into the chemical storage space.-

4.9.2.4.5.2.2 Opened

Such lock shall be so designed and installed as to be capable of being opened by one hand from the inside of the CHEMICAL STORAGE SPACE without the use of a key or tool.-

4.9.2.4.5.3 Supported

Such doors shall be supported on corrosion-resistant hinges, tracks, or other supports.-

4.9.2.4.5.4 Air Leakage

Such doors shall be equipped with suitable gaskets or seals on the top and all sides to minimize air leakage between the door and the door frame.-

4.9.2.4.5.5 Floor

Such doors shall be equipped with a floor or threshold seal to minimize air leakage between the door and the floor or threshold.-

4.9.2.4.5.6 Automatic Closer

Such doors shall be equipped with an automatic door closer that will completely close the door and latch without human assistance.-

4.9.2.4.5.6.1 Air Pressure

The door closer shall be able to close the door completely against the specified difference in air pressure.

4.9.2.4.5.7 Limit Switch

Such doors shall be equipped with a limit switch and an alarm that will sound if the door remains open for more than ~~thirty (30)~~ minutes.

4.9.2.4.5.7.1 -Alarm

This alarm shall have a minimum output level of 85 dbA at ~~ten (10)~~ feet (3.0 m).-

4.9.2.4.5.7.2 Loss of Air Pressure

Where an open door will result in loss of air-pressure difference, this requirement can be met by the audible alarm required under MAHC Section 4.9.2.5.2.4.-

4.9.2.5 Interior Chemical Storage Spaces**4.9.2.5.1 No Air Movement**

There shall be no transfer grille, pass-through grille, louver, or other device or opening that will allow air movement from the CHEMICAL STORAGE SPACE into any other INTERIOR SPACE of a building intended for ~~occupancy~~occupation or into another CHEMICAL STORAGE SPACE.

4.9.2.5.2 Electrical Conduit System

Interior CHEMICAL STORAGE SPACES that share any building surface (*wall, floor, ceiling, door, etc.*) with any other INTERIOR SPACE shall be equipped with a ventilation system that operates continuously and insures that all air movement is from all other INTERIOR SPACES and toward the CHEMICAL STORAGE SPACE.

4.9.2.5.2.1 Additional Interior Space

Interior CHEMICAL STORAGE SPACES that share an electrical conduit system with any other INTERIOR SPACE shall be equipped with a ventilation system that operates continuously and insures that all air movement is from all other INTERIOR SPACES and toward the CHEMICAL STORAGE SPACE.

4.9.2.5.2.2 Pressure Difference

This pressure difference shall be maintained by a continuously operated exhaust system used for no other purpose than to remove air from that one CHEMICAL STORAGE SPACE.

4.9.2.5.2.3 Separate Exhaust System

Where more than one CHEMICAL STORAGE SPACE is present, a separate exhaust system shall be provided for each CHEMICAL STORAGE SPACE.

4.9.2.5.2.3.1 Airflow Rate

The exhaust airflow rate shall be the greater of:

the:

- 1) OSHA requirements for working in such enclosed spaces, or—
- 2) ~~Amount~~the amount needed to maintain the concentration of vapors or fumes below the PEL for the expected exposure time (*defined by 29 CFR 1910.1000 (OSHA)*) for each stored chemical, or
- 3) ~~Amount~~the amount specified by International Mechanical Code ~~Sec. 502~~, or
- 4) ~~Amount~~the amount specified by the Uniform Mechanical Code ~~Sec. 403.7~~, or
- 5) ~~Amount~~the amount needed to maintain the specified pressure difference.

4.9.2.5.2.4 Alarm

~~The function~~Function of this exhaust system shall be monitored continuously by an audible differential-pressure alarm system which shall sound if the specified differential air pressure is not maintained for a period of thirty minutes.

4.9.2.5.2.4.1 Minimum Output

This alarm shall have a minimum output level of 85 dbA at ~~ten~~10 feet (~~3.0~~ m).

4.9.2.5.2.4.2 Manual Reset

The specified alarm shall require manual reset to silence it.

4.9.2.6 Air Ducts in Interior Chemical Storage Spaces

4.9.2.6.1 No Air Movement

No duct shall allow air movement from the CHEMICAL STORAGE SPACE into any other INTERIOR SPACE of a building intended for occupation or into any other CHEMICAL STORAGE SPACE.

4.9.2.6.2 Chemical Storage

Air ducts shall not enter or pass through an interior CHEMICAL STORAGE SPACE.

4.9.2.6.2.1 Corrosion-Resistant

Exception-1: A corrosion-resistant duct used for no other purpose than to exhaust air from the CHEMICAL STORAGE SPACE shall be acceptable.

4.9.2.6.2.1.1 Building Exterior

This corrosion-resistant duct must exhaust to the exterior and must end-by ending at a point on the exterior of the building, at least 20 feet (6.1 m) from any air intake for breathing air, cooling air, or combustion air. ~~and~~

4.9.2.6.2.2- Makeup Air

Exception-2: A duct used for no other purpose than to supply makeup air to the CHEMICAL STORAGE SPACE shall be acceptable.

4.9.2.6.2.2.1 Building Exterior

This makeup air supply duct must end at a point on the exterior of the building, at least 20 feet (6.1 m) from any air intake for breathing air, cooling air, or combustion air.

4.9.2.6.2.3 Other Ducts

Exception-3: Any other ducts specifically allowable by applicable building and mechanical CODES where such ducts are corrosion-resistant and joint-free to the extent feasible shall be acceptable.

4.9.2.7 Pipes and Tubes in Interior Chemical Storage Spaces

4.9.2.7.1 Not Enter

Pipes and tubes shall not enter or pass through an interior CHEMICAL STORAGE SPACE.

4.9.2.7.1.1 Service

Exception-4: As required to service devices integral to the function of the CHEMICAL STORAGE SPACE, such as pumps, vessels, controls, freeze protection, and SAFETY devices.-

4.9.2.7.1.2 Automatic Fire Suppression

Exception-2: As required to allow for automatic fire suppression where required.-

4.9.2.7.1.3 Drainage

Exception-3: As required for drainage.-

4.9.2.7.2 Devices

Piping, tubes, drain bodies, grates, and attachment and restraint devices shall be corrosion-resistant and rated for the chemical environment(s) present including floor drain bodies and grates.

4.9.2.7.3 Wall Penetrations

All wall penetrations shall be sealed air-tight and shall be commensurate with the rating of the wall assembly.

4.9.2.7.3.1 Sealing Materials

Sealing material(s) shall be compatible with the wall assembly and the chemical environment(s) present.-

4.9.2.8 Combustion Equipment in Interior Chemical Storage Spaces

4.9.2.8.1 Installed

No COMBUSTION DEVICE or appliance shall be installed in a CHEMICAL STORAGE SPACE, or in any other place where it will be exposed to the air from a CHEMICAL STORAGE SPACE.

4.9.2.8.1.1 Exception

Exception-1: A COMBUSTION DEVICE or appliance which meets all of the following requirements shall be acceptable:

- 1) The device or appliance is required for one or more processes integral to the function of the room, such as space heat; ~~and-~~
- 2) The device is listed for such use; ~~and-~~
- 3) The device as installed is acceptable to the AHJ.

4.9.2.9 Electrical Equipment in Chemical Storage Spaces

4.9.2.9.1 ~~Comply~~

Electrical equipment and wiring methods used for or in CHEMICAL STORAGE SPACES shall comply with MAHC Section 4.9.2.

4.9.2.10 Ozone Rooms

4.9.2.10.1 Only Ozone Equipment

An ozone EQUIPMENT ROOM shall not be used for STORAGE of chemicals, solvents, or any combustible materials, other than those required for the operation of the ~~recirculation~~~~re-circulation~~ and ozone generating equipment.

4.9.2.10.2 Emergency Ventilation

Rooms which are designed to include ozone equipment shall be equipped with an emergency ventilation system capable of ~~six~~6 air changes per hour.-

4.9.2.10.2.1 Exhaust Intake

The exhaust intake shall be located approximately ~~6~~six inches (15.2 cm) from the floor, on the opposite side of the room from the make-up air intake.

4.9.2.10.2.2 On Command

The emergency ventilation system shall be so arranged as to run on command of an ozone-leak alarm or on command of a manual switch.-

4.9.2.10.2.3 Manual Switch

The manual emergency ventilation switch shall be located outside the room and near the door to the ozone room.

4.9.2.10.3 Below Grade

Ozone rooms which are below grade shall be equipped with forced-draft ventilation capable of ~~six~~6 air changes per hour.

4.9.2.10.3.1 Exhaust Intake

The exhaust intake shall be located approximately ~~six~~ inches (15.2 cm) from the floor, on the opposite side of the room from the make-up air intake.—

4.9.2.10.3.2 Arranged

Such ventilation system shall be so arranged as to:

- 1) Run automatically concurrent with the ozone equipment and for at least a time allowing for 15 air changes after the ozone equipment is stopped,
- 2) Run upon activation of the ozone detection and alarm system, and
- 3) Run on command of a manual switch.

4.9.2.10.3.3 Manual Ventilation Switch

The manual ventilation switch shall be located outside the room and near the door to the ozone room.

4.9.2.10.4 Signage

In addition to the signs required on all chemical storage areas, a sign shall be posted on the exterior of the entry door, stating “DANGER - GASEOUS OXIDIZER – OZONE” in lettering not less than ~~four~~4 inches (10.2 cm) high.

4.9.2.10.5 Alarm System

Rooms containing ozone generation equipment shall be equipped with an audible and visible ozone detection and alarm system.

4.9.2.10.5.1 Requirements

The alarm system shall consist of both an audible alarm capable of producing at least 85 decibels at ten feet distance (3.0 m), and a visible alarm consisting of a flashing light mounted in plain view of the entrance to the ozone-EQUIPMENT ROOM.—

4.9.2.10.5.2 Sensor

The ozone sensor shall be located at a height of 18-24 inches (45.7-61.0 cm) above floor level and shall be capable of measuring ozone in the range of 0-2 ~~parts per million~~ (ppm).—

4.9.2.10.5.3 Ozone Concentration

The alarm system shall alarm when the ozone concentration equals or exceeds 0.1 ppm~~1ppm~~ in the room.

4.9.2.10.5.4 Activation

Activation of the alarm system shall shut off the ozone generating equipment and turn on the emergency ventilation system.

4.9.2.11 Gaseous Chlorination Space

As per MAHC Section 4.7.3.2.4.1, use of compressed CHLORINE gas shall be prohibited for new construction and after SUBSTANTIAL ALTERATION to existing AQUATIC FACILITIES.

4.9.2.11.1 Existing Facilities

MAHC Section 4.9.2.11 shall apply to existing facilities using compressed chlorine gas.

4.9.2.11.2 Adequate Size

A gaseous-chlorination space shall be large enough to house the chlorinator, CHLORINE STORAGE tanks, and associated equipment as required.

4.9.2.11.32 Secure Tanks

A gaseous-chlorination space shall be equipped with facilities for securing tanks.

4.9.2.11.43 Not Below Grade

A gaseous-chlorination space shall not be located in a basement or otherwise be below grade.

4.9.2.11.54 Compressed-Chlorine Gas

Where installed indoors, compressed-CHLORINE gas storage containers and associated chlorinating equipment shall be in a separate room constructed to have a fire rating of not less than 1-hour.

4.9.2.11.65 Entry Door

The entry door to an indoor gaseous-CHLORINE space shall open to the exterior of the building or structure.—

4.9.2.11.65.1 Pool or Deck

The entry door to an indoor gaseous-CHLORINE space shall not open directly towards a POOL OR DECK.—

4.9.2.11.76 Inspection Window

An indoor gaseous-CHLORINE space shall be provided with a shatterproof gas-tight inspection window.

4.9.2.11.87 Ventilation

Indoor gaseous-chlorination spaces shall be provided with a spark-proof ventilation system capable of 60 air changes per hour.

4.9.2.11.87.1 Exhaust-Airair Intake

The exhaust-air intake of the ventilation system shall be taken at a point within ~~6~~six inches (15.2 cm) of the floor, and on the opposite side of the room from the makeup-air intake.

4.9.2.11.87.2 Discharge Point

The exhaust-air discharge point shall be:

- 1) Outdoors, and
- 2) Above adjoining grade level, and
- 3) At least ~~20~~ten feet (6.1 m) from any operable window, and
- 4) At least ~~20~~ten feet (6.1 m) from any adjacent building.-

4.9.2.11.87.3 Make-Up Intake

The make-up air intake shall be within ~~6~~six inches (15.2 cm) of the ceiling of the space and shall open directly to the outdoors.

4.9.2.11.87.4 PPE Available

Personal protective equipment, consisting of at least a gas mask approved by NIOSH for use with CHLORINE atmospheres, shall be stored directly outside one entrance to an indoor gaseous-chlorination space.

4.9.2.11.87.5 SCBA Systems

A minimum of ~~two (2)~~ SCBA systems shall be on hand at all times and two ~~(2)~~ QUALIFIED OPERATORS are to be involved in the changing of the tanks.-

4.9.2.11.87.6 Stationed Outside

One of the QUALIFIED OPERATORS should be stationed outside of the chemical room where the QUALIFIED OPERATOR inside can be seen at all times.

4.9.2.11.87.7 Emergency Telephone

An emergency direct line telephone shall be located by the door.

4.9.2.12 Windows in Chemical Storage Spaces

4.9.2.12.1 Not Required

Windows in CHEMICAL STORAGE SPACES ~~shall~~are not be required by this CODE.

4.9.2.12.2 Requirements

Where a window is to be installed in an interior wall, ceiling, or door of a CHEMICAL STORAGE SPACE, such window shall have the following components:

- 1) ~~Tempered~~tempered or plasticized glass,
- 2) ~~A~~a corrosion-resistant frame, and
- 3) ~~Incapable~~shall not be operable or capable of being opened or operated.

4.9.2.12.3 Exterior Window

Any CHEMICAL STORAGE SPACE window in an exterior wall or ceiling shall:

- 1) Be mounted in a corrosion-resistant frame, and
- 2) Be so protected by a roof, eave, or permanent awning as to minimize the entry of rain or snow in the event of window breakage.

4.9.2.13 Sealing and Blocking Materials

4.9.2.13.1 Minimize Leakage

Materials used for sealing and blocking openings in an interior CHEMICAL STORAGE SPACE shall minimize the leakage of air, vapors, or fumes from the CHEMICAL STORAGE SPACE.

4.9.2.13.2 Compatible

Materials used for sealing and blocking openings in an interior CHEMICAL STORAGE SPACE shall be compatible for use in the environment.

4.9.2.13.3 Fire Rating

Materials used for sealing and blocking openings in an interior CHEMICAL STORAGE SPACE shall be commensurate with the fire rating of the assembly in which they are installed.

4.10 Hygiene Facilities

4.10.1 General

4.10.1.1 Required at Adoption

All design provisions shall be required for new construction or SUBSTANTIAL ALTERATION to an existing AQUATIC FACILITY, except the following MAHC sections which shall be required for all AQUATIC FACILITIES at time of adoption or within one year of adoption as stated:

- 1) MAHC Section 4.10.4.5: DIAPER-CHANGING STATIONS,
- 2) MAHC Section 4.10.4.6.5: Soap Dispensers, and
- 3) MAHC Section 4.10.4.6.9: Trash Can

4.10.1.2 Minimum to Provide Hygiene Facilities

AQUATIC FACILITIES shall provide HYGIENE FACILITIES that include, at a minimum, toilets, urinals, showers, DIAPER-CHANGING STATIONS, and other HYGIENE FIXTURES, as specified herein.

4.10.1.3 Construction Code

HYGIENE FACILITIES shall be constructed in accordance with applicable state and local CODES or as modified herein.

4.10.1.4 Minimum Toilets, Urinals, and Other Fixtures~~State & Local Code~~

The minimum number of toilets, urinals, and other HYGIENE FIXTURES provided, excluding showers, shall be the greater of the following two options:

- 1) In accordance with applicable state and local CODES, or
- 2) Based upon maximum THEORETICAL PEAK OCCUPANCY~~OCCUPANT LOAD~~ of each AQUATIC VENUE.

4.10.1.5 Theoretical Peak Occupancy~~Bather Load~~

THEORETICAL PEAK OCCUPANCY~~BATHER LOAD~~ shall be based on square footage of surface water or, if no standing water is present, the surface area of an AQUATIC VENUE.

~~4.10.1.5.1~~ Square Footage

~~BATHER LOAD~~ for all AQUATIC VENUES shall be calculated as defined in MAHC Section ~~4.16.2.3.5.3.4.7~~.

4.10.2 Location

4.10.2.1 Distance

Except as required in MAHC Section 4.10.2.2, a drinking fountain, toilet, HAND WASH STATION, and DIAPER-CHANGING STATION shall be located no greater than 300 feet (91 m) walking distance from each AQUATIC VENUE.

4.10.2.2 Diaper-Aged Children Less than Five Years of Age

An AQUATIC ~~VENUE~~VENUES designed primarily for use by ~~DIAPER-AGED~~ children less than five years of age shall have a drinking fountain, toilet, HAND WASH STATION, and DIAPER-CHANGING STATION located no greater than 200 feet (~~61 m~~64m) walking distance and in clear view from the nearest entry/exit of the AQUATIC VENUE.

4.10.3 Design and Construction

4.10.3.1 Floors

The floors of HYGIENE FACILITIES and dressing areas serving AQUATIC FACILITIES shall have a smooth, ~~hard~~, easy-to-clean, impervious-to-water, slip-resistant surface.

4.10.3.2 Floor Base

A hard, smooth, impervious-to-water, easy-to-clean base shall provide a sealed, covered juncture between the wall and floor and extend upward on the wall at least ~~six~~six inches (~~15.2~~15.2 cm).

4.10.3.3 Floor Drains

Floor drains shall be installed in HYGIENE FACILITIES and dressing areas where PLUMBING FIXTURES are located.

4.10.3.3.1 Opening Grill Covers

Floor drain opening grill covers shall be ½-inch (~~1.3 cm~~^{1cm}) or less in width or diameter.

4.10.3.3.2 Sloped to Drain

Floors shall be sloped to drain water or other liquids.

4.10.3.3.2.1 Accessible Routes³ ADAAG

Where DECK areas serve as ACCESSIBLE ROUTES or portions thereof, slopes in any direction shall not exceed ADA Standards~~ADAAG—Guidelines~~ and MAHC Section~~Sections~~ 4.8.1.3.1.

4.10.3.4 Partitions and Enclosures

Partitions and enclosures adjacent to HYGIENE FACILITIES shall have a smooth, easy-to-clean, impervious surface.

4.10.3.5 Hose Bibb

At least one hose bibb or other potable water source capable of connecting a hose shall be located in each HYGIENE FACILITY to facilitate cleaning.

4.10.4 Plumbing Fixture Requirements

4.10.4.1 General

4.10.4.1.1 Protected

PLUMBING FIXTURES shall be installed and operated in a manner to adequately protect the potable water supply from back siphonage or BACKFLOW in accordance with local, state or federal regulation.”

4.10.4.1.2 Easily Cleaned

PLUMBING FIXTURES shall be designed so that they may be readily and frequently cleaned, SANITIZED, and disinfected.

4.10.4.1.3 Toilet Counts

Total toilet or urinal counts shall be in accordance with applicable state and local CODES or as modified herein.

4.10.4.1.4 Hand Wash Sink

Hand wash sink counts shall be in accordance with applicable state and local CODES~~CODES~~ or as modified herein.

4.10.4.2 Cleansing Showers

4.10.4.2.1 Count

~~The minimum number of Total male and female~~ CLEANSING SHOWERS ~~SHOWER count~~ shall be one per sex for AQUATIC FACILITIES less than 4000 square feet (372 m²) in collective ~~the greater of the following two options:~~

~~1) In accordance with applicable state and local CODES, or~~

~~Based on the BATHER LOAD of the~~ AQUATIC VENUE surface area. -

4.10.4.2.1.1 Additional Cleansing Showers~~2~~Minimum

~~An additional~~ Minimum total CLEANSING SHOWER count shall be equal to 1 CLEANSING SHOWER per sex shall be added ~~40 BATHERS~~ for each additional 4000 square feet (372 m²) of every AQUATIC VENUE space or portion thereof. ~~FACILITY.~~

4.10.4.2.23 Distributed

CLEANSING SHOWERS shall be evenly distributed between sexes, as applicable.

4.10.4.2.34 ~~Minimum~~

~~AQUATIC FACILITIES shall have a minimum of 1 CLEANSING SHOWER per sex.~~

4.10.4.2.5 Location

CLEANSING SHOWERS shall be located in a HYGIENE FACILITY near the entrance and within clear view of the AQUATIC VENUE.

4.10.4.2.46 Enclosed

Entryways to private or group CLEANSING SHOWER areas shall be enclosed by a door or curtain.

4.10.4.2.46.1 Doors

Shower doors shall be of a smooth, hard, easy-to-clean material.

4.10.4.2.46.2 Curtains

Shower curtains shall be of a smooth, easy-to-clean material.

4.10.4.2.57 Soap Dispenser

CLEANSING SHOWERS shall be supplied with soap and a soap dispenser adjacent to the shower.

4.10.4.2.68 Exemption

~~AQUATIC~~ AQUATIC VENUES located in lodging and residential settings shall be exempt from MAHC Section 4.10.4.2.

4.10.4.3 Rinse Showers

4.10.4.3.1 Minimum and Location

A minimum of one¹ RINSE SHOWER shall be provided on the DECK near an entry point to the AQUATIC VENUE.

4.10.4.3.2 Temperature

Water used for RINSE SHOWERS may be at ambient temperature.

4.10.4.3.3 Floor Sloped

Floors of RINSE SHOWERS shall be sloped to drain wastewater away from the AQUATIC VENUE and meet local applicable CODES.

4.10.4.3.4 Large Aquatic Facilities

RINSE SHOWERS in AQUATIC FACILITIES greater than 7500 square feet (697 m²) of water surface area shall be situated adjacent to each AQUATIC VENUE entry point or arranged to encourage BATHERS to use the RINSE SHOWER prior to entering the AQUATIC VENUE.

4.10.4.3.5 Beach Entry

A minimum of four⁴ showerheads per 50 feet (15.2 m) of beach entry AQUATIC VENUES shall be provided as a RINSE SHOWER.

4.10.4.3.6 Lazy River

A minimum of one² RINSE ~~SHOWERS~~ shall be provided at each entrance to a LAZY RIVER AQUATIC VENUE.

4.10.4.3.7 Waterslide

A minimum of one⁴ RINSE SHOWER shall be provided at each entrance to a waterslide queue line.

4.10.4.4 All Showers

4.10.4.4.1—Exceptions

AQUATIC FACILITIES with 7500 square feet (697 m²) of water area or more may be flexible in the number of CLEANSING SHOWERS they provide based on the THEORETICAL PEAK OCCUPANCY IN MAHC Section 4.1.2.3.5~~their BATHER LOAD~~:

- 1) 25% of the required showers shall be CLEANSING SHOWERS,
- 2) 25% of the required showers shall be RINSE SHOWERS, and
- 3) the remaining 50% may be either cleansing or RINSE SHOWERS.

4.10.4.5 Diaper-Changing Stations

4.10.4.5.1 Each Facility

All AQUATIC FACILITIES allowing use by DIAPER-AGED BATHERS shall, upon adoption of this CODE, have at least one DIAPER-CHANGING STATION in each male and female HYGIENE FACILITY or make available a unisex DIAPER-CHANGING STATION.

4.10.4.5.1.1 Hand Wash ~~2~~—Sink

The adjacent hand wash sink shall be installed and operational within one year from the date of the AHJ's adoption of the MAHC.

4.10.4.5.1.23 Portable

If a hand wash sink is not available adjacent to the DIAPER-CHANGING STATION, a portable HAND-WASH STATION shall be available adjacent to the station at all times.

4.10.4.5.24 Conform

DIAPER-CHANGING UNITS shall conform to either of the following STANDARDS:

- 1) ASTM standard F2285-04: “Consumer Performance Standards for Commercial Diaper-~~Changing Stations~~,~~changing stations,~~” or
- 2) The STANDARDS for diaper-changing surfaces in the most current version of *Caring for Our Children: National Health and Safety Performance Standards: Guidelines for Out-of-Home Child Care Programs*.

4.10.4.5.35 Unisex

If only a unisex HYGIENE FACILITY is provided, it must have a DIAPER-CHANGING STATION that conforms to MAHC Section 4.10.4.5.

4.10.4.5.46 Trash Can

A covered, hands-free, plastic-lined trash receptacle or diaper pail shall be located directly adjacent to the DIAPER-CHANGING UNIT.

4.10.4.5.5 ~~Disinfecting~~ Sanitizing Surface

An EPA-registered ~~DISINFECTANTSANITIZER~~ shall be provided for maintaining a clean and ~~disinfected~~~~SANITIZED~~ DIAPER-CHANGING UNIT surface before and after each use.

4.10.4.6 Non-Plumbing Fixture Requirements

4.10.4.6.1 Easy to Clean

All HYGIENE FIXTURES and appurtenances in the dressing area shall have a smooth, hard, easy-to-clean, impervious-to-water surface and be installed to permit thorough cleaning.

4.10.4.6.2 Glass

Glass, excluding mirrors ~~installed in the HYGIENE FACILITY~~, shall not be permitted in HYGIENE FACILITIES.

4.10.4.6.3 Mirrors

Mirrors shall be shatter resistant.

4.10.4.6.4 Lockers

If lockers are provided, they shall be ~~installed set either on a solid base~~ at least 3.56 inches (8.9 cm) ~~above the finished floor~~ 15cm high or on legs or a base at least 3.56

inches (8.9 cm) high and far enough apart to allow for cleaning and drying underneath the locker.

4.10.4.6.5 Soap Dispensers

Soap dispensers shall be securely attached adjacent to hand washing sinks and at each CLEANSING SHOWER.

4.10.4.6.5.1 Dispenser Materials

The dispensers shall be of all metal, plastic, or other shatterproof materials that can be readily and frequently cleaned.

4.10.4.6.6 Dryers / Paper Towels

Hand dryers or paper towel dispensers shall be provided and securely attached adjacent to hand washing sinks.

4.10.4.6.6.1 Materials

Hand dryers and paper towel dispensers shall be of all metal, plastic or other shatterproof materials that can be readily and frequently cleaned.

4.10.4.6.7 Toilet Paper Dispensers

Toilet paper dispensers shall be securely attached to wall or partition adjacent to each toilet.

4.10.4.6.8 Female Facilities

In female HYGIENE FACILITIES, covered receptacles adjacent to each toilet shall be provided for disposal of used feminine hygiene products.

4.10.4.6.9 Trash Can

A minimum of one hands-free trash receptacle shall be provided in areas adjacent to hand washing sinks.

4.10.5 Provision of Suits, Towels, and Shared Equipment

4.10.5.1 Adequate Space

AQUATIC FACILITIES supplying reusable suits, towels, and/or shared equipment shall provide adequate equipment and space for cleaning, sanitizing, drying, and storing of these materials.

4.10.6 Foot Baths

4.10.6.1 Prohibited

FOOT BATHS shall be prohibited.

4.10.7 Sharps

4.10.7.1 Container

If razors or other sharps are supplied by the AQUATIC FACILITY, a sharps container approved by local, state or federal regulations shall be provided within the ~~HYGIENE~~ FACILITY.

4.11 Water Supply/ Wastewater Disposal

4.11.1 Water Supply

4.11.1.1- Public Water System

Water serving an AQUATIC FACILITY shall be supplied from a potable water source.

4.11.1.1.1 Other Sources

Other water sources such as lakes or springs may be approved to serve an AQUATIC FACILITY by the AHJ.

4.11.1.1.2 Condensate/ Reclaimed Water

Use of condensate water, collected rain water, or other reclaimed water for water serving an AQUATIC VENUE is prohibited.

4.11.1.1.2.1 Condensate Use

Condensate water may be used for irrigation or other non-potable uses.

4.11.1.1.2.2 Exceptions~~3 Exception~~

Exceptions to MAHC Section 4.11.1.1.2 may be made by the AHJ with evidence that such water has met all EPA potable water quality STANDARDS.

4.11.1.2 Sufficient Capacity

The water supply shall have sufficient capacity to simultaneously serve all PLUMBING FIXTURES.

4.11.1.2.1 Refill Pool

The water supply shall have sufficient capacity and pressure to refill the AQUATIC VENUE to the operating water level after backwashing filters and after any splashing or evaporative losses within one hour if the AQUATIC VENUE is operational at the time of the backwash.

4.11.2 Fill Spout

4.11.2.1 Hazard

If a fill spout is used at an AQUATIC VENUE, the fill spout shall be located so that it is not a SAFETY hazard to BATHERS.

4.11.2.2 Shielded

A fill spout should be ~~located~~**shielded** so the possibility of it becoming a trip hazard is minimized.

4.11.2.3 Open End

The open end of fill spouts shall not have sharp edges or protrude more than ~~two~~**two** inches (~~50.8~~**mm**) beyond the edge of the POOL.

4.11.2.4 Air Gap

The open end shall be separated from the water by an air gap of at least 1.5 pipe diameters measured from the pipe outlet to the POOL.

4.11.3 Cross-Connection Control

4.11.3.1 Protected

The potable water supply serving an AQUATIC VENUE~~—~~ shall be protected against BACKFLOW consisting of either of the following:

- 1) An acceptable air gap consisting of a vertical distance of not less than ~~two~~**two** pipe diameters of the water supply pipe or ~~six~~**six** inches (~~15.2 cm~~**150 mm**), whichever is greater, over the lowest free-flowing discharge point of the receiving pipe, tank, or vessel. Splash guards that are open to the atmosphere may be used around the air gap, or
- 2) Where permitted, an approved reduced pressure zone (RPZ) BACKFLOW preventer installed according to the plumbing CODE and the AHJ.~~—~~

4.11.4 Deck Drains and Rinse Showers

4.11.4.1 Sloped ~~Walkway~~

The walkway or DECK around an AQUATIC VENUE shall be properly sloped to DECK drains or to the edge of the DECK to prevent the accumulation of standing water.~~—~~

4.11.4.2 Discharge

If DECK drains are provided, the drains shall discharge to the sanitary or storm sewer or as otherwise allowed by the ~~AHJ agency having jurisdiction~~ and according to applicable plumbing CODES.

4.11.4.3 Area or Linear

DECK drains may be either area drains or linear drains. ~~Refer to~~**See** MAHC Section 4.8.1.3 for DECK drain area, and other requirements.~~—~~

4.11.4.4 Rinse Showers

RINSE SHOWER drains shall discharge to the sanitary or storm sewer as allowed by the ~~AHJ agency having jurisdiction~~ and according to applicable plumbing CODES.~~—~~

4.11.5 Sanitary Wastes

4.11.5.1 Discharged

Wastewater from all PLUMBING FIXTURES in the entire AQUATIC FACILITY shall be discharged to a municipal sanitary sewer system, if available.

4.11.5.2 On-Site Sewer System

If a municipal sanitary sewer system is not available, all wastewater shall be disposed to an on-site sewer system that is properly designed to receive the entire wastewater capacity.-

4.11.6 Pool Wastewater

4.11.6.1 Discharged

Wastewater from an AQUATIC VENUE, including filter backwash water, shall be discharged to a sanitary sewer system having sufficient capacity to collect and treat wastewater or to an on-site sewage disposal system designed for this purpose.

4.11.6.1.1 Storm Water Systems and Surface Waters

Wastewater shall not be directed to storm water systems or surface waters without appropriate permits from the AHJ or the U.S. EPA.

4.11.6.1.2 Recovery and Reuse

A water recovery and reuse system may be submitted to the AHJ for review and approval.

4.11.6.2 Ground Surface

If a municipal sanitary sewer system is not available, wastewater from an AQUATIC VENUE may be discharged to the ground surface at a suitable location as approved by the AHJ, as long as the wastewater does not cause erosion, and does not create a threat to public health or SAFETY, a nuisance, or unlawful pollution of public waters.

4.11.6.3 Capacity

The wastewater disposal system shall have sufficient capacity to receive wastewater without flooding when filters are cleaned or when the AQUATIC VENUE is drained.

4.11.6.4 Separation Tank for Precoat Media Filters

A separation tank shall be provided prior to discharge for backwash water from precoat filters using diatomaceous earth (DE) as a filter medium.

4.11.6.4.1 Discharged

For precoat filters using perlite or cellulose as a filter medium, the backwash may be discharged to the sanitary sewer, unless directed otherwise by the local AHJ.-

4.12 Specific Venues

4.12.1 Spas

4.12.1.1 Additional Provisions

In addition to the general AQUATIC VENUE requirements stated in this CODE, SPAS shall comply with the additional provisions or reliefs of this section.—

4.12.1.2 Maximum Water Depth

The maximum water depth in SPAS shall be ~~four~~4 feet (~~1.222~~ m) measured from the designed static water line except for SPAS that are designed for special use and purposes and approved by the AHJ.

4.12.1.2.1 Exercise Spas

The water depth for exercise SPAS shall not exceed ~~six~~6 feet ~~six~~6 inches (2.0 m) measured from the designed static water line.—

4.12.1.2.2 Seating

The maximum submerged depth of any seat or sitting bench shall be 28 inches (~~71.1~~ ~~cm~~0.7 m) measured from the water line.

4.12.1.3 Handholds

A SPA shall have one ~~(1)~~—or more suitable, slip-resistant handhold(s) around the perimeter and not over 12 inches (~~30.5~~ ~~cm~~0.3 m) above the water line.

4.12.1.3.1 Options

The handhold(s) may consist of bull-nosed coping, ledges or DECKS along the immediate top edge of the SPA; ladders, steps, or seat ledges; or railings.—

4.12.1.4 Stairs

Interior steps or stairs shall be provided where SPA depths are greater than 24 inches (~~61.0~~ ~~cm~~0.6 m).

4.12.1.4.1 Handrail

Each set of steps shall be provided with at least one handrail to serve all treads and risers.

4.12.1.4.2 Seating

Seats or benches may be provided as part of these steps.

4.12.1.4.3 Approach Steps

Approach steps on the exterior of a SPA wall extending above the DECK shall also be required unless the raised SPA wall is 19 inches (~~48.3~~ ~~cm~~0.5 m) or less in height above the DECK and it is used as a transfer tier or pivot-seated entry.—

4.12.1.5 Perimeter Deck

A ~~four~~4 foot (1.~~222~~2 m) wide, continuous, unobstructed PERIMETER DECK shall be provided on two consecutive or adjacent sides or fifty percent or more of the SPA perimeter.

4.12.1.5.1- Lower Ratio

The AHJ could consider a lower ratio upon review of an appropriate SAFETY PLAN that addresses adequate access.-

4.12.1.5.2 Coping

The PERIMETER DECK may include the coping.

4.12.1.5.3 Recessed

SPAS may be located adjacent to other AQUATIC VENUES as long as they are recessed in the DECK.

4.12.1.5.4 Elevated Spas

Elevated SPAS may be located adjacent to another AQUATIC VENUE as long as there is an effective BARRIER between the SPA and the adjacent AQUATIC VENUE.

4.12.1.5.5 Minimum Distance

If an effective BARRIER is not provided, a minimum distance of ~~four~~4 feet (1.2 m) between the AQUATIC VENUE and SPA is required.

4.12.1.6 Depth ~~Markers~~Marking

A minimum of two depth markers shall be provided regardless of the shape or size of the SPA.-

4.12.1.7 Temperature

Water temperatures shall not exceed 104°F (40°C).

4.12.1.8 Drain

A means to drain the SPA shall be provided to allow frequent draining and cleaning.

4.12.1.9 Air Induction System

An air induction system, when provided, shall prevent water back up that could cause electrical shock hazards.

4.12.1.9.1 Intake

Air intake sources shall not permit the introduction of toxic fumes or other CONTAMINANTS.-

4.12.1.10 Timers

The agitation system shall be connected to a minute timer that does not exceed ~~15~~fifteen minutes that shall be located out of reach of a BATHER in the SPA.-

4.12.1.11 Emergency Shutoff

All SPAS shall have a clearly labeled emergency shutoff or control switch for the purpose of stopping the motor(s) that provide power to the RECIRCULATION SYSTEM and hydrotherapy or agitation system that shall be installed and be readily accessible to the BATHERS, in accordance with ~~section 680 of~~ the NEC.

4.12.2 ~~Waterslides~~Water Slides and ~~Landing~~Catch Pools

4.12.2.1 Design and Construction

4.12.2.1.1 ~~___~~-Additional Provisions

In addition to the general AQUATIC FACILITY requirements stated in this CODE, ~~WATERSLIDES~~WATER SLIDES and ~~LANDING~~CATCH POOLS shall comply with the additional provisions or reliefs of this section.

4.12.2.1.2 ~~___~~-Recognized Standards

The following recognized design and construction standards for ~~WATERSLIDES~~WATER SLIDES shall be adhered to.

4.12.2.1.2.1 Engineer Compliance

The design engineer shall address compliance with these standards and must provide documentation and/or certification that the WATERSLIDE design is in conformance with these standards::

- 1) ASTM F2376-~~1308~~ Standard Practice for Classification, Design, Manufacture, Construction, and Operation of Water ~~Slides~~slide Systems; and:
- 2) ASTM F2469-09 Standard Practice for Manufacturer, Construction, Operation, and Maintenance of Aquatic Play Equipment;:
- ~~3) World Water Park Considerations for Operating Safety. 2004. A handbook for Risk Management and Operating Safety at Waterparks.~~
- 4) EN 1069-1:2010 Water slides — Part 1: Safety Requirements and test methods
- 5) EN 1069-2: 1020 Water slides — Part 2: Operation and Risk Management.

4.12.2.1.2.2 Required Signage³ Structural Design

Signs indicating riding instructions, warnings, and requirements in accordance with the manufacturer recommendations shall be posted at the WATERSLIDE entry.

~~The structural design of a WATER SLIDE and the materials used in its construction shall conform with appropriate structural engineering practices.~~

4.12.2.1.4 — Durable Structure

~~The structural design of a WATER SLIDE and the materials used in its construction shall provide a sound, durable structure that will safely sustain all the dead loads, live loads, liquid hydrostatic, and earth pressures encountered.~~

4.12.2.2 Flumes

4.12.2.2.1 Surfaces

FLUME surfaces shall be inert, nontoxic, smooth, and easily cleaned.

~~4.12.2.2.2 Curves and Turns~~

~~All curves and turns in a FLUME shall be:~~

- ~~1) Designed so that the impact of users with the walls of the FLUME does not present a hazard;~~
- ~~2) Banked so that the forces on the BATHERS keep them safely inside the FLUME under all foreseeable circumstances of operation. Riders must not become airborne unless the waterslide manufacturer allows such activity; and~~
- ~~3) Designed so that user should not impact the FLUME itself in such a way that causes injury, such as from a rapid change in direction or becoming inverted in the FLUME.~~

~~4.12.2.2.3 Curved Sections~~

~~In curved sections of a FLUME, the design of the wall of the FLUME shall cause the outward thrust of the body of the BATHER to be dissipated towards the centerline of the FLUME.~~

4.12.2.2.4 Dips

All FLUME VALLEYS and DIPS shall have proper drainage, SAFETY measures that insure a rider cannot fall from the FLUME, and a means of egress in the event the ride malfunctions or a rider stops on the ride.

~~4.12.2.2.5 Flume Walls~~

~~The walls of any FLUME shall be designed so that the continuous and combined action of hydrostatic, dynamic and static loads, as well as normal environmental deterioration do not damage the FLUME bed to the extent of creating a structural failure that presents a hazard of injury to users or that requires frequent patch repairs that may weaken the structural integrity of the FLUME.~~

4.12.2.3 Flume Exits

4.12.2.3.1 Landing Catch Pool

The exit of any FLUME must be designed to ensure that BATHERS enter the LANDINGCATCH POOL or slide RUNOUT at a safe speed and angle of entry.

4.12.2.3.2 Intersection

If a WATERSLIDEWATER SLIDE has two or more FLUMES and there is a point of intersection between the centerlines of any two FLUMES, the distance between that point and the point of exit for each intersecting FLUME must not be less than the slide manufacturer's recommendations and ASTM F2376.

4.12.2.4 Exit into LandingCatch Pools

4.12.2.4.1 Water Level

~~WATERSLIDES~~~~WATER SLIDES~~ shall be designed to terminate at or below water level, except for DROP SLIDES or unless otherwise permitted by the ~~WATERSLIDE~~~~WATER SLIDE~~ manufacturer and ASTM F2376.

4.12.2.4.2 Perpendicular

~~WATERSLIDES~~~~WATER SLIDES~~ shall be perpendicular to the wall of the AQUATIC VENUE at the point of exit unless otherwise permitted by the ~~WATERSLIDE~~~~WATER SLIDE~~ manufacturer.

4.12.2.4.3 Exit System

~~WATERSLIDES~~~~WATER SLIDES~~ shall be designed with an exit system which shall be in accordance with the ~~WATERSLIDE~~~~WATER SLIDE~~ manufacturer's recommendations and ASTM F2376 and provides for safe entry into the LANDINGCATCH POOL or WATERSLIDE~~WATER SLIDE~~ RUNOUT.

~~4.12.2.4.3.1~~ ~~Other Methods~~

~~Other methods shall be acceptable as long as safe exit velocities and proper body position are assured under normal use.~~

4.12.2.4.4 Flume Exits

The FLUME exits shall be in accordance with the ~~WATERSLIDE~~~~WATER SLIDE~~ manufacturer's recommendations and ASTM F2376.

4.12.2.4.5 Point of Exit

The distance between the point of exit and the side of the AQUATIC VENUE opposite the BATHERS as they exit, excluding any steps, shall not be less than the ~~WATERSLIDE~~~~WATER SLIDE~~ manufacturer's recommendations and in accordance with ASTM F2376.

4.12.2.5 LandingCatch Pools

4.12.2.5.15 Steps

If steps are provided instead of exit ladders or RECESSED STEPS with grab rails, theya handrail shall be installedprovided at the ~~steps~~ opposite end of the LANDING POOL ~~point of exit~~ from ~~theeach~~ FLUME exit and a handrail shall be provided.

4.12.2.5.26 Landing Area

If the ~~WATERSLIDE~~~~WATER SLIDE~~ FLUME ~~ends~~~~shall end~~ in a swimming POOL, the landing area shall be divided from the rest of the AQUATIC VENUE by a float line, WING WALL, PENINSULA or other similar feature to prevent collisions with other BATHERS ~~or as approved by the AHJ~~.

4.12.2.6 Decks

A PERIMETER DECK shall be provided along the exit side of the LANDINGGATCH POOL.

4.12.2.7 Means of Access

A walkway, steps, stairway or ramp shall be provided between the LANDINGGATCH POOL and the top of the FLUME. Refer to MAHC Section 4.8.1.

4.12.2.8 Slide RunoutsRun-outs

4.12.2.8.1 Egress

WATERSLIDE RUNOUTS~~WATER SLIDE RUN-OUTS~~, if used, shall have a planned means of egress, unless one ~~of both~~ of the walls of the RUNOUT IS~~RUN-OUT ARE~~ not more than 1942 inches (~~480.3 cmm~~) in height.

4.12.2.8.2 Designed

WATERSLIDE RUNOUTS~~WATER SLIDE RUN-OUTS~~ shall be designed in accordance with the slide manufacturer's recommendations and ASTM F2376.

4.12.2.9 Drop Slides

4.12.2.9.1 Landing Area

There shall be a slide landing area in accordance with the slide manufacturer's recommendations and ASTM F2376.

4.12.2.9.2 Area Clearance~~Infringe~~

This area shall not infringe on the landing area for any other slides, diving equipment, or any other minimum AQUATIC VENUE clearance requirements.

4.12.2.9.3 Steps

Steps shall not infringe on this area.

4.12.2.9.4 Water Depth

The minimum required water depth shall be a function of the vertical distance between the terminus of the slide surface and~~drop height above~~ the water surface of the landing pool.

4.12.2.9.5 Manufacturer's Recommendation

The minimum required water depth shall be in accordance with the slide manufacturer's recommendations and ASTM F2376.-

4.12.2.10 Pool Slides

4.12.2.10.1 Designed for Safety

All slides installed as an appurtenance to an AQUATIC VENUE~~a public swimming POOL or water attraction~~ shall be designed, constructed, and installed to provide a safe environment for all BATHERSPATRONS utilizing the AQUATIC VENUE~~facility~~.

~~4.12.2.10.1.1~~ **Standards**

~~POOL SLIDES shall be designed and constructed~~ in accordance with applicable ASTM and CPSC~~GSPG~~ STANDARDS.-

~~4.12.2.10.2.10.2~~ **Injury**

~~POOL SLIDES are to be assembled, arranged, and finished in a smooth and consistent manner to inhibit the possibility of injury.~~

~~4.12.2.10.3~~ **Non-Toxic**

Components used to construct a POOL SLIDE shall be non-toxic and compatible with the environment contacted under normal use.

~~4.12.2.10.34~~ **Access**

~~Access to the inclined sliding surface shall be gained by use of steps, ladders, stairs, or ramps.~~

~~4.12.2.10.4.1~~ **Treads**

~~Treads shall be slip resistant.~~

~~4.12.2.10.4.2~~ **Ladders**

~~Ladders shall be constructed with full treads not rungs (similar to ladders acceptable for ingress/egress into POOLS).~~

~~4.12.2.10.5~~ **Handrails**

~~Handrails for ladders shall be sturdy, 1-1.9 inch outside diameter, extend no more than 18 inches above the slide entrance platform, and designed to prevent entrapment.~~

~~4.12.2.10.6~~ **Water Depth**

Water depth at the slide terminus shall be determined by the slide manufacturer.

~~4.12.2.10.47~~ **Pool Edge**

Clear space shall be maintained to the POOL edge and other features per manufacturer requirements.

~~4.12.2.10.47.1~~ **Landing Area**~~Terminus End~~

The landing area~~terminus end~~ of the slide shall be protected through the use of a float line, WING WALL, PENINSULA or other similar impediment to prevent collisions with other BATHERS.

~~4.12.2.10.47.2~~ **Prevent Bather Access**

Netting or other barriersstructures shall be provided to prevent BATHER access underneath POOL SLIDES where sufficient clearance is not provided.

4.12.2.10.4.3 Netting or Barrier

Such netting or other barrier shall be designed such that any underwater opening does not allow for the passage of a four inch (10.2 cm) ball and no opening can create a finger entrapment.

4.12.2.11 Signage

~~4.12.2.11.1 Warning Signs~~

Warning signs in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations shall be provided.

4.12.3 Wave Pools

4.12.3.1 General

4.12.3.1.1 Additional Provisions

In addition to the general swimming POOL requirements stated in this CODE, WAVE POOLS shall comply with the additional provisions or reliefs of this section.

4.12.3.2 Access

4.12.3.2.1 Access Point

BATHERS must gain access to the WAVE POOL at the shallow or beach end with the exception of an allowable ADA designated entry point.

4.12.3.2.1.1 Sides

The sides of the WAVE POOL shall be protected from unauthorized entry into the WAVE

4.12.3.2.1.2 Handrails

Handrails as required by ADA for accessible entries shall be designed in such a way that they do not present a potential for injury or entrapment with WAVE POOL BATHERSPATRONS.

4.12.3.2.2 Perimeter Decks

A PERIMETER DECK shall not be required around 100% of the WAVE POOL perimeter.

4.12.3.2.2.1 Wave Pool Access

A PERIMETER DECK shall be provided where BATHERS gain access to the WAVE POOL at the shallow or beach end and in locations where access is required for lifeguards.

4.12.3.2.3 Handholds

WAVE POOLS shall be provided with handholds at the static water level or not more than six6 inches (15.2 cm) above the static water level.

4.12.3.2.32.1 Continuous

These handholds shall be continuous around the WAVE POOL'S perimeter with the exception of at the ZERO DEPTH BEACH ENTRY, water depths less than 24 inches (~~61.0 cm-6 m~~), if this area is roped off not allowed for BATHER access.

4.12.3.2.32.2 Self Draining

These handholds shall be self-draining.-

4.12.3.2.32.3 Flush

Handholds shall be installed so that their outer edge is flush with the WAVE POOL wall.-

4.12.3.2.32.4 Entangled

The design of the handholds shall ensure that body extremities will not become entangled during wave action.

4.12.3.2.43 Steps and Handrails

RECESSED STEPS shall not be allowed along the walls of the WAVE POOL due to the entrapment potential.

4.12.3.2.54 Ladders

Side wall ladders shall be utilized for egress only and shall be placed so they do not project beyond the plane of the wall surface.

~~4.12.3.2.5 Requirements~~

~~The egress requirements in MAHC Sections 4.5.4.1, 4.5.4.1.2, and 4.5.4.3 do not apply to WAVE POOLS.~~

4.12.3.2.6 Float Line

WAVE POOLS shall be fitted with a float line located to restrict access to the caisson wall if required by the WAVE POOL equipment manufacturer.

4.12.3.2.6.1 Exceptions

~~3SAFETY rope and float lines typically required at shallow to deep water transitions shall not apply to WAVE POOLS.-D&G-~~

~~4.12.3.3 Safety~~**4.12.3.3.1 Life Jackets**

Proper STORAGE shall be provided for life jackets and all other equipment used in the WAVE POOL that will allow for thorough drying to prevent mold and other biological~~the growth.-of mold-~~

4.12.3.3.2 Shut-Off Switch

A minimum of two emergency shut-off switches to disable the wave action shall be provided, one on each side of the WAVE POOL.

4.12.3.3.2.1 Labeled and Accessible

These switches shall be clearly labeled and readily accessible to QUALIFIED LIFEGUARDS.-

4.12.3.3.3 No Diving Sign

SAFETY rope and float lines typically required at shallow to deep water transitions shall not apply to WAVE POOLS.

4.12.3.3.4 Caution Signs

Caisson BARRIERS shall be provided for all WAVE POOLS that prevent the passage of a four-~~(4)~~ inch (10.2 cm) ball.

4.12.4 Therapy Pools

4.12.4.1 Additional Provisions

In addition to the general AQUATIC VENUE requirements stated in this CODE, THERAPY POOLS shall comply with the additional provisions or reliefs of this section and MAHC Section 4.7.3.3.~~1.2~~ on SECONDARY DISINFECTION.

4.12.4.2 Slope

Floor slope may exceed one~~1~~ foot (30.5 cm~~0.3 m~~) in 12 feet (3.766~~3~~ m) for water shallower than five~~5~~ feet (1.5 m).

4.12.4.2.1 Break Points

Break points in floor slope shall be identified with a contrasting band consistent with MAHC Section 4.5.~~4.5.2~~.

4.12.4.3 Hydrotherapy

Hydrotherapy or jet systems shall be independent of the recirculation, filtration, and heating systems.-

4.12.4.4 Special Equipment

Special equipment may be allowed by the AHJ with proper justification.

4.12.5 Lazy Rivers

4.12.5.1 General

4.12.5.1.1 Additional Provisions

In addition to the general swimming AQUATIC VENUE requirements stated in this CODE, LAZY RIVERS shall comply with the additional provisions or reliefs of this section.

4.12.5.1.2 Protrusions

Handrails, steps, stairs and propulsion jets for LAZY RIVERS shall not protrude into the river.-

4.12.5.2 Access and Egress

4.12.5.2.1 Means

Means of access/egress shall be provided at 150 foot (45.7 m) intervals around the LAZY RIVER.

4.12.5.2.2 Handhold

A handhold in compliance with MAHC Section 4.5.56 shall be required on at least one side of the LAZY RIVER.

4.12.5.2.3 Deck

A DECK shall be provided along the entire length of the LAZY RIVER.

4.12.5.2.3.1 Alternate Sides

The DECK shall be allowed to alternate sides of the LAZY RIVER.

4.12.5.2.3.2 Obstructions

Obstructions around the perimeter of the LAZY RIVER, such as bridges or landscaping, shall be allowed provided they do not impact lifeguarding, sight lines, or rescue operations.

4.12.5.2.4 Bridges

All bridges spanning a LAZY RIVER shall have a minimum clearance of both seven7 feet (2.143 m) from the bottom of the LAZY RIVER and four4 feet (1.222 m) above the water surface to any structure overhead.

~~4.12.5.3 Water Quality~~

~~4.12.5.4 Safety~~

4.12.6 Moveable Floors

4.12.6.1 General

4.12.6.1.1 Additional Provisions

In addition to the general swimming AQUATIC VENUE requirements stated in this CODE, MOVEABLE FLOORS shall comply with the additional provisions or reliefs of this section.

4.12.6.1.2 Water Treatment

The MOVEABLE FLOOR design shall not impede the effectiveness of the water treatment system.

4.12.6.1.3 Underneath

MOVEABLE FLOORS shall allow inspection, cleaning and maintenance of the area underneath.

4.12.6.2 Slip Resistance

~~4.12.6.2.1 Shallow Water~~

The surface of the MOVEABLE FLOOR shall be slip resistant if it is intended for installation in water depths less than ~~five~~5 feet (1.5 m).

4.12.6.3 Safety

4.12.6.3.1 Not Continuous

A strategy for preventing BATHERSPATRONS from transitioning to deeper water when a MOVEABLE FLOOR is not continuous over the entire surface area of the AQUATIC VENUE shall be provided.

~~4.12.6.3.2 Underside~~

The underside of the MOVEABLE FLOOR shall not be accessible to BATHERS.

~~4.12.6.3.3 Entrapment~~

The design of a MOVEABLE FLOOR shall protect against BATHER entrapment between the MOVEABLE FLOOR and the POOL walls and floor.

4.12.6.3.4 Hydraulic Fluid

If the MOVEABLE FLOOR is operated using hydraulics, the hydraulic compounds shall be listed as safe for use in POOL water in case there is a hydraulic leak.-

4.12.6.4 Movement

4.12.6.4.1 Speed

The speed of a MOVEABLE FLOOR shall be less than or equal to 1.5 feet per minute (45.7 cm/min) ~~(0.457 m/min)~~.

4.12.6.4.2 Use

Use of the MOVEABLE FLOOR portion of the POOL shall not be open to BATHERS when the floor is being raised or lowered.

4.12.6.4.2.1 Exception

Exception-1: The MOVEABLE FLOOR shall only be used for accessibility purposes under direct supervision.

4.12.6.5 Water Depth and Markings

4.12.6.5.1 Displayed

A floor depth indicator shall be provided that displays the current pool water depth.-

4.12.6.5.2 Warning Markings

Warning markings stating “Moveable ~~Floor~~FLOOR” shall be provided at 25 foot (7.662 m) intervals around the perimeter of the MOVEABLE FLOOR.

4.12.7 Bulkheads

4.12.7.1 Additional Provisions

In addition to the general AQUATIC VENUE requirements stated in this CODE, BULKHEADS shall comply with the additional provisions or reliefs of this section.

4.12.7.23 Entrapment

The bottom of the BULKHEAD shall be designed so that a BATHER cannot be entrapped underneath or inside of the BULKHEAD.

4.12.7.34 Placement

The BULKHEAD placement shall not interfere with the required water circulation in the POOL.

4.12.7.45 Fixed

BULKHEADS shall be fixed to their operational position(s) by a tamper-proof system.

4.12.7.56 Gap

The gap between the BULKHEAD and the POOL wall shall be no greater than 1.5 inches (3.8 cm~~38 mm~~).

4.12.7.67 Handhold

The BULKHEAD shall be designed to afford an acceptable handhold as required in MAHC Section 4.5.146.

4.12.7.78 Entrances and Exits

The proper number of entrances/exits to the POOL as required by MAHC section 4.5.34 shall be provided when the BULKHEAD is in place.

4.12.7.89 Guard Railings

Guard railings at least 34 inches (86.4 cm~~860 mm~~) tall shall be provided on both ends of the BULKHEAD.

4.12.7.910 Width

The width of the walkable area (*total bulkhead width*) of a BULKHEAD shall be greater than or equal to three~~3~~ feet and three~~3~~ inches (*1.0 m*).

4.12.7.910.1 Starting Platforms

If starting platforms are installed, the width of the walkable area (*total bulkhead width*) of a BULKHEAD shall be greater than or equal to three~~3~~ feet and nine~~9~~ inches (*1.1 m*). ~~1440 mm~~.

4.12.7.9.1.1 Side Mount Style

Starting platforms shall be “side mount” style if BULKHEAD is less than four feet six inches (1.4 m) wide.

4.12.7.10 Bulkhead Travel

The travel of a BULKHEAD shall be in accordance with one of the following:

- 1) Limited such that it cannot encroach on any required clearances of other features, such as diving boards; or
- 2) Designed with modifications incorporated that prevent use of other features when the required clearances have been compromised by the position of the bulkhead.

4.12.8 Interactive Water Play Venues

4.12.8.1- Additional Provisions

In addition to the general AQUATIC VENUE requirements stated in this CODE, INTERACTIVE WATER PLAY VENUES shall comply with the additional provisions or reliefs of this section.

4.12.8.2 Surface

INTERACTIVE WATER PLAY VENUES shall have a slip-resistant and easily cleanable surface.

4.12.8.2.1 Manufactured Surfacing

Any manufactured surfacing shall be deemed suitable by the manufacturer for aquatic and chlorinated environments.-

4.12.8.3 Sloped

The INTERACTIVE WATER PLAY VENUE shall be properly sloped so that only water from the AQUATIC FEATURES flows back to the INTERACTIVE WATER PLAY VENUE collection tank, reservoir.

4.12.8.3.1 Adjacent Areas

Areas adjacent to the INTERACTIVE WATER PLAY VENUE shall be sloped away from the collection drains.-

4.12.8.3.2 Water Collection

The slope of the INTERACTIVE WATER PLAY VENUE shall be sufficient to prevent standing water from collecting on the pad.

4.12.8.4 Drains

The size, number and locations of the INTERACTIVE WATER PLAY VENUE drains shall be determined and specified so as to assure water does not accumulate on the INTERACTIVE WATER PLAY VENUES.

4.12.8.4.1 Gravity

Flow through the drains to the INTERACTIVE WATER PLAY VENUE COLLECTION TANK shall be under gravity.

4.12.8.4.2 Direct Suction Outlets

Direct suction outlets from the INTERACTIVE WATER PLAY VENUE shall be prohibited.

4.12.8.5 Grate Openings

Openings in the grates covering the drains shall not exceed ½ inches (12.743 mm) wide.

4.12.8.5.1 Tools

Gratings shall not be removable without the use of tools.

4.12.8.6 Treatment Tank

The INTERACTIVE WATER PLAY VENUE COLLECTION TANK shall be designed to provide ready access for cleaning and inspections, and ~~be capable of complete draining.~~

4.12.8.6.1 Completely Drain

The INTERACTIVE WATER PLAY VENUE COLLECTION TANK shall be capable of complete draining.

4.12.8.6.2 Access Hatch

The access hatch or lid shall be locked or require a tool to open.

4.12.8.7 Deck Area

INTERACTIVE WATER PLAY VENUES shall be kept free of landscape debris by either:

- 1) Eight feet (2.444 m) of DECK area, ~~or shall be provided between a INTERACTIVE WATER PLAY VENUE and any landscaped area unless the landscaping is elevated above the DECK in a planter.~~
- 2) Raised curbs, or
- 3) Raised planters.

4.12.8.7.1 Deck Surface

The DECK shall be of a uniform, easily cleaned, impervious material

4.12.8.7.2 Protected From Runoff

The DECK shall~~and~~ be protected from surface runoff.-

4.12.8.8- Barrier

A BARRIER shall be provided to separate an INTERACTIVE WATER PLAY VENUE from another BODY OF WATER within the same facility ~~unless the INTERACTIVE WATER PLAY VENUE is separated by a distance of at least 15 feet (4.57 m) from other BODIES OF WATER.~~

Exception: The INTERACTIVE WATER PLAY VENUE is separated by a distance of at least 15 feet (4.6 m) from other BODIES OF WATER.

4.12.8.9 Enclosures

If a facility only consists of ~~ana~~ INTERACTIVE WATER PLAY VENUE, then the requirements for an ENCLOSURE shall not apply.

4.12.8.10 Hazard

Spray features shall be designed and installed to be seen clearly, so as not to be a hazard to ~~BATHERSPATRONS~~ due to water velocity from the spray feature discharge, or other SAFETY hazards.

4.12.8.11 Maximum Velocity

Maximum velocity at the orifice of the SPRAY FEATURE nozzle shall not exceed 20 feet (6.1 m) per second.

4.12.8.12 Signage

Depth markings and warning signs ~~shallare~~ not be required for INTERACTIVE WATER PLAY VENUES.

4.12.8.13- NEC Requirements

NEC swimming POOL requirements shall apply to Interactive water play venues.

4.12.9 Wading Pools ~~and~~

4.12.9.1 Additional Provisions

In addition to the general AQUATIC VENUE requirements stated in this CODE, WADING POOLS shall comply with the additional provisions or reliefs of this section.

4.12.9.2 Barrier

A BARRIER shall be provided to separate a WADING POOL from other POOLS unless the WADING POOL is separated by a distance of 15 feet (4.~~657~~ m) from other BODIES OF WATER.

4.12.9.2.1 Complete Enclosure

The BARRIER shall not be required to ~~completely surroundbe a complete ENCLOSURE of~~ the WADING POOL ~~if provided~~ the shortest distance of travel between the WADING POOL around the BARRIER to the other POOL is a minimum of 15 feet (4.~~6757~~ m).—

4.12.9.2.2 Shallow Water

WADING POOLS near other WADING POOLS ~~shallare~~ not be required to be separated by a BARRIER.

~~Model Aquatic Health Code~~**5.0 Facility Operation and Maintenance**

The provisions of Chapter 5 apply to all AQUATIC FACILITIES covered by this CODE regardless of when constructed, unless otherwise noted.

~~**5.1 Plan Submittal**~~**5.1 Operating Permits****5.1.1 Owner Responsibilities****5.1.1.1 Operating Permit to Operate Required**

Prior to opening ~~an AQUATIC VENUE~~ to the public, the AQUATIC FACILITY owner shall apply to the AHJ for a permit to operate ~~an AQUATIC VENUE by:~~

- ~~1) Submitting a permit application,~~
- ~~2) Paying the applicable fees, and~~
- ~~3) Showing compliance with the CODE.~~

5.1.1.2 Separate

A separate permit is required for each newly constructed or SUBSTANTIALLY ALTERED AQUATIC VENUE at an existing AQUATIC FACILITY.—

5.1.1.3 Prior to Issuance

Before a permit to operate(~~license~~) is issued, the following procedures shall be completed:

The AQUATIC FACILITY owner has demonstrated the AQUATIC FACILITY, including all newly constructed or SUBSTANTIALLY ALTERED AQUATIC VENUES, shall supply information showing that:

- 1) ~~The AQUATIC VENUE~~ is in compliance with the requirements of this CODE, and
- 2) ~~All required application fees have been paid, and~~
- ~~3)2) The AHJ AQUATIC VENUE has been approved~~ the AQUATIC FACILITY to be open to the public by the AHJ.—

5.1.1.4 Permit Details

The permit to operate shall:

- 1) ~~Be be~~ issued in the name of the owner,
- 2) List all AQUATIC VENUES included under for the permit, and
- ~~1)3) Specify calendar year, or if a seasonal AQUATIC FACILITY, for the period of time approved by during the AHJ calendar year the facility will be in operation.~~

5.1.1.5 Permit ~~Expiration~~expiration

~~Permits to operate~~Operating permits shall terminate according to the AHJ ~~calendar~~ schedule. ~~–~~

5.1.1.6 Permit Renewal

The AQUATIC FACILITY owner shall renew the permit to operate ~~annually using forms and paying permit fees prescribed by the AHJ~~ prior to the scheduled expiration of an existing permit to operate an AQUATIC ~~FACILITY~~VENUE. ~~–~~

5.1.1.7 Permit Denial

The permit ~~(license)~~ to operate may be withheld, revoked, or denied by the AHJ for noncompliance of the AQUATIC FACILITY with the requirements of this ~~CODE~~CODE. ~~–~~

5.1.1.8 Owner Responsibilities

The owner of an AQUATIC FACILITY is responsible for the facility being operated, maintained, and managed in accordance with the requirements of this CODE. ~~–~~

5.1.2 Operating Permits

5.1.2.1 Permit Location

The ~~operating~~ permit to operate shall be posted at the AQUATIC FACILITY in a location conspicuous to the public. ~~on the premises of the AQUATIC FACILITY.~~

5.1.2.2 Operating Without a Permit

Operation of an AQUATIC ~~FACILITY~~FACILITY or newly constructed or SUBSTANTIALLY ALTERED AQUATIC VENUE without a permit to operate shall be prohibited.

5.1.2.3 Required Closure

The AHJ may order a newly constructed or SUBSTANTIALLY ALTERED an AQUATIC VENUE without a permit to operate to close until the AQUATIC FACILITY has obtained a permit to operate. ~~–~~

5.2 Inspections

5.2.1 Preoperational Inspections

5.2.1.1 Terms of Operation

The AQUATIC FACILITY may not be placed in operation until an inspection approved by the AHJ shows compliance with the requirements of this CODE or the AHJ approves opening for operation.

~~5.2.1.2 Multiple Inspections~~

~~Where more than one annual pre-operational inspection is required for an AQUATIC FACILITY before it can be approved for operation, the AHJ shall assess a re-inspection fee for each additional inspection after the initial inspection.~~

5.2.2 Exemptions

5.2.2.1 Applying for Exemption

An AQUATIC FACILITY seeking an initial exemption or an existing AQUATIC FACILITY claiming to be exempt according to applicable regulations shall contact the AHJ for application details/forms.

5.2.2.2 Change in Exemption Status

An AQUATIC FACILITY that sought and received an exemption from a public regulation, shall contact the AHJ if the conditions upon which the exemption was granted change so as to eliminate the exemption status.

5.2.3 Variances

5.2.3.1 Variance Authority

The AHJ may grant a variance to the requirements of this CODE.

5.2.3.2 Applying for a Variance

An AQUATIC FACILITY ~~seeking that seeks~~ a variance shall apply in writing with the appropriate forms to the AHJ.

5.2.3.2.1 Application Components

The application shall include, but not be limited to:

- 1) A citation of the CODE section to which the variance is requested;
- 2) A statement as to why the applicant is unable to comply with the CODE section to which the variance is requested;
- 3) The nature and duration of the variance requested;
- 4) A statement of how the intent of the CODE will be met and the reasons why the public health or SAFETY would not be jeopardized if the variance was granted, and
- 5) A full description of any policies, procedures, or equipment that the applicant proposes to use to rectify any potential increase in health or SAFETY risks created by granting the variance.

~~5.2.3.34 Variance Requests~~

~~5.2.4.1 Revoked~~

Each variance ~~shall be~~ revoked when the permit attached to it is revoked.

5.2.3.4.2 Not Transferable

A variance ~~shall~~is not ~~be~~ transferable unless otherwise provided in writing at the time the variance is granted.

5.2 — Materials**5.3 Equipment Standards [N/A]****5.4 Aquatic Facility and Venue Operation and Facility Maintenance****5.4.1 Closure and Reopening****5.4.1.1 ClosureShort Closures****If5.4.1.1.1 — Short Closures**

~~The water in an AQUATIC VENUE is not open to the public the following conditions shall be met to protect health and safety:~~

5.4.1.1.1 Aquatic Venues With a Barrier

~~Where the AQUATIC VENUE has a barrier enclosing it per MAHC Section 4.8.6:~~

- ~~1) The water closed for seven days or less shall be recirculated and treated to assure water quality parameters meet the criteria of this CODE, or:~~

The water 5.4.1.1.2 — Safe Condition

~~The AQUATIC VENUE closed for seven days or less shall be maintained free of hazards to workers and secured during off hours.~~

5.4.1.2 — Long Closures**5.4.1.2.1 — Drain / Cover**

- ~~2) The water in an AQUATIC VENUE with uncontrolled access and closed for more than seven days shall be drained; or~~
- ~~2)3) An approved SAFETY cover that is listed and labeled to meet ASTM F1346-91 by an ANSI-accredited certification organization shall be installed.~~

5.4.1.1.2 Aquatic Venues Without a Barrier but Open to the Public**5.4.1.2.2 — Long Closures**

~~Where the The water in an AQUATIC VENUE doeswith uncontrolled access closed for more than seven days that is not have a barrier enclosing it per MAHC Section 4.8.6 and other parts of the AQUATIC FACILITY are open to the public:~~

- 1) The waterdrained shall be recirculated and treated to ~~assure water quality parameters~~ meet the criteria of this CODE and the AQUATIC VENUE shall be staffed to keep bathers out, or -
- 2) An approved SAFETY cover that is listed and labeled to ASTM F1346-91 by an ANSI-accredited certification organization shall be installed.

5.4.1.1.3 Aquatic Venues Without a Barrier and Closed to the Public

Where the AQUATIC VENUE does not have a BARRIER enclosing it per MAHC 4.8.6, and the AQUATIC FACILITY is closed to the public:

- 1) The water shall be recirculated and treated to meet the criteria of this code, or
- 2) The water shall be drained; or
- 3) An approved SAFETY cover listed and labeled to ASTM F1346-91 by an ANSI-accredited certification organization shall be installed

5.4.1.2.3 Reopening

An owner or operator of a closedan AQUATIC VENUE ~~closed for more than seven days~~ shall verify that the AQUATIC VENUE meets all applicable criteria of this CODE before reopening the AQUATIC VENUE.

5.4.2 Preventive Maintenance Plan

5.4.2.1 Written Plan

5.4.2.1.1 Preventive Maintenance Plan Available

A written comprehensive preventive maintenance plan for each AQUATIC VENUE shall be available at the AQUATIC FACILITY. ~~for each AQUATIC VENUE.~~

5.4.2.1.2 Contents

The AQUATIC FACILITY preventive maintenance plan shall include details and frequency of owner/owner's or operator's planned routine facility inspection, maintenance ~~or servicing~~, and replacement of recirculation and water treatment componentselement replacement.

5.4.2.2 Facility Documentation

5.4.2.2.1 Original Plans and Specifications Available

A copy of the approved plans and specifications ~~shall be available at the AQUATIC VENUE~~ for each AQUATIC ~~VENUEFACILITY~~ constructed after the adoption of this CODE shall be available at the AQUATIC FACILITY -

5.4.2.2.2 Equipment Inventory

A comprehensive inventory of all mechanical equipment associated with each AQUATIC VENUE shall be available at the AQUATIC FACILITY.

5.4.2.2.3 Inventory Details

This inventory shall include:

- 1) Equipment name and model number,
- 2) Manufacturer and contact information,
- 3) Local vendor/supplier and technical representative, if applicable, and
- 4) Replacement or service dates and details.

5.4.2.2.4 Equipment Manuals

Operation manuals for all mechanical equipment associated with each AQUATIC VENUE shall be available at the AQUATIC FACILITY.

5.4.2.2.4.1 No Manual

If no manufacturer's operation manual is available, then the AQUATIC FACILITY should create a written document that outlines standard operating procedures for maintaining and operating the piece of equipment.

5.4.3— General Operations [N/A]

5.5 Aquatic Venue Structure

5.5.1 Shape [N/A]

5.5.2 Access Ladders [N/A]

5.5.3 Color and Finish [N/A]

5.5.4 Walls [N/A]

5.5.5 Depth Markings

5.5.5.1 Depth Markers

Depth markers shall be provided in locations in accordance with MAHC Section 4.5.19 and maintained.

5.5.5.2 No Diving Markers

No Diving markers shall be provided in accordance with MAHC Section 4.5.19 and maintained.

5.5.6 Pool Shell Maintenance

5.5.6.1 Cracking

5.5.6.1.1 Repaired

Types of Cracks shall be repaired when they may increase the potential for:-

- 1) Leakage,
- 2) Trips or falls,
- 3) Lacerations, or
- 4) Impact the ability to properly clean and maintain the AQUATIC VENUE area.

~~CRACKS exhibiting any of the following characteristics shall be evaluated by a structural engineer:~~

- ~~1) CRACKS with vertical displacement;~~
- ~~2) CRACKS of varying width;~~
- ~~3) CRACKS concentrated to a specific area;~~
- ~~4) CRACKS exposing any reinforcement;~~
- ~~5) CRACKS obviously recurring from previous patches;~~
- ~~6) CRACKS in corners;~~
- ~~7) CRACKS drawing a defined line; and~~
- ~~8) Surface CRACKING over 1/8 inch (3.2mm) in width.~~

5.5.6.1.2 Document Cracks

Surface CRACKS under 1/8 inch (~~3.2 mm~~2mm) wide shall be documented and monitored for any movement or change including opening, closing, and/or lengthening.

5.5.6.1.3 Sharp Edges

Any sharp edges shall be removed.

5.6 Indoor !Outdoor Environment

5.6.1 Lighting

5.6.1.1 Lighting Maintained

5.6.1.1.1 Light Levels

Lighting systems, including emergency lighting, shall be maintained in all PATRON areas and maintenance areas, to ensure the required lighting levels are met as specified in MAHC Section 4.6.1.

5.6.1.1.2 Main Drain Visible

The AQUATIC FACILITY shall not be open if light levels are such that the main drain is not visible from poolside.

5.6.1.1.3 Underwater Lighting

Underwater lights, where provided, shall be operational and maintained as designed.

5.6.1.1.4 Cracked Lenses

Cracked lenses that are physically intact on lights shall be replaced before the AQUATIC VENUE reopens to BATHERS.

5.6.1.1.5- Intact ~~Lenses~~lenses

The AQUATIC VENUE shall be immediately closed if cracked lenses are not intact and the lenses shall be replaced before re-opening.

5.6.1.2 Glare**5.6.1.2.1 Assessments**

The ~~AQUATIC FACILITY owner~~QUALIFIED OPERATOR shall ~~ensure that~~assess glare conditions ~~are assessed throughout operating hours~~ to ~~determine if~~ensure the AQUATIC VENUE bottom and objects in the POOL are clearly visible ~~throughout operating hours.~~

5.6.1.2.1.1 Lifeguard Stations

~~If the AQUATIC VENUE requires lifeguards, the AQUATIC FACILITY owner shall ensure that glare conditions are assessed from each lifeguard station to determine if the AQUATIC VENUE bottom and objects in the POOL are clearly visible throughout operating hours.~~

5.6.1.2.2 Reduction

Windows and lighting equipment shall be adjusted, if possible, to minimize glare and excessive reflection on the water surface.

5.6.1.3 ~~Night Swimming~~2.1 Good Condition

~~Night swimming~~Lighting equipment shall be prohibited unless required light~~maintained in good condition and at the~~ levels established in accordance with MAHC Section 4.6.1 are provided.

5.6.1.2.2 ~~Light levels~~

~~Light levels shall be maintained as designed.~~

5.6.1.3 ~~Underwater Lighting~~**5.6.1.3.1 Hours**

Night swimming shall be considered one half hour before sunset to one half hour after sunrise.

5.6.1.4 Water Surface**5.6.1.5 ~~Emergency Lighting~~****5.6.1.5.1 ~~Tested and Maintained~~**

Emergency lighting shall be tested and maintained according to manufacturer's recommendations.

5.6.2 Indoor Aquatic Facility Ventilation

5.6.2.1 Purpose

AIR HANDLING SYSTEMS shall be maintained and operated by the owner/operator to protect the health and SAFETY of the facility's PATRONS.

5.6.2.2 Original Characteristics

AIR HANDLING SYSTEMS shall be maintained and operated to comply with all requirements of the original system design, construction, and installation.

5.6.2.3 Indoor Facility Areas

The ~~AIR HANDLING SYSTEM~~ ~~ventilation~~ operation and maintenance requirements shall apply to an INDOOR AQUATIC FACILITY including:

- 1) ~~The~~ ~~the~~ AQUATIC VENUES, ~~and~~
- 2) ~~The~~ ~~the~~ surrounding BATHER and spectator/stadium seating area;

~~But,~~ ~~but~~ does not include:

- 1) ~~Mechanical~~ ~~mechanical~~ rooms,
- 2) ~~Bath~~ ~~bath~~ and locker rooms, and
- 3) ~~Any~~ ~~any~~ associated rooms which have a direct opening to the AQUATIC FACILITY.

5.6.2.4 Ventilation Procedures

THE INDOOR AQUATIC FACILITY owner/operator shall develop and implement a program of standard AIR HANDLING SYSTEM operation, maintenance, cleaning, testing, and inspection procedures with detailed instructions, necessary equipment and supplies, and oversight for those carrying out these duties, in accordance with the AIR HANDLING SYSTEM design engineer and/or manufacturer's recommendations.

5.6.2.4.1 System Operation

The AIR HANDLING SYSTEM shall operate continuously, including providing the required amount of outdoor air.

5.6.2.4.1.1 Operation Outside of Operating Hours

Exception: During non-use periods. ~~The exception is that~~ the amount of outdoor air may be reduced by no more than 50% ~~during non-use periods~~ as long as acceptable air quality is maintained.

5.6.2.5 Manuals/Commissioning Reports

The QUALIFIED OPERATOR shall maintain a copy of the AIR HANDLING SYSTEM design engineer and/or manufacturer original operating manuals, ~~and~~ commissioning reports, updates, and specifications for any modifications at the facility.

5.6.2.6 Ventilation Monitoring

The QUALIFIED OPERATOR shall monitor, log and maintain AIR HANDLING SYSTEM set-points and other operational parameters as specified by the AIR HANDLING SYSTEM design engineer and/or manufacturer.

5.6.2.7 Air Filter Changing

The QUALIFIED OPERATOR(s) shall replace or clean, as appropriate, AIR HANDLING SYSTEM air filters in accordance with the AIR HANDLING SYSTEM design engineer and/or manufacturer's recommendations, whichever is most frequent.

5.6.2.8 Combined Chlorine Reduction

The QUALIFIED OPERATOR shall develop and implement a plan to minimize combined CHLORINE compounds in the INDOOR AQUATIC FACILITY from the operation of AQUATIC VENUES.

5.6.2.9 Building Purge Plan

The QUALIFIED OPERATOR shall develop and implement an air quality action plan with procedures for PURGING the INDOOR AQUATIC FACILITY for chemical emergencies or other indicators of poor air quality.

5.6.2.10 Records

The owner shall ensure maintain documents are maintained at the INDOOR AQUATIC FACILITY to be available for inspection, recording the following:

- 1) A log recording the set points of operational parameters set during the commissioning of the AIR HANDLING SYSTEM and the actual readings taken at least once daily;
- 2) Maintenance conducted to the system including the dates of filter changes, cleaning, and repairs;
- 3) Dates and details of modifications to the AIR HANDLING SYSTEM; and
- 4) Dates and details of modifications to the operating scheme.

5.6.3 Electrical

5.6.3.1 Electrical Repairs

5.6.3.1.1- Local Codes

Repairs or alterations to electrical equipment and associated equipment shall preserve compliance with the NEC, or with applicable local CODES prevailing at the time of construction, or with subsequent versions of those CODES.

5.6.3.1.2 Immediately Repaired

All defects in the electrical system shall be immediately repaired.

5.6.3.1.3 Wiring

Electrical wiring, whether permanent or temporary, shall comply with the ~~National Electrical CODE (NEC) Article 225 and Article 680 and other applicable sections~~, or with applicable local CODE.

5.6.3.2 Electrical Receptacles

5.6.3.2.1 New Receptacles

The installation of new electrical receptacles shall be subject to electrical-construction requirements of this CODE and applicable local CODE.

5.6.3.2.2 Repairs

Repairs or maintenance to existing receptacles shall maintain compliance with the NEC; ~~especially NEC Article 680.22~~; and with CFR 1910.304(b) (3) (ii).

5.6.3.2.3 Replacement

Replacement receptacles shall be of the same type as the previous ones, e.g. grounding-type receptacles shall be replaced only by grounding-type receptacles, with all grounding conductors connected and proper wiring polarity preserved.

5.6.3.2.4 Substitutions

Where the original-type of receptacle is no longer available, a replacement and installation shall be in accordance with applicable local CODE.

5.6.3.3 Ground-Fault Circuit Interrupter

5.6.3.3.1 Manufacturer's Recommendations

Where receptacles are required to be protected by GFCI devices, the GFCI devices shall be tested following the manufacturer's recommendations.

5.6.3.3.2 Permanent Facilities

For permanent AQUATIC FACILITIES, required GFCI devices shall be tested monthly as part of scheduled maintenance.

5.6.3.3.3 Testing

Required GFCI devices shall be tested as part of scheduled maintenance on the first day of operation, and monthly thereafter, until the BODY OF WATER is drained and the equipment is prepared for STORAGE.

5.6.3.4 Grounding

5.6.3.4.1- Maintenance and Repair

Maintenance or repair of electrical circuits or devices shall preserve grounding compliance with the NEC; ~~especially Article 250 Grounding and Bonding, Article 680 Swimming Pools, Fountains, and Similar Installations, and Chapter 3~~; or with applicable local CODES.

5.6.3.4.2 Grounding Conductors

Grounding conductors that have been disconnected, ~~except for minor repairs,~~ shall be re-inspected as required by the local building CODE authority prior to AQUATIC VENUE being used by BATHERS.

5.6.3.4.3 Damaged Conductors

Damaged grounding conductors and grounding electrodes shall be repaired immediately.

5.6.3.4.4 Damaged Conductor Repair

Damaged grounding conductors or grounding electrodes, associated with recirculation or DISINFECTION equipment or with underwater lighting systems, shall be repaired by a qualified person who has the proper and/or necessary skills, training, or credentials to carry out the this task.-

5.6.3.4.5 Public Access

The public shall not have access to the AQUATIC VENUE until such grounding conductors or grounding electrodes are repaired ~~by a QUALIFIED PERSON.~~

5.6.3.4.6 Venue Closure

The AQUATIC VENUE with damaged grounding conductors or grounding electrodes, that are associated with recirculation or DISINFECTION equipment or with underwater lighting systems, shall be closed until repairs are completed and inspected by the AHJ.

5.6.3.5 Bonding

5.6.3.5.1 Local Codes

Maintenance or repair of all metallic equipment, electrical circuits or devices, or reinforced concrete structures shall preserve bonding compliance with the NEC, or with applicable local CODES.

5.6.3.5.2 Bonding Conductors

Bonding conductors shall not be disconnected except where they will be immediately reconnected.

5.6.3.5.3 Disconnected Conductors

The AQUATIC VENUE shall not be used by BATHERS while bonding conductors are disconnected.

5.6.3.5.4 Removable Covers

Removable covers protecting bonding conductors, e.g. at ladders, shall be kept in place except during bonding conductor inspections, repair, or replacement.

5.6.3.5.5 Scheduled Maintenance

Bonding conductors, where accessible, shall be inspected semi-annually as part of scheduled maintenance.

5.6.3.5.6 Corrosion

Bonding conductors and any associated clamps shall not be extensively corroded.

5.6.3.5.7 Continuity

Continuity of the bonding system associated with RECIRCULATION SYSTEM OR DISINFECTION equipment or with underwater lighting systems shall be inspected by the AHJ following installation and any major construction around the AQUATIC FACILITY.

5.6.3.6 Extension Cords

5.6.3.6.1 Temporary Cords and Connectors

Temporary extension cords and power connectors shall not be used as a substitute for permanent wiring.

5.6.3.6.2 Minimum Distance from Water

All parts of an extension cord shall be restrained at a minimum of six6 feet (1.8 m8m) away when measured along the shortest possible path from a BODY OF WATER during times when the AQUATIC FACILITY is open.

5.6.3.6.3 Exception

An extension cord may be used within six6 feet (1.8 m8m) of the nearest edge of a BODY OF WATER if a permanent wall exists between the BODY OF WATER and the extension cord.

5.6.3.6.4 GFCI Protection

The circuit supplying an extension cord shall be protected by a GFCI device when the extension cord is to be used within six6 feet (1.8 m8m) of a BODY OF WATER.

5.6.3.6.5 Local Code

An extension cord incorporating a GFCI device may be used if that is acceptable under applicable local CODE.

5.6.3.6.6 Compliance

The use of extension cords shall comply with CFR 1910.304.

5.6.3.7 Portable Electric Devices

5.6.3.7.1 ~~Near Water~~

Portable line-powered electrical devices, such as radios or drills, shall not be used within six6 feet (1.8 m8m) horizontally of the nearest inner edge of a BODY OF WATER, unless connected to a GFCI-protected circuit.

5.6.3.8 Communication Devices and Dispatch Systems

~~5.6.3.8.1 Compliance~~

The maintenance and repair of Communication Devices and Dispatch Systems shall preserve compliance with the NEC.

5.6.4 Facility Heating

5.6.4.1 Facility Heating

~~5.6.4.1.1- Maintenance and Repair~~

Maintenance, repairs, and alterations to facility-heating equipment shall preserve compliance with applicable CODES.

~~5.6.4.1.2 Defects~~

Defects in the AQUATIC FACILITY-heating equipment shall be immediately repaired.

~~5.6.4.1.3 Temperature~~

Air temperature of an INDOOR AQUATIC FACILITY~~a NATATORIUM~~ shall be controlled to the original specifications or in the absence of such, maintain the dew point of the INTERIOR SPACE less than the dew point of the interior walls at all times so as to prevent damage to structural members and to prevent biological growth on walls.

~~5.6.4.1.4 Combustion Device~~

Items shall not be stored within the COMBUSTION DEVICE manufacturer's specified minimum clearance distance.

5.6.4.2 Water Heating

~~5.6.4.2.1 Maintenance and Repair~~

Maintenance, repairs, and alterations to POOL-water heating equipment shall preserve compliance with applicable CODES.-

5.6.5 First Aid Room [N/A]

5.6.6 Emergency Exit

5.6.6.1 ~~Emergency~~ Exit Routes

Emergency exit routes shall be established for both INDOOR FACILITIES and OUTDOOR FACILITIES and be maintained so that they are well lit, unobstructed, and accessible at all times.

5.6.7 Plumbing

5.6.7.1 Water Supply

5.6.7.1.1 Water Pressure

All plumbing shall be maintained in good repair with no leaks or discharge.

5.6.7.1.2 Availability

Potable water shall be available at all times to PATRONS.

5.6.7.1.3 Cross-Connection Control

Water introduced into the pool , either directly or to the recirculation system, shall be supplied through an air gap or by another method which will prevent backflow and back-siphonage.

5.6.7.2- Drinking Fountains

5.6.7.2.1 Good Repair

Drinking fountains shall be in good repair.

5.6.7.2.2 Clean

Drinking fountains shall be clean.

5.6.7.2.3 Catch Basin

Drinking fountains shall be adjusted so that ~~waste~~-water does not go outside the catch basin.

5.6.7.2.4 Contamination Backflow

Drinking fountains shall provide an angled jet of water and be adjusted so that thewaste water does not fall back into the drinking water stream.

5.6.7.2.5 Water Pressure

Drinking fountains shall have sufficient water pressure to allow correct adjustment.

5.6.7.3- Waste Water

5.6.7.3.1 Waste Water Disposal

AQUATIC VENUE waste water, including backwash water and cartridge cleaning water, shall be disposed of in accordance with local CODES.

5.6.7.3.2 Drainage

Waste water and backwash water shall not be returned to an AQUATIC VENUE or the AQUATIC FACILITY'S water treatment system.

5.6.7.3.3 Filters

~~Filters shall be backwashed, cleaned and maintained according to the manufacturer's instructions.~~

~~5.6.7.3.4~~ **Drain Line**~~Lines~~

Filter backwash lines, DECK drains, and other drain lines connected to the AQUATIC FACILITY or the AQUATIC FACILITY RECIRCULATION SYSTEM shall be discharged through an approved air gap.

~~5.6.7.3.45~~ **No Standing Water**

No standing water shall result from any discharge, nor shall they create a nuisance, offensive odors, stagnant wet areas, or create an environment for the breeding of insects.

5.6.7.4 Water Replenishment

5.6.7.4.1 Volume

Removal of water from the POOL and replacement with make-up water shall be performed as needed to maintain water quality.

5.6.7.4.2 Discharged

A volume of water totaling at least ~~fourte~~ 4 gallons (15 L) per BATHER per day per AQUATIC VENUE facility shall be either:

- 1) Discharged from the system, or
- 2) Treated with an alternate system meeting the requirements of MAHC Section 4.7.4.2.1 and reused.

5.6.7.4.2.1 Backwash Water

The required volume of water to be discharged may include backwash water.

5.6.7.4.3 Multi-System Facilities

In multi-RECIRCULATION SYSTEM facilities, WATER REPLENISHMENT shall be proportional to the number of BATHERS in each system.

5.6.8 Solid Waste

5.6.8.1 Storage Receptacles

5.6.8.1.1 Good Repair and Clean

Outside waste and recycling containers shall be maintained in good repair and clean condition.

5.6.8.1.2 Storage

~~Outside waste and recycling containers shall be stored as specified in this CODE.~~

5.6.8.1.3 ~~Areas~~

Outside waste and recycling STORAGE areas shall be maintained in good repair and clean condition.

5.6.8.2 Disposal**5.6.8.2.1 Frequency**

Solid waste and recycled materials shall be removed at a frequency to prevent attracting vectors or causing odor.

5.6.8.2.2 Local Code Compliance

Solid waste and recycled materials shall be disposed of in compliance with local CODES.

5.6.9 Decks**5.6.9.1 Food Preparation and Consumption****5.6.9.1.1 Preparation**

Food preparation and cooking shall only be permitted in designated areas as specified in this CODE.

5.6.9.1.2 Eating and Drinking

~~BATHERS~~PATRONS shall not eat or while in or partially in the AQUATIC VENUE water.

5.6.9.1.3 ~~Drinking~~

~~PATRONS shall not~~ drink while in or partially in the AQUATIC VENUE water except in designated areas.

5.6.9.1.2.1 Swim-Up Bars

Swim-up bars, when utilized, shall provide facilities for bathers to place food and drinks on a surface which can be SANITIZED.

5.6.9.2 Glass**5.6.9.2.1 Containers**

Glass food and beverage containers shall be prohibited in PATRON areas of AQUATIC FACILITIES.

5.6.9.2.2 Furniture Tables

Glass furniture tables shall not be used in an AQUATIC FACILITY.

5.6.9.3 Deck Maintenance**5.6.9.3.1- Free From Obstructions**

The PERIMETER DECK shall be maintained free from obstructions, including PATRON seating, to preserve space required for lifesaving and rescue.

5.6.9.3.2 Diaper Changing

Diaper changing shall only be done at a designated DIAPER-CHANGING STATION.

5.6.9.3.2.1 Prohibited

Diaper changing shall be prohibited on the DECK.

5.6.9.3.3 Vermin

DECK areas shall be cleaned daily and kept free of debris, vermin, and vermin harborage.

5.6.9.3.4 Original Design

DECK surfaces shall be maintained to their original design slope and integrity.

5.6.9.3.4.1 Crack Repair

CRACKS shall be repaired when they may increase the potential for:

- 1) Trips or falls,
- 2) Lacerations, or
- 3) Impact the ability to properly clean and maintain the DECK area.

5.6.9.3.5 Standing Water

DECK areas shall be free from standing water.

5.6.9.3.6 Drains

DECK drains shall be cleaned and maintained to prevent blockage and pooling of ~~stagnant~~ water.

5.6.9.3.7 Wet Areas

Wet areas shall not have absorbent materials that cannot be removed for cleaning and DISINFECTION daily.

5.6.9.3.8 Circulation Path

Fixed equipment, loose equipment, and DECK furniture shall not intrude upon the AQUATIC VENUE CIRCULATION PATH.

5.6.10 Aquatic Facility Maintenance

All appurtenances, features, signage, safety and other equipment, and systems required by this CODE shall be provided and maintained.

5.6.10.1 Diving Boards and Platforms

5.6.10.1.1 Slip-Resistant Finish

The finish and profile of surfaces of diving boards and platforms shall be maintained to prevent slips, trips, and falls.

5.6.10.1.2 Loose Bolts and Cracked Boards

Diving boards shall be inspected daily for CRACKS and loose bolts with CRACKED boards removed and loose bolts tightened immediately.

5.6.10.2 Steps and Guardrails

5.6.10.2.1 Immovable

Steps and guardrails shall be secured so as not to move during use.

5.6.10.2.2 Maintenance

The profile and surface of steps shall be maintained to prevent slips and falls.

5.6.10.3 Starting Platforms

~~5.6.10.3.1 Good Repair~~

The profile and surface of starting platform steps shall be in good repair to prevent slips, trips, falls, and pinch hazards.

~~5.6.10.3.2 Restrictions~~

~~Starting platforms shall only be used for competitive swimming competition and training and shall only be used under the direct supervision of a coach or instructor.~~

~~5.6.10.3.2.1 Covers or Cones~~

~~Covers or cones shall be used to prohibit access and designate when use of permanent starting platforms is prohibited.~~

~~5.6.10.3.2.2 Removable Blocks~~

~~Starting platforms designed to be removable shall be removed at all times when use is prohibited.~~

5.6.10.4 Waterslides~~Water Slides~~

5.6.10.4.1 Maintenance

WATERSLIDES shall be maintained and operated to manufacturer's/designer's specifications.

5.6.10.4.2 Slime and Biofilm

Slime and biofilm layers shall be removed on all accessible WATERSLIDES~~slide~~ surfaces.

5.6.10.4.3 Flow Rates

~~WATERSLIDE~~Slide water flow rates shall be checked ~~to before AQUATIC VENUE opening to~~ be within designer or manufacturer's specifications prior to opening to the public.

5.6.10.4.4 Disinfectant

Where ~~WATERSLIDE plumbing~~ ~~WATERSLIDE~~ lines are susceptible to holding stagnant water, ~~WATERSLIDE pumps~~ shall be started with sufficient time prior to opening to flush such plumbing lines with treated water.

5.6.10.4.4.1 Water Testing

The water shall be tested to verify ~~themaintain~~ disinfectant in the water is within the parameters specified in~~throughout the lines as per~~ MAHC Section 5.7.3.1.1.2.3.

5.6.10.5 Fencing and Barriers

5.6.10.5.1 Maintenance

Required fencing, BARRIERS, and gates shall be maintained at all times.

5.6.10.5.2 Tested Daily

Gates, locks, and associated alarms, if required, shall be tested daily prior to opening.

5.6.10.6 Aquatic Facility Cleaning

5.6.10.6.1 Cleaning

The AQUATIC VENUE shall be kept clean of debris, organic materials, and accessible slime/biofilm in accessible areas in the water and on surfaces.

5.6.10.6.2 Vacuuming

Vacuuming shall only be done when the AQUATIC VENUE is closed.

5.6.10.6.3 Port Openings

Vacuum port openings shall be covered with an approved device cover when not in use.

5.6.10.6.3.1 Damaged

POOLS with missing or damaged vacuum port openings shall be closed and repairs made before re-opening.

~~5.6.10.6.4 Slime and Biofilm~~

~~All accessible surfaces shall be scrubbed and cleaned as necessary to minimize the formation of slime and biofilm layers.~~

5.7 Recirculation and Water Treatment

5.7.1 Recirculation Systems and Equipment

5.7.1.1 General

5.7.1.1.1 Continuous Operation

All components of the filtration and RECIRCULATION SYSTEMS shall be kept in continuous operation (~~twenty four (24)~~ hours per day).

5.7.1.1.1.1 Reduced Flowrates

The system flowrate shall not be reduced more than 25% lower than the minimum design requirements and only reduced when the POOL is unoccupied.

5.7.1.1.1.1.1 System Design

The flow turndown system shall be designed as specified in MAHC Sections 4.7.1.10.6.1 to 4.7.1.10.6.2.

5.7.1.1.1.1.2 Water Clarity

The system flowrate shall be based on ensuring the minimum water clarity required under MAHC Section 5.7.6 is met before opening to the public.

5.7.1.1.1.1.2 Disinfectant Levels

The turndown system shall be required to maintain required DISINFECTANT and pH levels at all times.

5.7.1.1.2 Flow

Flow through the various components of a RECIRCULATION SYSTEM shall be balanced according to the provisions outlined in MAHC Section 5.7.1 to maximize the water clarity and SAFETY of a POOL.

5.7.1.1.3 Gutter / Skimmer Pools

For gutter or SKIMMER POOLS with main drains, the required recirculation flow shall be as follows during normal operation:

- 1) ~~At a~~ least 80% of the flow through the perimeter overflow system, and
- 2) ~~No~~ greater than 20% through the main drain.

5.7.1.2 Combined Venue Treatment

~~5.7.1.2.1 Each Pool~~

Each individual AQUATIC VENUE POOL in a combined treatment system shall meet ~~the~~ required TURNOVER times specified in MAHC Section 5.7.1.9 and achieve all water quality criteria (*including, but not limited to, pH, disinfectant concentration, and water clarity/turbidity*).

5.7.1.3 Inlets

Inlets shall be checked at least weekly for rate and direction of flow and adjusted as necessary to produce uniform circulation of water and to facilitate the maintenance of a uniform disinfectant residual throughout the pool.

5.7.1.4 Surface Skimming Devices

5.7.1.4.1 Perimeter Overflow

The PERIMETER OVERFLOW SYSTEMS shall be kept clean and free of debris that may restrict flow.

5.7.1.4.2 Automatic Fill System

The automatic fill system, when installed, shall maintain the water level at an elevation such that the gutters must overflow continuously around the perimeter of the POOL.

5.7.1.4.3 ~~Skimmer Water Levels~~ Automatic Fill

The ~~automatic fill system shall maintain~~ SKIMMER water levels shall be maintained near the middle of the SKIMMER openings.

5.7.1.4.4 Flow

The flow through each SKIMMER shall be adjusted ~~as often as necessary~~ to maintain skimming action that will remove all floating matter from the surface of the water.-

5.7.1.4.5 Strainer Baskets

The strainer baskets for SKIMMERS shall be cleaned as necessary to maintain proper skimming.-

5.7.1.4.6 Weirs

Weirs shall remain in place and in working condition at all times.

5.7.1.4.6.1 Broken or Missing Weirs

Broken or missing SKIMMER weirs shall be replaced immediately.

5.7.1.4.76 Flotation Test

A flotation test may be required by the AHJ to evaluate the effectiveness of surface skimming.

5.7.1.5 Submerged Drains/Suction Outlet Covers or Gratings

5.7.1.5.1 Replaced

Loose, broken, or missing suction outlet covers and sumps shall be secured or replaced immediately and installed in accordance with the manufacturer's requirements.

5.7.1.5.1.1 Closed

POOLS shall be closed until the required repairs can be completed.

5.7.1.5.1.2 Close/Open Procedures

AQUATIC FACILITIES shall follow procedures for closing and re-opening whenever required as outlined in MAHC Section 5.4.1.

5.7.1.5.2 Documentation

The manufacturer's documentation on all outlet covers and sumps shall be made part of the permanent records of the AQUATIC FACILITY.

5.7.1.6 Piping [N/A]

See Annex discussion.

5.7.1.7 Strainers & Pumps**~~5.7.1.7.1 Strainers~~**

Strainers shall be in place and cleaned as required to maintain pump performance.

~~5.7.1.7.2 Close/Open Procedures~~

~~Facilities shall follow procedures for closing and re-opening whenever required as outlined in MAHC Section 5.4.1.~~

5.7.1.8 Flow Meters**~~5.7.1.8.1 Maintained~~**

Flow meters in accordance with MAHC Section 4.7.1.9.1 shall ~~shall be~~ provided and maintained in proper working order.

5.7.1.9 Flow Rates / Turnovers**5.7.1.9.1 New Construction or Substantially Altered Venues Operated**

AQUATIC VENUES constructed or substantially altered after the adoption of this code~~All AQUATIC VENUES~~ shall be operated at the designed flow rate to provide the required TURNOVER RATE 24-hours per day except as allowed in MAHC Section 4.7.1.10.

5.7.1.9.2 Construction Before Adoption of this Code

AQUATIC VENUES constructed before the adoption of this code shall be operated 24 hours per day at their designed flow rate.

5.7.2 Filtration

Filters and filter media shall be listed and labeled to NSF/ANSI 50 by an ANSI-accredited certification organization. Filters shall be backwashed, cleaned and maintained according to the manufacturer's instructions.

5.7.2.1 Granular Media Filters

5.7.2.1.1 Filtration Rates

High-rate granular media filters shall be operated at no more than 15 gallons per minute per square foot (36.7 gpm/ft² (m/h) when a minimum bed depth of 15 inches (38.1 cm) is provided per manufacturer's instructions~~manufacturer.~~

5.7.2.1.1.1 Less than ~~Fifteen~~15 Inch Bed Depth

When a bed depth is less than 15 inches (38.1 cm~~38cm~~), filters shall operate at no more than 12 gallons per minute per square foot (29.3 m/h)~~gpm/ft².~~

5.7.2.1.2 Backwashing Rates

The granular media filter system shall be backwashed at a rate of at least 15 gallons per minute per square foot (36.7 m/h) of filter bed surface area as per MAHC Section 4.7.2.2.3.2, unless explicitly prohibited by the filter manufacturer and/or approved at an alternate rate as specified in the NSF/ANSI 50 listing.

5.7.2.1.3 Clear Water

Backwashing should be continued until the water leaving the filter is clear.

5.7.2.1.4 Backwashing Frequency

~~All filters shall be backwashed at least every two weeks.~~

5.7.2.1.4.1 ~~Backwashing~~

Backwashing of each filter shall be performed at a differential pressure increase over the initial clean filter pressure as recommended by the filter manufacturer, unless the system can no longer achieve the design flow rate.

5.7.2.1.4.1.2 Backwash Scheduling

Backwashes shall be scheduled to take place when the AQUATIC VENUE~~POOL~~ is closed for BATHER use.

~~or unless operators follow the procedure specified in MAHC Section 5.7.2.1.4.2.1.~~

5.7.2.1.4.2.1 Backwashing with While Open to Bathers Present

If the filter may be backwashed while the AQUATIC FACILITY is open to BATHERS are in the AQUATIC VENUE if all, then one of the following criteria are met:

- 1) Multiple filters are used, two procedures shall be performed after the normal backwashing procedure is completed and prior to the filter being placed back in normal operation:
- 2) The filter to be backwashed can be isolated from the remaining RECIRCULATION SYSTEM and filters, and
- 3) The recirculation and filtration system still continues to run as per this CODE, and

4) The chemical feed lines inject at a point where chemicals enter the RECIRCULATION SYSTEM after the isolated filter and where they can mix as needed.

~~1) The filter flow shall be redirected to drain for a period of time sufficient to displace the volume of water inside of the filter or 1 minute per foot of bed depth above the laterals at the required filtration rate, whichever is greater, or~~

~~2) The backwash flow rate shall be reduced to a rate of no greater than 5 gpm/ft² (12.2 m/h) for a period of time sufficient to displace the volume of water inside of the filter.~~

5.7.2.1.5 Filter Media Inspections

Sand or other granular media shall be inspected for proper depth and cleanliness at least one time per year, replacing the media when necessary to restore depth or cleanliness.

~~5.7.2.1.5.2 — Representative Filters~~

~~The QUALIFIED OPERATOR shall inspect sand or other granular media filters for proper depth and cleanliness at least once per year, replacing the media when necessary to restore depth or cleanliness.~~

5.7.2.1.6 Vacuum Sand Filters

~~Vacuum sand filters shall be backwashed prior to a vacuum increase of 10 inches (254 mm) of mercury above the initial reading or as recommended by the manufacturer.~~

~~5.7.2.1.6.1 — Air Release Valve~~

The manual air release valve of the filter shall be opened as necessary to remove any air that collects inside of the filter as well as following each backwash.

5.7.2.1.7 Filtration Enhancing Products

Products used to enhance filter performance shall be used according to manufacturers' recommendations.

5.7.2.2 Precoat Filters

5.7.2.2.1 Appropriate

The appropriate media type and quantity as recommended by the filter manufacturer shall be used.

5.7.2.2.1.1 Approved

The media shall be listed and labeled ~~certified~~ to NSF/ANSI 50 -by an ANSI-accredited certification organization for use in the filter.

5.7.2.2.2 Return to the PoolPrecoating

Precoating of the filters shall be required in closed loop (*precoat*) mode to minimize the potential for media or debris to be returned to the POOL unless filters are listed and

~~labeled certified~~ to NSF/ANSI 50 by an ANSI-accredited certification organization to return water to the POOL during the precoat process.

5.7.2.2.3 Operation

Filter operation shall be per ~~manufacturer's instructions, manufacturer and certified to NSF/ANSI 50 by an ANSI-accredited certification organization.~~

5.7.2.2.3.1 Uninterrupted Flow

Flow through the filter shall not be interrupted when switching from precoat mode to filtration mode, ~~which could result based on the order of opening and closing valves~~ unless the filters are ~~listed and labeled certified~~ to NSF/ANSI 50 by an ANSI-accredited certification organization to return water to the POOL during the precoat process.

5.7.2.2.3.1.1 Flow Interruption

When a flow interruption occurs on precoat filters not designed to bump, the media must be backwashed out of the filter and a new precoat established according to the manufacturer's recommendations.

5.7.2.2.3.2 Maximum Precoat Media Load

Systems designed to flow to waste while precoating shall use the maximum recommended precoat media load permitted by the filter manufacturer to account for media lost to the waste stream during precoating.

5.7.2.2.4 Cleaning

Backwashing or cleaning of filters shall be performed at a differential pressure increase over the initial clean filter pressure as recommended by the filter manufacturer unless the system can no longer achieve the design flow rate.

~~The filter shall be cleaned/backwashed per manufacturer's instructions.~~

5.7.2.2.5 Continuous Feed Equipment

Continuous filter media feed equipment tank agitators shall run continuously.

5.7.2.2.5.1 Batch Application

Filter media feed may also be performed via batch application.

5.7.2.2.6 Bumping

Bumping a precoat filter shall be performed in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations.

5.7.2.2.7 Filter Media

~~Precoat filter media shall meet the filter manufacturer's recommendation for POOL use and shall be certified to NSF/ANSI 50 by an ANSI-accredited certification organization.~~

5.7.2.2.7.1 Diatomaceous Earth

Diatomaceous earth (DE), when used, shall be added to precoat filters in the amount of ~~1 to 2 pounds (0.45 to 0.91 kg) per 10 square feet of filtration surface area unless more is~~ recommended by the filter manufacturer and in accordance with the specifications for the filter listing and labeling is certified to NSF/ANSI 50 by an ANSI-accredited certification organization ~~for a higher precoat media dosage rate.~~

5.7.2.2.7.2 Perlite

Perlite, when used, shall be added to precoat filters in ~~the a minimum amount of 0.5 to 1 pounds (0.23 to 0.45 kg) per 10 ft² (0.93 m²) of filtration surface area unless more is~~ recommended by the filter manufacturer and in accordance with the specifications for the filter listing and labeling is certified to NSF/ANSI 50 by an ANSI-accredited certification organization ~~for a higher precoat media dosage rate.~~

5.7.2.3 Cartridge Filters

5.7.2.3.1 NSF Standards

Cartridge filters shall be operated in accordance with the filter manufacturer's recommendation and ~~shall be listed and labeled certified~~ to NSF/ANSI 50 by an ANSI-accredited certification organization.

5.7.2.3.2 Filtration Rates

The maximum operating filtration rate for any surface-type cartridge filter shall not:

- 1) Exceed the lesser of either the manufacturer's recommended filtration rate or 0.375 gallons per minute per square foot (0.26 L/s/m²) or
- 2) ~~Drop~~ below the design flow rate required to achieve the turnover rate for the aquatic venue.

5.7.2.3.3 Filter Elements

Active filter cartridges shall be exchanged with clean filter cartridges at a differential pressure increase over and fouled cartridges cleaned in accordance with the initial clean filter pressure as recommended by the filter manufacturer unless the system can no longer achieve the design flow ~~manufacturer's recommendations whenever the filtration rate drops below 0.30 gallons per minute per square foot (0.20 L/s/m²).~~

5.7.2.3.3.1 Cleaning Procedure

The filter housing and filter cartridge shall be cleaned per manufacturer's recommendation.

5.7.2.3.3.1.1 No Manufacturer Procedure

~~If there is~~ When the filter element manufacturer has no established manufacturer cleaning procedure, clean per the cleaning procedures found in MAHC Section 5.7.2.3.3.2 and 5.7.2.3.3.3 shall be used.

5.7.2.3.3.2 Filter Housing Cleaning

The following procedures shall be implemented to clean the filter housing when no manufacturer instructions are established:

- 1) Drain filter housing to waste;
- 2) Remove the filter cartridges from the housing;
- 3) Clean the inside of the filter housing with a brush and mild detergent to remove biofilms and algae;
- 4) Rinse thoroughly; and
- 5) Mist the filter housing walls with CHLORINE bleach at a 1:10 dilution.

5.7.2.3.3.3 Filter Cartridge Cleaning

The following procedures ~~outlined in this section~~ shall be implemented to clean the filter ~~cartridge~~cartridges when ~~there is no cleaning procedure established by the filter manufacturer~~ instructions are established.

5.7.2.3.3.3.1 Rinse Thoroughly

The cartridge shall be rinsed ~~thoroughly to remove as much dirt and debris as possible by washing inside and out~~ with a ~~garden hose and~~ spray nozzle.

5.7.2.3.3.3.2 Pressure Washer

A pressure washer shall not be used to clean~~backwash~~ cartridge filters.

5.7.2.3.3.3.3 Degrease

Cartridge filters shall be degreased each time they are cleaned per the procedures outlined in this section.

5.7.2.3.3.3.4 Soak

~~The~~Soak the cartridge shall be soaked overnight in one of the following solutions:

- 1) A cartridge filter cleaner/degreaser per instructions on product label, or
- 2) A solution of water with one cup~~4 Cup~~ of tri-sodium phosphate (*TSP*) per five~~5~~ gallons of water, or
- 3) One~~4~~ Cup of automatic dishwashing detergent per five~~5~~ gallons of water.-

5.7.2.3.3.3.5 Acid

Muriatic acid or products with acid in them shall never be used prior to degreasing.

5.7.2.3.3.3.6 Rinse

The ~~filter cartridge~~~~degreased~~ cartridges shall be removed from the degreaser solution and rinsed thoroughly~~rinsed~~.

5.7.2.3.3.3.7 Sanitize

The filter cartridge shall be SANITIZED by soaking for one hour in a bleach solution made by mixing one~~To remove or prevent biofilms, algae, and bacteria growing on the~~

~~cartridge, 1 quart of household bleach shall be added per five5 gallons (18.9 L) of clean water and soak one hour before rinsing.~~

5.7.2.3.3.3.85 Rinse

~~After soaking for one hour, the sanitized filterThe clean cartridge shall be removed from the sanitization soak water and rinsed thoroughly with a hose.~~

5.7.2.3.3.3.6 Dry

~~After the filter is cleaned, degreased, and SANITIZED, it shall be allowed to dry completely before being reintroduced to the POOL.~~

5.7.2.3.4 Spare Cartridge

One full set of spare cartridges shall be maintained on site in a clean and dry condition.

5.7.3 Disinfection and pH Control

5.7.3.1 Primary Disinfectants

~~Acceptable Disinfectants~~

Only the primary disinfectants outlined in MAHC Section 5.7.3.1 of this CODE shall be acceptable for use in AQUATIC VENUES.

5.7.3.1.1 Chlorine (~~Hypochlorites~~Ca/Na/Li Hypochlorite)

5.7.3.1.1.1 EPA Registered

Only CHLORINE products that are EPA-REGISTERED for use as sanitizers or disinfectants in AQUATIC VENUES or SPAS in the United States are permitted.—

5.7.3.1.1.2 Minimum FAC Concentrations

Minimum FAC concentrations shall be maintained at all times in all areas as follows in MAHC Sections 5.7.3.1.1.2.1 to 5.7.3.1.1.2.3.—

~~5.7.3.1.1.2.1 Not Using Cyanuric Acid~~

~~AQUATIC AQUATIC VENUES not using cyanuric acid shall maintain a minimum FAC concentration of: 1.0 PPM (MG/L).~~—

~~5.7.3.1.1.2.2 Using Cyanuric Acid~~

~~AQUATIC AQUATIC VENUES using cyanuric acid shall maintain a minimum FAC concentration of: 2.0 PPM (MG/L).~~—

5.7.3.1.1.2.3 Spas

SPAS shall maintain a minimum FAC concentration of: 3.0 PPM (MG/L).—

5.7.3.1.1.3 ~~Stagnant Water Lines~~Waterslides

Recirculated AQUATIC FEATURE water/Waterslide lines susceptible to holding stagnant water shall maintain disinfectant throughout the lines as per MAHC Section 5.7.3.1.1.2.—

5.7.3.1.1.4 Consistent with Label Instructions

FAC concentrations shall be consistent with label instructions.

5.7.3.1.1.5 Maximum FAC Concentrations

Maximum FAC concentrations shall not exceed 10.0 PPM (MG/L) at any time the AQUATIC VENUE is open to bathers.

5.7.3.1.2 Bromine

5.7.3.1.2.1 EPA Registered

Only bromine products that are EPA-REGISTERED for use as sanitizers or DISINFECTANTS in AQUATIC VENUES or SPAS in the United States shall be permitted.

Note: Bromine-based disinfectants may be applied to AQUATIC VENUES and SPAS through the addition of an organic bromine compound (1,3-Dibromo-5,5-dimethylhydantoin (DBDMH) or 1-bromo-3-chloro-5,5-dimethylhydantoin (BCDMH)).

5.7.3.1.2.2 Minimum Bromine Concentrations

Minimum bromine concentrations shall be maintained at all times in all areas as follows:

- 1) All AQUATIC VENUES: 3.0 PPM (MG/L), ~~and~~
- 2) SPAS: 4.00 PPM (MG/L).—

~~5.7.3.1.3 Stabilizers~~

5.7.3.1.3.1 Cyanuric Acid (CYA)

Cyanuric acid or stabilized CHLORINE products shall ***not*** be used at the following for all new construction, SUBSTANTIAL ALTERATION, or DISINFECTION equipment replacements after the effective date of this CODE:

- 1) SPAS; and
- 2) THERAPY POOLS.

5.7.3.1.3.1.1 Replacement Times

These AQUATIC VENUES shall no longer use cyanuric acid or stabilized CHLORINE products no later than ~~four~~4 years after adoption of this CODE.

5.7.3.1.3.1.2 Outdoor-Aquatic Venues

The cyanuric acid level at all AQUATIC VENUES shall remain at or below 100 PPM (MG/L).

5.7.3.1.4 Compressed Chlorine Gas

As per MAHC Section 4.7.3.2.4.1, use of compressed CHLORINE gas shall be prohibited for new construction and after SUBSTANTIAL ALTERATION to existing AQUATIC FACILITIES.

5.7.3.1.4.1 Safety Requirements

Facilities using compressed CHLORINE gas shall provide SAFETY precautions per the following MAHC sub-sections.

5.7.3.1.4.1.1 Separate Enclosure

The chlorinators and any cylinders containing CHLORINE gas used therewith shall be housed in an ENCLOSURE separated from other EQUIPMENT ROOMS, including the swimming POOL, corridors, dressing rooms and other space with a door so installed as to prevent gas leakage and equipped with an inspection window.

5.7.3.1.4.1.2 Secured

CHLORINE cylinders shall be secured from falling.

5.7.3.1.4.1.3 Cylinders in Use

Cylinders in use shall be secured on a suitable platform scale.

5.7.3.1.4.1.4 Vent to Exterior

A separate vent opening to the exterior shall be provided.

5.7.3.1.4.1.5 Fan

An electric motor-driven fan shall take suction from near the floor level of the ENCLOSURE and discharge at a suitable point to the exterior above the ground level.

5.7.3.1.4.1.5.1 Fan Switch

The fan switch shall be able to be operated from outside of the ENCLOSURE.

5.7.3.1.4.1.6 Trained Operator

Any person who operates such chlorinating equipment shall be trained in its use.

5.7.3.1.4.1.7 Stop Use

Facilities shall stop the use of CHLORINE gas if specific SAFETY equipment and training requirements, along with local CODE considerations, cannot be met.

5.7.3.1.5 *Salt Electrolytic Chlorine Generators, Brine Electrolytic Chlorine or Bromine Generators*

5.7.3.1.5.1 Pool Grade Salt

Only POOL grade salt shall be used.

5.7.3.1.5.2 Maintained

The saline content of the POOL water Salt levels shall be maintained inper the required range specified by theequipment manufacturer.

5.7.3.1.5.3 Cleaning

Cleaning of electrolytic plates shall be performed as recommended by the manufacturer.

5.7.3.1.5.4 Corrosion Protection

Corrosion protection systems shall be maintained in the POOL basin.

5.7.3.2 Secondary or Supplemental Treatment Systems**5.7.3.2.1 Ultraviolet Light****5.7.3.2.1.1 Operate with Recirculation System**

UV systems shall only operate while the RECIRCULATION SYSTEM is operating.—

5.7.3.2.1.2 3-Loglog Inactivation

Secondary UV systems shall be operated and maintained not to exceed the maximum validated flow rate and meet or exceed the minimum validated output intensity needed to achieve the required dose for a 3-log inactivation.

5.7.3.2.1.3 Free Available Chlorine and Bromine Levels

Use of UV does not modify any other water quality requirements.

5.7.3.2.1.4 Calibrated Sensors

UV sensors shall be calibrated at a frequency in accordance with manufacturer recommendations.

5.7.3.2.1.5 Records

Records of calibration shall be maintained by the facility.—

~~**5.7.3.2.1.6 Record and Store Data**~~

~~The equipment shall be capable of recording and storing operational data within internal memory in order to meet record keeping requirements as defined elsewhere in this CODE.—~~

5.7.3.2.2 Ozone**5.7.3.2.2.1 3-Loglog Inactivation**

Ozone systems shall be operated and maintained according to the manufacturer's instructions to maintain the required design performance.

5.7.3.2.2.2 Residual Ozone Concentration

Residual ozone concentration in the AQUATIC VENUE water shall remain below 0.1 PPM (MG/L).

5.7.3.2.2.3 Free Available Chlorine and Bromine Levels

Use of ozone does not modify any other water quality requirements.

5.7.3.2.2.4 Standard Operating Manual

A printed STANDARD operating manual shall be provided containing information on the operation and maintenance of the ozone generating equipment, including the responsibilities of workers in an emergency.

5.7.3.2.2.5 Employees Trained

All employees shall be properly trained in the operation and maintenance of the equipment.-

5.7.3.2.3 Copper / Silver Ions

5.7.3.2.3.1 EPA Registered

Only those systems that are EPA-REGISTERED for use as sanitizers or disinfectants in AQUATIC VENUES OR SPAS in the United States are permitted.

5.7.3.2.3.2 Concentrations

Copper and silver concentrations shall not exceed 1.3 PPM (MG/L)ppm for copper and 0.10 PPM (MG/L)ppm for silver for use as disinfectants in AQUATIC VENUES and SPAS in the United States.

5.7.3.2.3.3 Free Available Chlorine and Bromine Levels

FREE AVAILABLE CHLORINE or bromine levels shall be maintained in accordance with MAHC Section 5.7.3.1.1 or 5.7.3.1.2, respectively.

5.7.3.3 Other Sanitizers, Disinfectants, or Chemicals

Other sanitizers, disinfectants, or chemicals used must:

- 1) Be U.S. EPA-REGISTERED under the Federal Insecticide, Fungicide, and Rodenticide Act (FIFRA) and,
- 1)2) Not-not create a hazardous condition or compromise disinfectant efficacy when used with required bromine or CHLORINE concentrations, and. Water quality must still meet all criteria set forth in this CODE.
- 3) Not interfere with water quality measures meeting all criteria set forth in this CODE.

5.7.3.3.1 Chlorine Dioxide

CHLORINE dioxide shall only be used for remediation for water quality issues when the AQUATIC VENUE is closed and BATHERS are not present.

5.7.3.3.1.1 Safety Considerations

SAFETY training and SAFETY precautions related to use of CHLORINE dioxide shall be in place.

5.7.3.3.2 Clarifiers, Flocculants, Defoamers

Clarifiers, flocculants, and defoamers shall be used per manufacturer's instructions.

5.7.3.4 pH**5.7.3.4.1 pH levels**

The pH of the water shall be maintained between 7.2 and 7.8.

5.7.3.4.2 Approved Substances

Approved substances for pH adjustment shall include but not be limited to muriatic (hydrochloric) acid, sodium bisulfate, carbon dioxide, sulfuric acid, sodium bicarbonate, and soda ash.

5.7.3.5 Feed Equipment**5.7.3.5.1 Acceptable Chemical Delivery**

Acceptable disinfectant and pH control chemicals shall be delivered through an automatic chemical feed system upon adoption of this code.

5.7.3.5.1.1 Dedicated and Labeled Components

All chemical feed ~~system components~~systems must be dedicated to a single chemical and clearly labeled to prevent the introduction of incompatible chemicals. ~~They shall:~~

5.7.3.5.1.2 Installed and Interlocked

Chemical feed system components shall be installed and interlocked so it cannot operate when the RECIRCULATION SYSTEM is in low or no flow circumstances as per MAHC Section 4.7.3.2.1.3.

5.7.3.5.1.3 Fail Proof Safety Features

Chemical feed system components shall incorporate failure-proof features so the chemicals cannot feed directly into the AQUATIC VENUE, the venue piping system not associated with the RECIRCULATION SYSTEM, source, water supply system, or area within proximity of the AQUATIC VENUE ~~DECK~~ENCLOSURE under any type of failure, low flow, or interruption of operation of the equipment to prevent BATHER exposure to high concentrations of AQUATIC VENUE treatment chemicals.

5.7.3.5.1.4 Maintained

All chemical feed equipment shall be maintained in good working condition.

5.7.3.5.2 Chemical Feeders

Chemical feeders shall be installed such that they are not over chemical STORAGE containers, other feeders, or electrical equipment.

5.7.3.5.32 Dry Chemical Feeders

Chemicals shall be kept dry to avoid clumping and potential feeder plugging for mechanical gate or rotating screw feeders.

5.7.3.5.32.1 Cleaned and Lubricated

The feeder mechanism shall be cleaned and lubricated to maintain a reliable feed system.

5.7.3.5.43 Venturi Inlet

Adequate pressure shall be maintained at the venturi INLET to create the vacuum needed to draw the chemical into the RECIRCULATION SYSTEM.

5.7.3.5.54 Erosion Feeders

Erosion feeders shall only have chemicals added that are approved by the manufacturer.

5.7.3.5.54.1 Opened

A feeder shall only be opened after the internal pressure is relieved by a bleed valve.

5.7.3.5.54.2 Maintained

Erosion feeders shall be maintained according the manufacturer's instructions.

5.7.3.5.65 Liquid Solution Feeders

For liquid solution feeders, spare feeder tubes (*or tubing*) shall be maintained onsite for peristaltic pumps.

5.7.3.5.76 Checked Daily

Tubing and connections shall be checked on a daily basis for leaks.

5.7.3.5.76.1 Routed

All chemical tubing that runs through areas where staff walk shall be routed in PVC piping to support the tubing and to prevent leaks. ~~in areas where operating staff walk.~~

5.7.3.5.76.1.1 Size

The double containment PVC pipe shall be of sufficient size to allow for easy replacement of tubing.

5.7.3.5.76.1.2 Turns

Any necessary turns in the piping shall be designed so as to prevent kinking of the tubing.

5.7.3.5.87 Gas Feed Systems

The Chlorine Institute requirements for safe STORAGE and use of CHLORINE gas shall be followed.

5.7.3.5.98 Carbon Dioxide

Carbon dioxide feed shall be permitted to reduce pH.

5.7.3.5.98.1 Controlled

Carbon dioxide feed shall be controlled using a gas regulator.

5.7.3.5.98.2 Alarm Monitor

CO₂/O₂ monitor and alarm shall be maintained in working condition.—

5.7.3.5.98.3 Forced Ventilation

Carbon dioxide is heavier than air, so forced ventilation shall be maintained in the STORAGE room.

5.7.3.6 Testing for Water Circulation and Quality**5.7.3.6.1 Available**

WATER QUALITY TESTING DEVICES (*WQTDs*) for the measurement of disinfectant residual, pH, alkalinity, CYA (*if used*), and temperature, at a minimum, shall be available on site.

5.7.3.6.1.1 Expiration Dates

WQTDs utilizing reagents shall be checked for expiration at every use and the date recorded.—

5.7.3.6.2 Store

WQTDs shall be stored in accordance with manufacturer's instructions. -

5.7.3.6.3 Temperature

Chemical testing reagents shall be maintained at proper manufacturer specified temperatures.—

5.7.3.6.4 Calibration

WQTDs that require calibration shall be calibrated in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and the date of calibration recorded.-

5.7.3.7 Automated Controllers and Equipment Monitoring**5.7.3.7.1 Use of Controller**

A automated controller capable of measuring the disinfectant residual (*FREE AVAILABLE chlorine or bromine*) or surrogate such as ORP) shall be used to maintain the disinfectant residual in AQUATIC VENUES as outlined in MAHC Section 4.7.3.2.8.

5.7.3.7.1.1 Installed

An AUTOMATED CONTROLLER shall be required within one year from time of adoption of this CODE.

5.7.3.7.1.2 Interlocked

AUTOMATED CONTROLLERS shall be interlocked per MAHC Section 4.7.3.2.1.3 upon adoption of this code if existing or upon installation if not existing.

5.7.3.7.2 Sampling

The sample line for all probes shall be upstream from all primary, secondary, and supplemental DISINFECTION injection ports or devices.

5.7.3.7.3 Monitor

AUTOMATED CONTROLLERS shall be monitored at the start of the operating day to ensure proper functioning. –

5.7.3.7.3.12 In Person

AUTOMATED CONTROLLERS shall be monitored in person by visual observation.-

5.7.3.7.4 Activities

MONITORING shall include activities recommended by manufacturers, including but not limited to alerts and leaks.-

5.7.3.7.5 Replacement Parts

Only manufacturer-approved OEM replacement parts shall be used.–

5.7.3.7.6 Calibration

AUTOMATED CONTROLLERS shall be calibrated per manufacturer directions.

5.7.3.7.7 Ozone System

When an ozone system is utilized as a SECONDARY DISINFECTION SYSTEM, the system~~Ozone Systems~~ shall be monitored and data recorded at a frequency consistent with MAHC Table 5.7.3.7.7.-

Table 5.7.3.7.7: Ozone System Monitoring Frequency

<i>Parameter</i>	<i>Monitoring Frequency</i>	<i>Recording Frequency</i>
ORP	Continuous	Every 4 hours
Control System Indicating O ₃ Being Created	Continuous	Every 4 Hours
Operational Indicators in Range	Continuous	Every 4 hours
O ₃ Within 6 inches of Aquatic Venue Water Surface	Annual	Annual

5.7.3.7.7.1 Other Testing

At the time the ozone generating equipment is installed, again after 24 hours of operation, and annually thereafter, the air space within six inches of the AQUATIC VENUE water shall be tested to determine compliance of less than 0.1 PPM (mg/L) gaseous ozone.

5.7.3.7.7.1.1 Results

Results of the test shall be maintained on site for review by the AHJ.

<i>Parameter</i>	<i>Monitoring Frequency</i>	<i>Recording Frequency</i>
Power Draw	Continuous	Every 4 hours
ORP	Continuous	Every 4 Hours

5.7.3.7.8 UV Systems

When a UV system is utilized for secondary disinfection, the systems shall be monitored and data recorded at a frequency consistent with MAHC Table 5.7.3.7.8.–

Table 5.7.3.7.8: UV System Monitoring and Calibration Frequency

<i>Parameter</i>	<i>Monitoring Frequency</i>	<i>Recording Frequency</i>
Flow Rate	Continuous	Every 4 Hours
Intensity	Continuous	Every 4 Hours
Water Temperature <i>(MP Medium Pressure)</i>	Continuous	Daily
Set Point for Intensity	Continuous	Daily
UV Lamp On/Off Cycles	Continuous	Weekly <i>(Total Cycles/Week)</i>
Iron, Calcium Hardness	Weekly <i>(If Fouling is Prevalent)</i>	Weekly
UVT (UV Transmittance) Analyzer Calibration	Weekly	Weekly
Calibration of Intensity	Annual	At Time of Calibration
Calibration of Flow Meter	Per Manufacturer's Requirements	At Time of Calibration

5.7.3.7.9 UV Alarm Testing and Maintenance

The automated UV shut-down alarm required in MAHC Section

<i>Parameter</i>	<i>Monitoring Frequency</i>	<i>Recording Frequency</i>
Power Draw	Continuous	Every 4 hours
Flow rate	Continuous	Every 4 hours
Set-Point Intensity	Continuous	Every 4 hours
Water Temperature (MP Medium Pressure)	Continuous	Daily
UV Lamp On/Off Cycles	Continuous	Weekly (Total cycles/week)
Iron, Calcium hardness	Weekly (if fouling is prevalent)	Weekly
UVT (UV Transmittance) Analyzer Calibration	Weekly	Weekly
Calibration of Intensity	Annual	At time of calibration
Calibration of Flow Meter	Per manufacturer's requirements	At time of calibration

5.7.4.7.3.3.7 shall be tested weekly and maintained as needed.

5.7.4- Water Sample Collection and Testing

5.7.4.1 Sample Collection

The QUALIFIED OPERATOR shall ~~ensure~~acquire a water sample is acquired for testing from the in-line sample port when available as per MAHC Section 5.7.5.-

5.7.4.1.1 Same Volume

If an AQUATIC VENUE has more than one RECIRCULATION SYSTEM, the same sample volume shall be collected from each in-line sample port and tested separately.-

5.7.4.1.2 No Port

If no in-line sample port is available, the QUALIFIED OPERATOR shall ~~ensure~~acquire water samples from the ~~AQUATIC VENUE~~ are acquired~~POOL~~ according to MAHC Section 5.7.4.3.-

5.7.4.2 Routine Samples

If routine samples are collected from in-line sample ports, the QUALIFIED OPERATOR shall also ~~ensure~~acquire water samples are acquired from the bulk water of the ~~AQUATIC VENUE~~POOL at least once per day.

5.7.4.2.1 Midday Collection

Daily bulk water samples shall be collected in the middle of the ~~AQUATIC VENUE~~POOL operational day, according to the procedures in MAHC Section 5.7.4.3. -

5.7.4.2.2 Compared

Water quality data from these ~~AQUATIC VENUE~~POOL samples shall be compared to data obtained from in-line port samples to assess potential water quality variability in the ~~AQUATIC VENUE~~POOL.-

5.7.4.3 Bulk Water Sample

The QUALIFIED OPERATOR shall ~~ensure~~use the following procedure ~~is used~~outlined in MAHC sections 5.7.4.3.1 to 5.7.4.3.5 for acquiring a water sample from bulk water of the POOL.

5.7.4.3.1 Obtain Sample Below Surface

All samples shall be obtained from a location with the following qualities:

- 1) ~~At~~ at least 18 inches (45.7 cm) below the surface of the water, and.-

A 5.7.4.3.2 Water Depth

- 2) ~~The sample shall be obtained from a section of the POOL that has a~~ water depth of between ~~three~~3 to ~~four~~4 feet (91.4 cm to 1.~~222~~222 m) when available, and.-

A 5.7.4.3.3 Between Inlets

- 3) ~~The sample shall be obtained from a~~ location between water inlets.-

5.7.4.3.24 Rotate

Sampling locations shall rotate around the shallow end of the POOL.-

5.7.4.3.35 Deepest Area

The QUALIFIED OPERATOR shall ensure a sample includes a deep end sample ~~from include the deepest area of~~ the AQUATIC VENUE in the water sampling rotation once per week.-

5.7.4.43.3 Aquatic Venue Water Chemical Balance

5.7.4.43.3.1 Total Alkalinity Levels

Total alkalinity shall be maintained in the range of 60 to 180 PPM (mg/L).

5.7.4.43.3.2 Combined Chlorine (Chloramines)

The owner shall ensure the AQUATIC facility takes action to reduce the level of combined ~~Combined~~ chlorine (chloramines) in the water when the level exceeds ~~shall remain below~~ 0.4 PPM-(mg/L). Such actions may include but are not limited to:

- 1) Superchlorination;
- 2) Water exchange; or
- 3) Patron adherence to appropriate BATHER hygiene practices.

5.7.4.43.3.3 Calcium Hardness

Calcium hardness shall not exceed 1000 PPM (MG/L).

~~) and maintained per MAHC Section 5.7.4.4.~~

5.7.4.3.3.4 Algaecides

Algaecides may be used in an AQUATIC VENUE provided:

- 1) The product is labeled as an algaecide for AQUATIC VENUE or SPA use;
- 2) The product is used in strict compliance with label instructions; and,
- 3) The product is registered with the US EPA and applicable state agency.

5.7.4.53.4 Source (Fillfill) Water

5.7.4.3.4.1 Owner Responsibilities

The owner of a public AQUATIC VENUE, public SPA, or special use AQUATIC VENUE shall ensure that the water supply for the facility meets one of the following requirements:

- 1) The water comes from a public water system as defined by the applicable rules of the AHJ in which the facility is located; or
- 2) The water meets the requirements of the local AHJ for public water systems; or
- 3) The AHJ has approved an alternative water source for use in the AQUATIC FACILITY.-

5.7.4.6 Water Balance 4

Saturation Index for Aquatic Venues

5.7.4.4.1 Water Balance Determination

~~AQUATIC VENUE Water balance can be determined by using the Langelier SATURATION INDEX, Ryznar Stability Index, or other indices that are based on calculated values of:~~

- ~~1) total alkalinity,~~
- ~~2) pH,~~
- ~~3) calcium hardness,~~
- ~~4) total dissolved solids, and~~
- ~~5) water shall be chemicallytemperature.~~

~~5.7.4.4.2~~ **Langelier Saturation Index**

~~Maintaining individual values in the range allowed in this CODE will indicate balanced water using the Langelier SATURATION INDEX or other indices.~~

5.7.4.75 Water Temperature

5.7.4.75.1 Minimize Risk and Protect Safety

Water temperatures shall be considered and planned for based on risk, SAFETY, priority facility usage, and age of participants, while managing water quality concerns.

5.7.4.75.2 Maximum Temperature

The maximum temperature for an AQUATIC VENUE is 104° F (40°C).

5.7.5 Water Quality Chemical Testing Frequency

5.7.5.1 Chemical Levels

FREE AVAILABLE CHLORINE (FAC), combined available CHLORINE (CAC), or total bromine (TB), and pH shall be tested at all AQUATIC VENUES prior to opening each day.

5.7.5.2 Manual Disinfectant Feed System

~~For all AQUATIC VENUES using a manual DISINFECTANT feed system that delivers DISINFECTANT via a flow through erosion feeder or metering pump without an automated controller, FREE AVAILABLE CHLORINE or bromine FAC or TB and pH shall be tested prior to opening to the public and every two hours while open to the public. at all AQUATIC VENUES using a MANUAL DISINFECTANT FEED SYSTEM.~~

5.7.5.3 Automatic Disinfectant Feed System

~~For all AQUATIC VENUES using an automated disinfectant feed system, FAC (or TB) and pH shall be tested prior to opening and every four hours while open to the public. at all AQUATIC VENUES using an automated disinfectant feed system.~~

5.7.5.4 In-Line ORP Readings

In-line ORP readings, if such systems are installed, shall be recorded at the same time the FAC (or TB) and pH tests are performed.

5.7.5.5 Total Alkalinity

Total Alkalinity (TA) shall be tested weekly at all AQUATIC VENUES.-

5.7.5.6 Calcium Hardness

Calcium hardness shall be tested monthly at all AQUATIC VENUES.-

5.7.5.7 Cyanuric Acid

Cyanuric acid shall be tested monthly at all AQUATIC VENUES utilizing cyanuric acid.-

5.7.5.8 Saturation Index

The SATURATION INDEX shall be checked monthly.

5.7.5.8.1 Tested

Cyanuric acid shall be tested 24 hours after the addition of cyanuric acid to the AQUATIC VENUE.-

5.7.5.8.2 Stabilized Chlorine

If AQUATIC VENUES utilize stabilized CHLORINE as its primary disinfectant, the operator shall test cyanuric acid every two weeks.-

5.7.5.98 Total Dissolved Solids

Total dissolved solids (TDS) shall be tested quarterly at all AQUATIC VENUES.-

5.7.5.109 Water Temperature

For heated AQUATIC VENUES, water temperature shall be recorded at the same time the FAC (or TB) and pH tests are performed.-

5.7.5.1140 Salt

If in-line electrolytic chlorinators are used, salt levels shall be tested at least weekly or per manufacturer's instructions.

~~5.7.6 Water Clarity~~**~~5.12 Copper/Silver Systems7.6.1 Reference Point~~**

Copper and silver shall be tested daily at all AQUATIC VENUES utilizing copper/silver systems shall comply with MAHC Section 5.7.6 to serve as a supplemental treatment system.

5.7.6 Water Clarity**5.7.6.1 Water Clarity**

The reference point for assessing adequate water in a clarity.-

5.7.6.2 — Marker Tile

The AQUATIC VENUE ~~bottom~~ shall be sufficiently clear such that the bottom is visible while the water is static at all times the AQUATIC VENUE is open or available for use .-

5.7.6.12.1 Observation

To make this observation, a four inch by four inch 4-in x 4-in square (10.2 cm X 10.2 cm~~103 cm²~~) marker tile ~~or main suction outlet~~ in a contrasting color to the POOL ~~surface~~ shall be located at the deepest part of the POOL ~~floor~~.

5.7.6.2.2 — Pools Over 10 Feet Deep

For POOLS >10 ft deep, an 8-in x 8-in square (413 cm²) marker tile ~~or main suction outlet~~ in a contrasting color to the POOL ~~surface~~ shall be located at the deepest part of the POOL.—

5.7.6.1.2 — Pools Over Ten Feet Deep

For POOLS over ten feet (3.0 m) deep, an eight inch by eight inch square (20.3 X 20.3 cm) marker tile in a contrasting color to the POOL floor or main suction outlet shall be located at the deepest part of the POOL.

5.7.6.1.3 — No Marker Tile

In the absence of a marker tile or suction outlet, an alternate means of achieving the goal of observing the bottom of the POOL may be permitted.

5.7.6.2- Visible

This reference point shall be visible at all times at any point on the DECK up to 30 feet (9.1 m) away in a direct line of sight from the tile disc or main drain.—

5.7.6.23.1 Spas

~~For SPAS, this test shall be performed when the water is in a non-turbulent state and bubbles have been allowed to dissipate.~~

For SPAS, this test shall be performed when the water is in a non-turbulent state and bubbles have been allowed to dissipate.

5.8 Decks and Equipment**5.8.1 Spectator Areas****5.8.1.1 Cross-Connection Control****5.8.1.1.1- Deck Drains**

Cross connection devices ~~such as check valves~~ shall be in good working order, and shall be tested as required by the AHJ.

5.8.1.2 Materials !Slip Resistance**5.8.1.2.1 Clean and Good Repair**

Surfaces shall be clean and in good repair.

5.8.1.2.2 Risk Management

The finish and profile of DECK surfaces shall be maintained to prevent slips and falls.

5.8.1.2.3 Tripping Hazards

Tripping hazards shall be avoided.

5.8.1.2.3.1 Protect

If tripping hazards are present, they shall be repaired or promptly barricaded to protect PATRONS/employees.

5.8.1.3 Deck Size/Width

The perimeter deck shall be maintained clear of obstructions for at least a four foot (1.2 m) width around the entire pool unless otherwise allowed by this code.

5.8.2 Diving Boards and Platforms [N/A]**5.8.3 Starting Blocks****5.8.3.1 Competitive Training and Competition**

Starting platforms shall only be used for competitive swimming and training.

5.8.3.1.1 Supervision

Starting platforms shall only be used under the direct supervision of a coach or instructor.

5.8.3.1.2 Removed or Restricted

Starting platforms shall be removed, if possible, or prohibited from use during all recreational or non-competitive swimming activity by covering platforms with a manufacturer-supplied platform cover or with another means or device that is readily visible and clearly prohibits use.

5.8.4 PoolDeck Slides [N/A]**5.8.5 Lifeguard-and Safety Related Equipment****5.8.5.1 Equipment Inspection and Maintenance**

AQUATIC FACILITIES shall not be open to users unless the equipment listed under MAHC Section 5.8.5 is present and in a safe and working condition.

5.8.5.2 Safety Equipment Required at All Aquatic Facilities

5.8.5.2.1 Emergency Communication Equipment

5.8.5.2.1.1 Functioning Communication Equipment

The AQUATIC FACILITY shall have equipment for staff to communicate in cases of emergency.

5.8.5.2.1.2 Hard-Wired Telephone for 911 Call

The AQUATIC FACILITY or each AQUATIC VENUE, as necessary, shall have a functional telephone or other communication system or device that is hard wired and capable of directly dialing 911 or function as the emergency notification system.

5.8.5.2.1.3 Conspicuous and Easily Accessible

-The telephone or communication system or device shall be conspicuously provided and accessible to AQUATIC VENUE users ~~such that it can be reached immediately.~~

5.8.5.2.1.43 Alternate Communication Systems

Alternate functional systems ~~or devices~~, or communication processes are allowed with AHJ approval ~~of the regulatory authority~~ in situations when a hardwired telephone is not logistically sound, and an alternate means of communication is available, ~~which meet the requirements of MAHC Section 5.8.5.2.1.2.~~

5.8.5.2.2 First Aid Equipment

5.8.5.2.2.1 Location for First Aid

The AQUATIC FACILITY shall have designated locations for emergency and first aid equipment.

5.8.5.2.2.2 First Aid Supplies

An adequate supply of first aid supplies shall be continuously stocked and include, at a minimum, as follows:

- 1) A First Aid Guide,
- 2) Absorbent compress,
- 3) Adhesive bandages,
- 4) Adhesive tape,
- 5) Sterile pads,
- 6) Disposable gloves,
- 7) Scissors,
- 8) Elastic wrap,
- 9) Emergency blanket,
- 10) Resuscitation~~CPR~~ mask with one-way valve, and
- 11) Blood borne pathogen spill kit.

5.8.5.2.3 Signage

5.8.5.2.3.1 Sign Indicating First Aid Location

Signage shall be provided at the AQUATIC FACILITY or each AQUATIC VENUE, as necessary, which clearly identifies the following:

- 1) ~~First~~first aid location(s) ~~and~~
- 2) ~~Emergency~~emergency telephone(s) or approved communication system or device.

5.8.5.2.3.2 Emergency Dialing Instructions

A permanent sign providing emergency dialing directions and the AQUATIC FACILITY address shall be posted and maintained at the emergency telephone, system or device.

5.8.5.2.3.3 Management Contact Info

A permanent sign shall be conspicuously posted and maintained displaying contact information for emergency personnel and AQUATIC FACILITY management.

5.8.5.2.3.4 Hours of Operation

A sign shall be posted stating the following:

- 1) The operating hours of the AQUATIC FACILITY, and
- ~~1)2) Unauthorized stating that unauthorized~~ use of the AQUATIC FACILITY outside of these hours is prohibited.

5.8.5.3 Safety Equipment Required at ~~Aquatic~~Facilities with Lifeguards

5.8.5.3.1 UV Protection for Chairs and Stands

When a chair or stand is provided and QUALIFIED LIFEGUARDS can be exposed to ultraviolet radiation, the chair or stand shall be equipped with or in a location with protection from such ultraviolet radiation exposure.

5.8.5.3.2 Spinal Injury Board

At least one spinal injury board constructed of material easily SANITIZED/disinfected shall be provided.

5.8.5.3.2.1 Spinal Injury Board Components

The board shall be equipped with a head immobilizer and sufficient straps to immobilize a person to the spinal injury board.

5.8.5.3.3 Rescue Tube Immediately Available

Each QUALIFIED LIFEGUARD conducting PATRON surveillance with the responsibility of in-water rescue in less than three3 feet (0.9 m) of water shall have a rescue tube immediately available for use.

5.8.5.3.4 Rescue Tube on Person

Each QUALIFIED LIFEGUARD conducting PATRON surveillance in a water depth of ~~three~~ three feet (0.9 m) or greater shall have a rescue tube on his/her person in a rescue ready position.

5.8.5.3.5 Identifying Uniform

QUALIFIED LIFEGUARDS shall wear attire that readily identifies them as members of the AQUATIC FACILITY'S lifeguard staff.

5.8.5.3.6 Signal Device

A whistle or other signaling device shall be ~~worn by~~ ~~immediately available for~~ each QUALIFIED LIFEGUARD conducting PATRON surveillance for communicating to users and/or staff.

5.8.5.3.7 Sun Blocking Methods

All AQUATIC FACILITIES where QUALIFIED LIFEGUARDS can be exposed to ultraviolet (UV) radiation shall train lifeguards about the use of protective clothing, hats, sun-blocking umbrellas, and sunscreen application and re-application using or exceeding SPF Level 15 to protect exposed skin areas.

5.8.5.3.7.1 Lifeguards Responsible

QUALIFIED LIFEGUARDS are responsible for protecting themselves from UV radiation exposure and wearing appropriate sunglasses and sunscreen.

5.8.5.3.8 Polarized Sunglasses

When glare impacts the ability to see below the water's surface, QUALIFIED LIFEGUARDS shall wear polarized sunglasses while conducting ~~BATHERPATRON~~ surveillance.

5.8.5.3.9 Personal Protective Equipment

Personal protective devices including a ~~one-way valve~~-resuscitation mask with one-way valve and non-latex one-use disposable gloves shall be immediately available to all QUALIFIED LIFEGUARDS.

5.8.5.3.10 Rescue Throwing Device

AQUATIC FACILITIES with one QUALIFIED LIFEGUARD shall provide and maintain a U.S. Coast Guard-approved aquatic rescue throwing device as per the specifications of MAHC Section 5.8.5.4.1.

5.8.5.3.11 Reaching Pole

AQUATIC FACILITIES with one QUALIFIED LIFEGUARD shall provide and maintain a reaching pole as per the specifications of MAHC Section 5.8.5.4.2.

5.8.5.4 Safety Equipment and Signage Required at Aquatic Facilities without Lifeguards

5.8.5.4.1 Throwing Device

~~AQUATIC~~ VENUES whose depth exceeds ~~two~~ 2 feet (~~61.0 cm~~) of standing water shall provide and maintain a U.S. Coast Guard--approved aquatic rescue throwing device, with at least a quarter-inch (~~6.3 mm~~) thick rope whose length is 50 feet (15.2 m) or 1.5 times the width of the POOL, whichever is less.

5.8.5.4.1.1 Throwing Device Location

The rescue throwing device shall be located in the immediate vicinity to the AQUATIC VENUE and be accessible to BATHERS.

5.8.5.4.2 Reaching Pole

~~AQUATIC~~ VENUES whose depth exceeds ~~two~~ 2 feet (~~61 cm~~) of standing water shall provide and maintain a reaching pole of 12 foot (3.7 m) to 16 foot (4.9 m) in length, non-telescopic, ~~non-conductive~~, light in weight, and with a securely attached Shepherd's Crook with an aperture of at least 18 inches (45.7 cm).

5.8.5.4.2.1 Reaching Pole Location

The reaching pole shall be located in the immediate vicinity to the AQUATIC VENUE and be accessible to BATHERS and PATRONS.

5.8.5.4.2.2 Non-Conductive Material

Reaching poles provided by the AQUATIC FACILITY after the adoption date of this code shall be of non-conductive material.

5.8.5.4.3 CPR Posters

Cardiopulmonary Resuscitation (CPR) posters that are up to date with latest CPR programs and protocols shall be posted conspicuously at all times.

5.8.5.4.4 Imminent Hazard Sign

A sign shall be posted outlining the ~~required~~ IMMIDENT HEALTH HAZARDS, which require AQUATIC VENUE OR AQUATIC FACILITY HAZARD closure ~~items of an AQUATIC FACILITY~~ as defined in this CODE per MAHC 6.6.3.14 and a telephone number to report ~~problem~~ problem to the owner/operator.

5.8.5.4.5 Additional Signage ~~Sign for Conditions when Qualified Lifeguard is Required~~

For any AQUATIC VENUE with standing water, a sign shall be posted signifying a QUALIFIED LIFEGUARD is not on duty and that the following rules apply:

- 1) Persons under the age of 14 cannot be in the ~~AQUATIC VENUE~~ facility without direct adult supervision meaning ~~children~~ the child shall be in adult view at all times, and
- 2) Youth and childcare groups, training, lifeguard courses, and swim lessons are not allowed without a QUALIFIED LIFEGUARD providing PATRON surveillance.

5.8.6 Barriers and Enclosures

5.8.6.1 General Requirements

All required BARRIERS and ENCLOSURES shall be maintained to prevent unauthorized entry to the protected space.

5.8.6.2 Construction Requirements (N/A)

5.8.6.3 Gates and Doors

5.8.6.3.1 Self-Closing and Latching

All primary public access gates or doors serving as part of an ENCLOSURE shall have functional self-closing and self-latching closures.

5.8.6.3.1.1 Exception

Gates or doors used solely for after-hours maintenance shall remain locked at all times when not in use by staff.

5.8.6.3.1.2 Propping Open

Required self-closing and self-latching gates or doors serving as part of a guarded ENCLOSURE may be maintained in the open position when the AQUATIC VENUE is open and staffed as required.

5.9 Filter/Equipment Room

5.9.1 Chemical Storage

5.9.1.1 Local Codes

Chemical STORAGE shall be in compliance with local building and fire CODES.

5.9.1.2- OSHA and EPA

Chemical handling shall be in compliance with OSHA and EPA regulations.

5.9.1.3 Safety Data Sheets ~~MSDS~~

For each chemical, STORAGE, handling and use of the chemical shall be in compliance with the manufacturer's ~~Material Data~~ Safety ~~Data~~ Sheets (~~SDS~~~~MSDS~~) and labels.

5.9.1.4- Access Prevention

~~AQUATIC~~~~AQUATIC~~ VENUE chemicals shall be stored to prevent access by unauthorized individuals.

5.9.1.5- Protected

~~AQUATIC~~~~AQUATIC~~ VENUE chemicals shall be stored so that they are protected from getting wet.

5.9.1.6 No Mixing

~~AQUATIC~~ VENUE chemicals shall be stored so that if the packages were to leak, no mixing of incompatible materials would occur.

5.9.1.6.1 ~~SDS Consulted~~ **MSDS**

~~Material Data~~ Safety ~~Data~~ Sheets (~~SDS~~ **MSDS**) shall be consulted for incompatibilities.

5.9.1.7 Ignition Sources

Possible ignition sources ~~(e.g., welding equipment)~~, including but not limited to gasoline, diesel, natural gas, or gas-powered equipment such as lawn mowers, motors, grills, POOL heaters, or portable stoves shall not be stored or installed in the CHEMICAL STORAGE ~~SPACE~~ **AREA**.

5.9.1.8- Smoking

Smoking shall be prohibited in the CHEMICAL STORAGE ~~SPACE~~ **AREA**.

5.9.1.9- Lighting

Lighting shall be at minimum 30 footcandles (323 lux) to allow operators to read labels on containers throughout the CHEMICAL STORAGE ~~SPACE~~ **area** and pump room.

5.9.1.10- PPE

Personal Protective Equipment (*PPE*) shall be available as indicated on the chemical ~~SDS~~ **MSDS's**.

5.9.1.11 Storage

Chemicals shall be stored away from direct sunlight, temperature extremes, and high humidity.

5.9.1.12 Single Container

A single container of a particular chemical that has been opened and that is currently in use in the pump room may be kept in a staging area of the pump room only if the chemical(s) will be protected from exposure to heat and moisture.

5.9.1.13 Separate

The CHEMICAL STORAGE ~~SPACE~~ **area** shall be separate from the EQUIPMENT ROOM.

5.9.1.13.1 **Waiver**

For AQUATIC FACILITIES that do not currently have a CHEMICAL STORAGE ~~SPACE~~ **AREA** separate from the EQUIPMENT ROOM, this requirement may be waived at the discretion of the local public health and/or fire officials if the chemicals are protected from exposure to heat and moisture and no imminent health or SAFETY threats are identified.

5.9.1.14 Warning Signs

Warning signs in compliance with NFPA or HMIS ratings shall be posted on CHEMICAL STORAGE SPACEAREA doors.

5.9.2 Chemical Handling

5.9.2.1 Identity

Containers of chemicals shall be labeled, tagged, or marked with the identity of the material and a statement of the hazardous effects of the chemical according to OSHA and/or EPA materials labeling requirements.

5.9.2.1.1 Labeling

All AQUATIC VENUE chemical containers shall be labeled according to OSHA and/or EPA materials labeling requirements.

5.9.2.2- NSF Standard

The chemical equipment used in controlling the quality of water shall be listed and labeled/certified to NSF/ANSI 50 by an ANSI-accredited certification organization and used only in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

5.9.2.3 Measuring Devices

Chemicals shall be measured using a dedicated measuring device where applicable.

5.9.2.3.1 Clean and Dry

These measuring devices shall be clean, dry, and constructed of material compatible with the chemical to be measured to prevent the introduction of incompatible chemicals.

5.9.2.4 Chemical Addition Methods

5.9.2.4.1 Automatically Introduced

DISINFECTION and pH control chemicals shall be automatically introduced through the RECIRCULATION SYSTEM.

5.9.2.4.1.1 Manual Addition

SUPERCHLORINATION or shock chemicals and other POOL chemicals other than DISINFECTION and pH control may be added manually to the POOL.

5.9.2.4.1.2 Absence of Bathers

Chemicals added manually directly into the AQUATIC VENUE shall only be introduced in the absence of BATHERS.

5.9.2.4.2 Safety Requirements

Whenever required by the manufacturer, chemicals shall be diluted (*or mixed with water*) prior to application and as per the manufacturer's directions.

5.9.2.4.2.1 Added

Chemicals shall be added to water when diluting as opposed to adding water to a concentrated chemical.

5.9.2.4.2.2 Mixed

Each chemical shall be mixed in a separate, labeled container.

5.9.2.4.2.2.1 Never Mixed Together

Two or more chemicals shall never be mixed in the same dilution water.

5.10 Hygiene Facilities**5.10.1 General [N/A]****5.10.2 Location [N/A]****5.10.3 Bathhouse Design [N/A]****5.10.4 Plumbing Fixture Requirements****5.10.4.1 General Requirements****5.10.4.1.1- Cleaned and Sanitized**

HYGIENE FACILITY fixtures, dressing area fixtures, and furniture shall be cleaned and SANITIZED daily and more often if necessary with an EPA-~~REGISTERED~~approved product and more often if necessary to provide a clean and sanitary environment.

5.10.4.1.2 Mold and Mildew

HYGIENE FACILITY floors, walls, and ceilings shall be kept clean and free of visible mold and mildew.

5.10.4.1.3 Hand Wash Station

HAND WASH STATIONS shall include the following items:

- 1) Hand wash sink,
- 2) Adjacent soap with dispenser,
- 3) Hand drying device or paper towels and dispenser, and
- 4) Trash receptacle.

5.10.4.2 Cleansing Showers**5.10.4.2.1 Cleaned and Sanitized**

CLEANSING SHOWERS shall be cleaned and SANITIZED daily and more often if necessary with an EPA-~~REGISTERED~~approved product and more often if necessary to provide a clean and sanitary environment.

5.10.4.3 Rinse Showers

5.10.4.3.1 Cleaned

RINSE SHOWERS shall be cleaned daily and more often if necessary with an EPA-REGISTERED ~~approved~~ product and more often if necessary to provide a clean and sanitary environment.

5.10.4.3.2 Easy Access

RINSE SHOWERS shall be easily accessible.

5.10.4.3.3 Not Blocked

Equipment and furniture on the DECK shall not block access to RINSE SHOWERS.

5.10.4.3.4 No Soap

Soap dispensers and soap shall be prohibited at RINSE SHOWERS.

5.10.4.4 All Showers [N/A]

5.10.4.5 Diaper-Changing Stations

Diaper-changing stations are required in all AQUATIC FACILITIES upon adoption of this code per MAHC 4.5-10.4.5.1.

5.10.4.5.1 Hand Wash Sink Installed and Operational

The adjacent hand wash sink shall be installed and operational within **one** year from the date of the AHJ's adoption of the MAHC.

5.10.4.5.2 Cleaned

DIAPER-CHANGING STATIONS shall be cleaned and ~~disinfected~~SANITIZED daily and more often if necessary to provide a clean and sanitary environment.

5.10.4.5.2.1 Maintained

They shall be ~~maintained~~kept in good condition and free of visible contamination.

5.10.4.5.3 Disinfectant² Sanitizer

EPA-REGISTERED ~~disinfectant~~SANITIZER shall be provided in the form of either of the following:

- 1) A solution in a spray dispenser with paper towels and dispenser, or
- 2) ~~Wipes~~SANITIZER ~~wipes~~ contained within a dispenser.

5.10.4.5.3.1 Covers

If disposable DIAPER-CHANGING UNIT covers are provided in addition to ~~disinfectant~~SANITIZER, they shall cover the DIAPER-CHANGING UNIT surface during use and keep the unit in clean condition.

5.10.4.5.43 Portable Hand Wash Station

If a portable HAND WASH STATION is provided for use it shall be operational and maintained in good condition at all times.

5.10.4.6 Non-Plumbing Fixture Requirements**5.10.4.6.1 Paper Towels**

If paper towels are used for hand drying, a dispenser and paper towels shall be provided for use at HAND WASH STATIONS.

5.10.4.6.2 Soap

Soap dispensers shall be provided at HAND WASH STATIONS and CLEANSING SHOWERS and shall be kept full of liquid or granular soap.

5.10.4.6.2.1 Bar Soap

Bar soap shall be prohibited.

5.10.4.6.3 Trash

A minimum of one hands-free trash receptacle shall be provided in areas adjacent to hand washing sinks.

5.10.4.6.3.1 Trash Emptying

Trash receptacles shall be emptied daily and more often if necessary to provide a clean and sanitary environment.

5.10.4.6.4 Floor Coverings

Non-permanent floor coverings (*including but not limited to mats and racks*) shall be removable and maintained in accordance with MAHC Section 5.10.4.1.1.

5.10.4.6.4.1 Wood

Wooden racks, duckboards, and wooden mats shall beare prohibited on HYGIENE FACILITY and dressing area flooring.

5.10.4.7 Sharps**5.10.4.7.1 Biohazard Action Plan**

A biohazard action plan shall also be on file as required by local, state or federal regulations and as part of the AQUATIC FACILITY SAFETY PLAN.

5.10.4.7.2 Disposed

Sharps within approved containers shall be disposed of as needed by the AQUATIC FACILITY in accordance with local, state, or federal regulations.

5.10.5 Provision of Suits, Towels, and Shared Equipment

5.10.5.1 Towels

All towels provided by the AQUATIC FACILITY shall be washed with detergent in warm water, rinsed, and thoroughly dried at the warmest temperature listed on the fabric label after each use.

~~5.10.5.1.1 Washed and Dried~~

~~Towels shall be washed and thoroughly dried at the warmest temperature listed on the fabric label.~~

~~5.10.5.1.2 Suits~~

Any attireSuits provided by the AQUATIC FACILITY shall be washed in accordance with the fabric label or manufacturer's instructions.

5.10.5.2 Receptacles

Non-absorbent, easily cleanable receptacles shall be provided for collection of used suits and towels.

5.10.5.3 Shared Equipment ~~-Cleaned and Sanitized~~

Equipment provided by the AQUATIC FACILITY that comes into contact with BATHER's eyes, nose, ears, and mouth (*including but not limited to snorkels, nose clips, and goggles*) shall be cleaned, SANITIZED between uses, and stored in a manner to prevent biological growth.

5.10.5.4 Other Equipment

Other shared equipment provided by the AQUATIC FACILITY, including but not limited to fins, kickboards, tubes, lifejackets, and noodles, shall be kept clean ~~cleaned, scrubbed,~~ and stored in a manner to prevent mold and other biological growth.

5.10.5.5 Good Repair

Shared equipment shall be maintained in good repair.

5.10.5.6 Used Equipment

Used and un-SANITIZED shared equipment shall be kept separate from cleaned and SANITIZED shared equipment.

5.10.5.6.1 Receptacles

Non-absorbent, easily cleanable receptacles shall be provided for collection of used shared equipment.

5.11 Water Supply / Wastewater Disposal [N/A]

5.12 Special Requirements for Specific Venues

5.12.1 ~~Waterslides~~Water Slides

5.12.1.1 Signage

Warning signs shall be ~~posted~~provided in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.-

5.12.2 Wave Pools

5.12.2.1- Life Jackets

U.S. Coast Guard-approved life~~Life~~ jackets that are properly sized and fitted shall be provided free for use by BATHERS who request them.-

5.12.3 Moveable Floors

5.12.3.1- Starting Platforms

The use of starting platforms in the area of a MOVEABLE FLOOR shall be prohibited when the water depth is shallower than the minimum required water depth of four feet~~4-ft~~ (1.2 m). Use may only occur as per MAHC Section 5.6.10.3.~~2~~.

5.12.3.2- Diving Boards

When a MOVEABLE FLOOR is installed into a DIVING POOL, diving shall be prohibited unless the DIVING POOL depth meets criteria set in MAHC Section 4.8.2.1.1.

5.12.4 Bulkheads

5.12.4.1 Open Area

If a BULKHEAD is operated with an open area underneath, no one shall be allowed to swim beneath the BULKHEAD.-

5.12.4.2 Bulkhead Travel

The BULKHEAD position shall be maintained such that it cannot encroach on any required clearances of other features such as diving boards.

5.12.5 Interactive Water Play Aquatic Venues

5.12.5.1- Cracks

CRACKS in the INTERACTIVE~~Interactive~~ WATER PLAY AQUATIC VENUE shall be repaired when they may be a potential for leakage, present a tripping hazard, a potential cause of lacerations, or impact the ability to properly clean and maintain the INTERACTIVE~~Interactive~~ WATER PLAY AQUATIC VENUE area.-

5.12.5.2 Cleaning

When cleaning the ~~INTERACTIVE~~Interactive WATER PLAY AQUATIC VENUE CONTAMINANTS shall be removed or washed to the sanitary sewer.

5.12.5.2.1 No Sanitary Sewer Drain Available

If no sanitary sewer drain is available then debris shall be washed/rinsed to the nearest DECK drain or removed in a manner that prevents ~~CONTAMINANTS~~CONTAMINANTS from reentering the ~~INTERACTIVE WATER PLAY AQUATIC VENUE~~spray ground.

5.12.6 Wading Pools

5.12.7 Spas

5.12.7.1 Required Operation Time

SPA filtration systems shall be operated 24 hours per day except for periods of draining, filling, and maintenance.

5.12.7.2 Drainage and Replacement

SPAS shall be drained, cleaned, scrubbed, and water replaced ~~when needed to maintain water quality, but at least once every week.~~

~~5.12.7.3~~ **Water Replacement**

~~Water shall be replaced at the required interval as outlined in MAHC Section 5.12.7.2 or as calculated as follows in MAHC section 5.12.7.23.1, whichever interval is shorter.~~

~~5.12.7.23.1~~ **Calculated**

The water replacement interval (*in days*) shall be calculated by dividing the SPA volume (*in gallons*) by ~~three~~3 and then dividing by the average number of users per day.

5.12.7.~~3~~4 **Scrubbed**

SPA surfaces, including interior of SKIMMERS, shall be scrubbed or wiped down, and all water drained prior to refill.

6.0 Policies and Management

The provisions of Chapter 6 shall apply to all AQUATIC FACILITIES covered by this CODE regardless of when constructed, unless otherwise noted.

6.0.1 Staff Training

All QUALIFIED OPERATORS, maintenance staff, QUALIFIED LIFEGUARD staff, or any others who are involved in the STORAGE, use, or handling of chemicals shall receive training prior to access of chemicals, and receive at least an annual review of procedures thereafter for the following topics discussed in MAHC Section 6.~~0~~.1.1.~~4~~ to 6.~~04~~.1.5.~~3~~:

6.0.1.1 Storage and Handling

Procedures for chemical STORAGE and handling outlined in this CODE.

6.0.1.2- PPE Procedures

Standard precautions, ~~Precautions, Personal Protective Equipment (PPE),~~ and other measures to minimize exposure to chemicals as required by OSHA. This shall include staff training in PPE and respiratory protective devices when required.

6.0.1.3- Spill Procedures

Spill Procedures and Emergency Response outlined in this CODE.

6.0.1.4 OSHA Requirements

Federal OSHA Requirements: Hazard Communication Standard (*Employee Right-to-Know*) and SDS~~MSDS~~. Know the location and availability of standard and the written program.

6.0.1.5 Chemical and SDS~~MSDS~~ Lists

Know workplace chemicals list and SDS~~MSDS~~.

6.0.1.6 Training Plan

Employers shall have a training plan in place and implement training for employees on chemicals used at the AQUATIC FACILITY before their first assignment and whenever a new hazard is introduced into the work area.

6.0.1.6.1 Training Topics

The training shall include at a minimum:

- 1) How to recognize and avoid chemical hazards;
- 2) The physical and health hazards of chemicals used at the facility;
- 3) How to detect the presence or release of a hazardous chemical;
- 4) Required PPE necessary to avoid the hazards;
- 5) Use of PPE;
- 6) Chemical spill response; and

- 7) How to read and understand the chemical labels or other forms of warning including SDS sheets.

6.0.1.7- Training Records

Records of all training ~~shall~~ should be recorded and maintained on file.

6.0.1.8- Body Fluid Exposure

Employees assigned to roles which have the potential for an occupational exposure to bloodborne pathogens, pathogens that cause recreational water illnesses, or other pathogens shall be trained to recognize and respond to body fluid (*blood, feces, vomit*) releases in and around the AQUATIC VENUE area.

6.0.1.9 Exposure Control Program

Employers shall have an Exposure Control Program for bloodborne pathogens as required by OSHA 1910.1030.

6.0.1.10 PPE Provided and Disposed

PPE shall be provided and properly disposed.

6.1 Qualified Operator Training

6.1.1 Qualified Operator Qualifications and Certification

6.1.1.1 Qualifications

A QUALIFIED OPERATOR of an AQUATIC FACILITY shall have completed an operator training course that is recognized by the AHJ.-

6.1.1.2 Training Documentation

A QUALIFIED OPERATOR shall have a current certificate or written documentation acceptable to the AHJ showing completion of an operator training course.

6.1.1.2.1 Certificate Available

Originals or copies of such certificate or documentation shall be available on site for inspection by the AHJ for each QUALIFIED OPERATOR employed at or contracted by the site, as specified in this CODE.

6.1.1.2.2 Originals

Originals shall be made available upon request by the AHJ.

6.1.2 Essential Topics in Qualified Operator Training Courses

6.1.2.1 Course Content

All operator training courses recognized by the AHJ shall include, at a minimum, the following teaching elements:

- 1) Water DISINFECTION₁
- 2) Water chemistry₁
- 3) Mechanical systems, and
- 4) Health and safety operations.-

6.1.2.1.1 Water Disinfection

Water DISINFECTION including:

- 1) Water DISINFECTION₁
- 2) CT or Concentration X Time values₁
- 3) ~~CHLORINE~~ CHLORINE₁
- 3)-
- 4) Cyanuric acid (CYA)₁ }
- 5) Bromine₁
- 6) BREAKPOINT₁
- 7) SUPERCHLORINATION₁
- 7)- ~~SUPERCHLORINATION~~
- 8) HYPERCHLORINATION₁
- 9) Combined CHLORINE₁
- 10) SECONDARY DISINFECTION, and
- 11) SUPPLEMENTAL DISINFECTION₁

6.1.2.1.1.1 Disinfectants

DISINFECTANT types including:

- 1) Descriptions of different types of DISINFECTANTS,
- 2) Their unique physical (*e.g., shape or state [solid, liquid, or gas]*) and chemical properties (*e.g., how it reacts with acids or bases*),
- 3) How they disinfect and impact water chemistry and MONITORING systems,
- 4) How to calculate dosing,
- 5) How they are used safely, and
- 6) The advantages or disadvantages of using each DISINFECTANT.

6.1.2.1.1.2 CT Values

CT or Concentration ~~x~~ Time values~~Values~~ including:

- 1) How to calculate the amount of time needed to inactivate PATHOGENS at a given concentration of a DISINFECTANT, and
- 2) The importance and reasons for maintaining appropriate water pH and temperature.

6.1.2.1.1.3 Bromine

Bromine including:

- 1) Definition of bromine as an element,
- 2) Its use as a residual disinfectant and oxidizer in water,

- 3) Bromine chemistry,
- 4) The DISINFECTION role of hypobromous acid,-
- 5) On site generation,
- 6) pHPH meter requirements to prevent false readings, and
- 7) Bromine reuse.

6.1.2.1.1.4 Chlorine

CHLORINE including:

- 1) Definition of CHLORINE as an element,
- 2) Its use as a residual disinfectant and oxidizer in water,
- 3) CHLORINE chemistry and the role of PH,
- 4) The DISINFECTION role of hypochlorous acid,
- 5) Unstabilized products (*sodium hypochlorite, calcium hypochlorite, lithium hypochlorite, and chlorine gas*),
- 6) Stabilized products (*sodium dichloro-s-triazinetrione and ~~sodium~~-trichloro-s-triazinetrione*),
- 7) Safe chemical handling, and
- 8) On-site CHLORINE generation.-

6.1.2.1.1.5 Cyanuric Acid

Cyanuric acid (CYA) and stabilized chlorine product use including:

- 1) Description of CYA -reasons for and against use- and how chlorine is bound to it;
- 2) recommended Description of CYA use via addition of stabilized chlorine compounds or addition of cyanuric acid alone;
- 3) Response curves showing the impact of CYA on stabilization of chlorine residuals in the presence of UV;
- 4) Dose response curves showing the impact of CYA on chlorine kill rates including the impact of CYA concentrations on diarrheal fecal incident remediation procedures;-
- 5) Strategies for controlling the concentration of CYA; and
- 6) Strategies for reducing the concentration of CYA when it exceeds the maximum allowable level.

6.1.2.1.1.6 Breakpoint/ Super-Chlorination

BREAKPOINT CHLORINATION including how to achieve it through calculation of chemical dosing to reach the desired free CHLORINE level and its relationship to reducing and controlling formation of combined CHLORINE including guidance for how to perform BREAKPOINT CHLORINATION in indoor aquatic settings.

6.1.2.1.1.7 Hyperchlorination

HYPERCHLORINATION including procedures for implementation of fecal/vomit/blood contamination response.

6.1.2.1.1.8 Combined Chlorine

Combined CHLORINE including:

- 1) How different combined CHLORINE and DISINFECTION BY-PRODUCTS are formed in the water and air;₁₇
- 2) The maximum acceptable level of combined CHLORINE;₁₇
- 3) How methods such as water replacement, BREAKPOINT CHLORINATION, ultraviolet light, ozone, ventilation, and use of other oxidizers can reduce combined CHLORINE level;₁₇
- 4) The advantages and disadvantages of each;₁₇ and
- 5) Possible health effects of combined CHLORINE products in the air, particularly in indoor AQUATIC FACILITIES.

6.1.2.1.1.9— Secondary Disinfection

SECONDARY DISINFECTION SYSTEMS including:

- 1) How ozone and ultraviolet disinfectants are used in conjunction with residual disinfectants to inactivate pathogens, and
- 2) Sizing guidelines/dosing calculations, safe use, and advantages and disadvantages of each method.

6.1.2.1.1.10- Supplemental Disinfection

~~SUPPLEMENTAL~~ SUPPLEMENTAL DISINFECTION including other DISINFECTION chemicals or systems on the market and their effectiveness in water treatment.

6.1.2.1.2 Water Chemistry

Course work for water chemistry shall include:

- 1) Source water₁
- 2) Water balance₁
- 3) SATURATION INDEX₁
- 4) Water clarity₁
- 5) pH₁
- 6) Total alkalinity₁
- 7) Calcium hardness₁
- 8) Water temperature₁
- 9) Total dissolved solids₁
- 10) Water treatment systems, and
- 11) Water testing₁

6.1.2.1.2.1 Source Water

Source water including requirements for supply and pre-treatment.

6.1.2.1.2.2— Water Balance

Water balance including:

- 1) Effect of unbalanced water on DISINFECTION, AQUATIC FEATURE surfaces, mechanical equipment, and fixtures;¹⁷ and
- 2) Details of water balance including pH, total alkalinity, calcium hardness, temperature, and ~~total dissolved solids (TDS)~~;¹⁷

6.1.2.1.2.3- Saturation Index

SATURATION INDEX including calculations, ideal values, and effects of values which are too low or too high.

6.1.2.1.2.4- Water Clarity

Water clarity including:

- 1) Reasons why water quality is so important;¹⁷
- 2) Causes of poor water clarity;¹⁷
- 3) Maintenance of good water clarity;¹⁷ and
- 4) Closure requirements when water clarity is poor.

6.1.2.1.2.5- pH

pH including:

- 1) How pH is a measure of the concentration of hydrogen ions in water;¹⁷
- 2) Effects of high and low pH on ~~BATHERSPATRONS~~ and equipment;¹⁷
- 3) Ideal pH range for ~~BATHERPATRONS~~ and equipment;¹⁷
- 4) Factors that affect pH;¹⁷
- 5) How pH affects disinfectant efficacy;¹⁷ and
- 6) How to decrease and increase pH.

6.1.2.1.2.6- Total Alkalinity

Total alkalinity including:

- 1) How total alkalinity relates to pH;¹⁷
- 2) Effects of low and high total alkalinity;¹⁷
- 3) Factors that affect total alkalinity;¹⁷
- 4) Ideal total alkalinity range, and
- 5) How to increase or decrease total alkalinity.

6.1.2.1.2.7 Calcium Hardness

Calcium hardness including:

- 1) Why water naturally contains calcium;¹⁷
- 2) How calcium hardness relates to total hardness and temperature;¹⁷
- 3) Effects of low and high calcium hardness;¹⁷
- 4) Factors that affect calcium hardness;¹⁷
- 5) Ideal calcium hardness range;¹⁷ and
- 6) How to increase or decrease calcium hardness.

6.1.2.1.2.8 Temperature

Water temperature including:

- 1) How low and high water temperatures increase the likelihood of corrosion and scaling, respectively; ~~and~~
- 2) ~~Effects~~~~—effect~~ on DISINFECTION, its health effects, and other operational considerations; ~~;~~
- 3) ~~Health~~~~—health~~ effects; ~~;~~ and
- 4) Other operational considerations.

6.1.2.1.2.9 Total Dissolved Solids

Total dissolved solids (TDS) including:

- 1) Why the concentration of TDS increases over time; ~~;~~
- 2) Association with conductivity and organic CONTAMINANTS; ~~;~~ and
- 3) Key TDS levels as they relate to starting up an AQUATIC FACILITY and galvanic corrosion. ~~-~~

6.1.2.1.2.10 Water Treatment Systems

Water treatment systems including:

- 1) Descriptions of system use, MONITORING, calibration, ~~;~~ and maintenance of automatic controllers; ~~;~~
- 2) Descriptions of common types of liquid, dry chemical, and gas mechanical feeders; ~~;~~
- 3) ~~CHLORINE~~~~CHLORINE~~, bromine, and ozone generators; ~~;~~
- 4) Ultraviolet light systems; ~~;~~
- 5) Unique features of feeders, generators, and systems; ~~;~~
- 6) How to generally operate and maintain them; ~~;~~
- 7) Advantages and disadvantages of different feeders, ultraviolet light systems, and ozonator types; ~~;~~ and
- 8) Alternate treatment methods. ~~-~~

6.1.2.1.2.11 Water Testing

Water testing including:

- 1) How different methods (*including but not limited to colorimetric, titrimetric, turbidimetric, and electronic*) test water to determine the following levels:
 - a. ~~Free~~~~free~~ available and total CHLORINE,
 - b. ~~Total~~~~total~~ bromine,
 - c. pH,
 - d. ~~Total~~~~total~~ alkalinity,
 - e. ~~Calcium~~~~calcium~~ hardness,
 - f. ~~Temperature~~~~temperature~~,
 - g. TDS,
 - h. CYA,

- i. ~~Metals~~metals, and
 - j. ~~Anyany~~ other tests (including but not limited to salt concentrations, phosphates, nitrates, potassium monopersulfate, ~~copper, iron-Cu, Fe,~~ and bacterial testing);
- 2) The advantages and disadvantages of each method;
 - 3) How to maintain testing equipment;
 - 4) How to collect water samples;
 - 5) How to perform and interpret tests;
 - 6) How frequently to test;
 - 7) The steps of the dilution method; and
 - 8) How to calculate combined ~~CHLORINE~~CHLORINE levels.

6.1.2.1.3 Mechanical Systems

Course work for mechanical systems shall include:

- 1) Calculations.
- 2) Circulation.
- 3) Main drains.
- 4) Gutters and surface SKIMMERS.
- 5) Mechanical system balance.
- 6) Circulation pump and motor.
- 7) Valve.
- 8) Return INLETS.
- 9) Filtration, and
- 10) Filter backwashing/cleaning.

6.1.2.1.3.1 Maintenance Calculations

Calculations including:

- 1) Explanations of why particular calculations are important;
- 2) How to convert units of measurement within and between the English and metric systems;
- 3) How to determine the surface area of regularly and irregularly shape AQUATIC VENUES;
- 4) How to determine the water volume of regularly and irregularly shaped AQUATIC VENUES; and
- 5) Why proper sizing of filters, pumps, pipes, and feeders is important.

6.1.2.1.3.2 Circulation

Circulation including:

- 1) Why circulation is needed;
- 2) Factors that affect water flow;
- 3) How direct suction and overflow systems work;
- 4) How to calculate TURNOVER and flow rates;
- 5) How the following components of the circulation system relate to each other:

- a. Main drains.
 - b. Gutters~~main drains~~, gutters and surface SKIMMERS,
 - c. Circulation~~circulation~~ pump and motor,
 - d. Surge~~surge~~ tanks,
 - e. Vacuum~~vacuum~~ ports,
 - b.f. Valves~~valves~~, and
 - e.g. Return~~return~~ INLETS₁₇
- 5)6) How to read flow meters₁₇
- 6)7) How to safely operate pressurized systems after the pump₁₇
- 7)8) Information on dye testing₁₇
- 8)9) An understanding of total dynamic head (TDH)₁₇
- 9)10) How it TDH~~is~~ calculated₁₇
- 10)11) How TDH~~it~~ is field-determined using vacuum and pressure gauges₁₇
- 11)12) TDH~~is~~ effect on pump flow₁₇ and
- 12)13) Cross connections.

6.1.2.1.3.3 Main Drains

Main drains including:

- 1) A description of the role of main drains₁₇
- 2) Why they should not be resized without engineering and public health consultation₁₇
- 3) The importance of daily inspection of structural integrity₁₇ and
- 4) Discussion on balancing the need to maximize surface water flow while minimizing the likelihood of entrapment.

6.1.2.1.3.4- Gutters & Surface Skimmers

Gutters and surface SKIMMERS including:

- 1) Why it is important to collect surface water₁₇
- 2) A description of different gutter types (*at a minimum: scum, surge, and rim-flow*)₁₇
- 3) How each type generally works₁₇
- 4) The advantages and disadvantages of each₁₇ and
- 5) Description of the components of SKIMMERS (e.g., weir, basket, and equalizer assembly) and their respective roles.

6.1.2.1.3.5 Mechanical System Balance

Mechanical system balance including:

- 1) An understanding of mechanical system balancing₁₇
- 2) Methodology for setting proper operational water levels₁₇
- 3) Basic hydraulics which affect proper functioning of the balance tank and AQUATIC VENUE₁₇
- 4) Methods of setting and adjusting modulation valves₁₇
- 5) Balance lines₁₇

6) SKIMMERS₁₇a. ~~Main drains~~7) Main drains:7)8) The operation of the water make-up system₁₇8)9) Collector tanks/gravity drainage systems₁₇ and

9)10) Automatic controllers.

6.1.2.1.3.6- Circulation Pump & Motor

Circulation pump and motor including:

- 1) Descriptions of the role of the pump and motor₁₇
- 2) Self-priming and flooded suction pumps₁₇
- 3) Key components of a pump and how they work together₁₇
- 4) Cavitation₁₇
- 5) Possible causes of cavitation₁₇ and
- 6) Troubleshooting problems with the pump and motor.

6.1.2.1.3.7- Valves

Valves including descriptions of different types of valves (*e.g., gate, ball, butterfly/wafer, multi-port, globe, modulating/ automatic, and check*) and their safe operation.-

6.1.2.1.3.8 Return Inlets

Return INLETS including a description of the role of return INLETS and the importance of replacing fittings with those that meet original specifications.-

6.1.2.1.3.9 Filtration

Filtration including:

- 1) Why filtration is needed₁₇
- 2) A description of pressure and vacuum filters and different types of filter media₁₇
- 3) How to calculate filter surface area₁₇
- 4) How to read pressure gauges₁₇
- 5) A general description of sand, cartridge, and diatomaceous earth filters and alternative filter media types to include, at a minimum, perlite, zeolite, and crushed glass₁₇
- 6) The characteristic flow rates and particle size entrapment of each filter type₁₇
- 7) How to generally operate and maintain each filter type₁₇
- 8) Troubleshooting problems with the filter₁₇ and
- 9) The advantages and disadvantages of different filters and filter media.

6.1.2.1.3.10 Filter Backwashing/Cleaning

Filter backwashing/cleaning including:

- 1) Determining and setting proper backwash flow rates₁₇

- 2) When backwashing/cleaning should be done and the steps needed for clearing a filter of fine particles and other CONTAMINANTS_;
- 3) Proper disposal of waste water from backwash_; and-
- 4) What additional fixtures/equipment may be needed (*i.e.*, sump, separation tank).-

6.1.2.1.4 Health and Safety

Course work for health and SAFETY shall include:

- 1) Recreational water illness (*RWI*)_;
- 2) RWI prevention_;
- 3) Risk management_;
- 4) Record keeping_;
- 5) Chemical SAFETY_;
- 6) Entrapment prevention_;
- 7) Electrical SAFETY_;
- 8) Rescue equipment_;
- 9) Injury prevention_;
- 10) Drowning prevention_;
- 11) BARRIERS_;
- 12) Signage and depth markers_;
- 13) Facility sanitation_;
- 14) Emergency response_; and
- 15) Surveillance and supervision_;

6.1.2.1.4.1 Recreational Water Illness

Recreational water illness (*RWI*) including:

- 1) How water can contain or become contaminated with parasites, bacteria, viruses, fungi, DISINFECTION BY-PRODUCTS, or unsafe levels of chemicals; and
- 2) The role of the operator in reducing risk.

6.1.2.1.4.2 Causes of RWIs

Common infectious and chemical causes of RWIs, including but not limited to:

- 1) Diarrheal illness (*Cryptosporidium*, *Giardia*, *Shigella*, and *norovirus*)_; **NOROVIRUS**_;
- 2) Skin rashes (*Pseudomonas aeruginosa*, *molluscum contagiosum*)_;
- 3) Respiratory illness (*Legionella*)_;
- 4) Neurologic infections (*echovirus*, *Naegleria*)_;
- 5) Eye/ear illness (*Pseudomonas aeruginosa*, *adenovirus*, *Acanthamoeba*)_;
- 6) Hypersensitivity reactions (*Mycobacterium avium complex*, *Pontiac fever*, *endotoxins*)_; and
- 7) Health effects of chloramines and DISINFECTION BY-PRODUCTS.

6.1.2.1.4.3 RWI Prevention

Recreational water illness (*RWI*) prevention including:

- 1) Methods of prevention of RWIs, including but not limited to chemical level control;
- 2) Why public health, operators, and PATRONS need to be educated about RWIs and collaborate on RWI prevention;
- 3) The role of showering₁₇;
- 4) The efficacy of swim diapers₁₇;
- 5) Formed-stool and diarrheal fecal incident response₁₇; and
- 6) Developing a plan to minimize PATHOGEN and other biological (e.g., *blood, vomit, sweat, urine, and skin and hair care products*) contamination of the water.

6.1.2.1.4.4 Risk Management

Risk management including techniques that identify hazards and risks and that prevent illness and injuries associated with AQUATIC FACILITIES open to the public.

6.1.2.1.4.5 Record Keeping

Record keeping including the need to keep accurate and timely records of the following areas:

- 1) Operational conditions (e.g., *water chemistry, water temperature, filter pressure differential, flow meter reading, and water clarity*)₁₇;
- 2) Maintenance performed (e.g., *backwashing, change of equipment*)₁₇;
- 3) Incidents and response (e.g., *fecal incidents in the water and injuries*)₁₇; and
- 4) Staff training and attendance.

6.1.2.1.4.6 Chemical Safety

Chemical SAFETY including steps to safely store and handle chemicals including:

- 1) How to read labels and material safety data sheets₁₇;
- 2) How to prevent individual chemicals and inorganic and organic CHLORINE products from mixing together or with other substances (*including water*) or in chemical feeders₁₇; and
- 3) Use of PPE~~personal protective equipment~~.

6.1.2.1.4.7 Entrapment Prevention

Entrapment prevention including:

- 1) Different types of entrapment (e.g., *hair, limb, body, evisceration/disembowelment, and mechanical*)₁₇;
- 2) How to prevent and/or decrease likelihood of entrapment₁₇; and
- 3) Requirements of the Virginia Graeme Baker Pool and Spa Safety Act.

6.1.2.1.4.8 Electrical Safety

Electrical SAFETY including possible causes of electrical shock and steps that can be taken to prevent electrical shock (e.g., *bonding, grounding, ground fault interrupters, and prevention of accidental immersion of electrical devices*).

6.1.2.1.4.9 Rescue Equipment

Rescue equipment including a description and rationale for the most commonly found rescue equipment including:

- 1) Rescue tubes,
- 2) Reaching poles,
- 3) Ring buoys and throwing lines,
- 4) Backboards,
- 5) First aid kits,
- 6) Emergency alert systems,
- 7) Emergency phones with current numbers posted, and
- 8) Resuscitation equipment.

6.1.2.1.4.10 Injury Prevention

Injury prevention including basic steps known to decrease the likelihood of injury, at a minimum:

- 1) Banning ~~the use of alcohol and~~ glass containers at AQUATIC FACILITIES,
- 2) PATRON education, and
- 3) Daily visual inspection for hazards.

6.1.2.1.4.11 Drowning Prevention

Drowning prevention including causes and prevention of drowning.

6.1.2.1.4.12 Barriers

BARRIERS including descriptions of how fences, gates, doors, and safety covers can be used to prevent access to water; and basics of design that effectively prevent access to water.-

6.1.2.1.4.13 Signage & Depth Markers

Signage and depth markers including the importance of maintaining signage and depth markers.

6.1.2.1.4.14 Facility Sanitation

Facility sanitation including:

- 1) Steps to clean and disinfect all surfaces that PATRONS would commonly come in contact with (*e.g., deck, restrooms, and diaper-changing areas*), and
- 2) Procedures for implementation of MAHC Section 6.5: *Fecal-Vomit-Blood Contamination Response*, in relation to responding to a body fluid spill on these surfaces.

6.1.2.1.4.15 Emergency Response Plan

Emergency response plan including:

- 1) Steps to respond to emergencies (*at a minimum, severe weather events, drowning or injury, contamination of the water, chemical incidents*); and

- 2) Communication and coordination with emergency responders and local health department notification as part of an ~~EMERGENCY ACTION PLAN.~~~~EMERGENCY ACTION PLAN.—~~

6.1.2.1.5 Operations

Course work for operations shall include:

- 1) Regulations₁
- 2) Local and state health ~~departments.~~~~Departments~~
- 3) AQUATIC FACILITY types₁
- 4) Daily/routine operations₁
- 5) Preventive maintenance₁
- 6) Weatherizing₁
- 7) AQUATIC FACILITY renovation and design₁
- 8) Heating₁
- 9) Air circulation, and
- 10) SPA and THERAPY POOL ~~issues.~~~~Issues~~

6.1.2.1.5.1 Regulations

Regulations including the application of local, regional, state, and federal regulations and STANDARDS relating to the operation of AQUATIC FACILITIES.

6.1.2.1.5.1.1 Immediate Closure

Course work shall also highlight reasons why an inspector or operator would immediately close an AQUATIC FACILITY.

6.1.2.1.5.2 Local & State Health Departments

Local and state health departments including stressing the importance of a good working relationship with the local and state health department.

6.1.2.1.5.3 Aquatic Facility Types

~~AQUATIC~~~~AQUATIC~~ FACILITY types including common AQUATIC VENUE types and settings and a discussion of features and play equipment that require specific operation and maintenance steps.

6.1.2.1.5.4 Daily/Routine Operations

Daily/routine operations including listing and describing the daily inspection and maintenance requirements of an AQUATIC FACILITY including, but not limited items listed:

- 1) Walkways/DECK and exits are clear, clean, free of debris_{1,7}
- 2) Drain covers, vacuum fitting covers, SKIMMER equalizer covers, and any other suction outlet covers are in place, secure, and unbroken_{1,7}
- 3) SKIMMER baskets, weirs, lids, flow adjusters, and suction outlets are free of any blockage_{1,7}

- 4) INLET and return covers and any other fittings are in place, secure, and unbroken;¹⁷
- 5) SAFETY warning signs and other signage are in place and in good repair;¹⁷
- 6) Entrapment prevention systems are operational;¹⁷
- 7) Recirculation, DISINFECTION systems, controller(s), and probes are operating as required;¹⁷
- 8) Secondary and/or supplemental DISINFECTION systems are operating as required;¹⁷
- 9) Underwater lights and other lighting are intact with no exposed wires or water in lights;¹⁷
- 10) Slime and biofilm has been removed from accessible surfaces of AQUATIC VENUE, slides, and other AQUATIC FEATURES;¹⁷
- 11) Doors to nonpublic areas (*chemical storage spaces, offices, etc.*) are locked;¹⁷
- 12) First aid supplies are stocked;¹⁷
- 13) Emergency communication equipment and systems are operational;¹⁷
- 14) Fecal/vomit/blood incident contamination response protocols, materials, and equipment are available;¹⁷
- 15) ~~AQUATIC~~Water FEATURES and amenities are functioning in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations;¹⁷
- 16) Fencing/BARRIERS, gates, and self-latching or other locks are tested and are intact and functioning properly, and BARRIERS do not have nearby furniture to encourage climbing;¹⁷
- 17) Drinking fountains are clean and in functional condition;¹⁷
- 18) Electrical devices are in good working condition and meet the requirements specified in the NEC and MAHC;¹⁷
- 19) Alarms, if required, are tested and functioning properly;¹⁷
- 20) Assessing glare conditions throughout operating hours to assess whetherinsure the bottom and objects in the POOL are clearly visible;¹⁷
- 21) Play structures and diving boards are in good condition;
- 22) SAFETY equipment is in good condition, properly secured, accessible for intended use, and shall include at a minimum:
 - a. Rescue tubes,
 - b. Resuscitation masks with one-way valve,
 - c. First aid kits,
 - d. AED's,
 - e. Emergency oxygen,
 - f. Backboard, head immobilizer, straps, and
 - g. Lifeguard stands;¹⁷
- 23) Emergency shut-off systems (*slides, water features, pumps, etc.*) function properly;
- 24) Depth markings are clearly visible;
- 25) Lifelines and buoys are in place and in good working order;
- 26) Ladders are non-slip and rungs secured tightly;
- 27) WATERSLIDES are in functional, safe condition;
- 28) Moveable fulcrum is adjusted properly to control spring in the board as necessary;
- 29) Moveable starting blocks are properly stored;

- 30) Access to permanent starting blocks is restricted or controlled when not in use by swim teams and prohibited when not in use by competitive swimming or swimming practice that is under direct supervision of an instructor or coach;
- 31) Railings are secure;
- 32) SVRS is functioning according to manufacturer's guidelines;
- 33) SKIMMER baskets and covers are clean and in place;
- 34) Water quality and clarity is MAHC compliant;
- 35) Water level is at an appropriate level;
- 36) Pumps retain the appropriate pressure;
- 37) Play structures are secure (*consider water velocity and reference manufacturers recommended levels*); **and**
- 38) Verify required documentation and records are in place and signed by the appropriate personnel.

6.1.2.1.5.5 Preventive Maintenance

Preventive maintenance including how to develop:

- 1) A preventive maintenance plan,
- 2) Routine maintenance procedures, and
- 3) Record keeping system needed to track maintenance performed.

6.1.2.1.5.6 Weatherizing

Weatherizing including the importance of weatherizing and the steps to prevent damage to AQUATIC FACILITIES and their mechanical systems due to very low temperatures or extreme weather conditions (*e.g., flooding*).

6.1.2.1.5.7 Facility Renovation & Design

AQUATIC FACILITY renovation and design including:

- 1) Definitions of AQUATIC FACILITY renovation, remodeling, and SUBSTANTIAL ALTERATION;^{4.7}
- 2) When it is necessary to renovate;^{4.7}
- 3) When it is necessary to notify the AHJ of planned renovations and remodeling;^{4.7} and
- 4) Current trends in facility renovation and design.

6.1.2.1.5.8 Heating

Heating issues including:

- 1) Recommended water temperatures and limits,
- 2) Factors that contribute to the water's heat loss and gain,
- 3) Heating equipment options,
- 4) Sizing gas heaters, and
- 5) How to troubleshoot problems with heaters.

6.1.2.1.5.9 Air Circulation

Air circulation including:

- 1) AIR HANDLING SYSTEM considerations for an indoor AQUATIC FACILITY,
- 2) The importance of regulating humidity,
- 3) The need to maintain negative pressure,
- 4) How poor indoor air quality can affect PATRONS and staff, and
- 5) How to balance air change and energy efficiency.

6.1.2.1.5.10 Spa & Therapy Pool Issues

SPASPA and THERAPY POOL issues including:

- 1) Operational implications of smaller volumes of water and HOT WATER,
- 2) How to maintain water chemistry,
- 3) Typical water temperature ranges highlighting maximum temperatures,
- 4) Risks of hyperthermia and hypothermia,
- 5) Need for emergency shut-off switches, and
- 6) Frequency of cleaning, draining, and DISINFECTION.

6.1.3 General Requirements for Operator Training Courses

6.1.3.1 Course Providers

6.1.3.1.1- Recognized Courses

Providers of recognized operator training courses, if required by the AHJ to verify that the course meets the requirements and intent of this CODE, shall submit course information including:

- 1) Course development expertise.
- 2) Course content.
- 3) Course length.
- 4) Instructor qualifications.
- 5) Exam administration.
- 6) Certificate procedures, and
- 7) Updates of information as changes are made.

6.1.3.1.2 Providers

Operator training courses shall be developed by individuals or organizations with expertise in AQUATIC FACILITY operation and maintenance and expertise in education or training as evidenced by combined work experience and training.

6.1.3.2 Course Content

Training materials at a minimum, covering all of the essential topics as outlined in MAHC Section 6.1.2.1 shall be provided and used in operator training courses.

6.1.3.3 Course Length

Course agenda or syllabus shall show amount of time planned to cover each of the essential topics.

6.1.3.4 Instructor Requirements

Operator training course providers shall furnish course instructor information including:

- 1) Expertise in AQUATIC FACILITY operation and maintenance—as evidenced by work experience and/or training;¹⁷
- 2) Completion of an operator training course, which at a minimum, covers all of the essential topics as outlined in MAHC Section 6.1.2.1, including passing the final exam;¹⁷
- 3) Successful completion of an operator training instructor course;¹⁷ and
- 4) If the operator training course is online, procedures which make such an instructor available to answer students' questions during normal business hours.—

6.1.3.5 Final Exam

Operator training course providers shall furnish course final exam information including:

- 1) Final exam(s);¹⁷ which at a minimum, covers all of the essential topics as outlined in MAHC Section 6.1.2.1;¹⁷
- 2) Final exam passing score criteria;¹⁷ and
- 3) Final exam security procedures.

6.1.3.5.1 Final Exam Administration

Operator training course providers shall provide final exam administration, proctoring and security procedures including:

- 1) Checking student's government-issued photo identification, or another established process, to ensure that the individual taking the exam is the same person who is given a certificate documenting course completion and passing of exam,
- 2) Final exam completion is without assistance or aids that are not allowed by the training agency, and may improve exam results, and
- 3) Final exam is passed, prior to issuance of a QUALIFIED OPERATOR certificate.

6.1.3.6 Course Certificates

Operator training course providers shall furnish course certificate information including:

- 1) Procedures for issuing nontransferable certificates to the individuals who successfully complete the course work and pass the final exam;¹⁷
- 2) Procedures for delivery of course certificates to the individuals who successfully complete the course work and pass the final exam;¹⁷
- 3) Instructions for the participant to maintain their originally issued certificate, or a copy thereof, for the duration of its validity;¹⁷ and

- 4) Procedures for the operator training course provider to maintain an individual's training and exam record for a minimum period of five years after the expiration of the individual's certificate.-

6.1.3.7 Continuing Education [N/A]

6.1.3.8 Certificate Renewal

Operator training course providers shall furnish course certificate renewal information including:

- 1) Criteria for re-examination with a renewal exam that meets the specifications for initial exam requirements and certificate issuance specified in this ~~CODE~~; or
- 2) Criteria for a refresher course with an exam that meets the specifications for the initial course, exam, and certificate issuance requirements specified in this ~~CODE.CODE~~.

6.1.3.9 Certificate Suspension and Revocation

Course providers shall have procedures in place for the suspension or revocation of certificates.

6.1.3.9.1 Evidence of Health Hazard

Course providers may suspend or revoke a QUALIFIED OPERATOR'S certificate based on evidence that the QUALIFIED OPERATOR'S actions or inactions unduly created SAFETY and health hazards.

6.1.3.9.2 Evidence of Cheating

Course providers may suspend or revoke a QUALIFIED OPERATOR'S certificate based on evidence of cheating or obtaining the certificate under false pretenses.

6.1.3.10 Additional Training or Testing

The AHJ may, at its discretion, require additional operator training or testing.

6.1.3.11 Certificate Recognition

The AHJ may, at its discretion, choose to recognize, not to recognize, or rescind a previously recognized certificate of a QUALIFIED OPERATOR based upon demonstration of inadequate knowledge, poor performance, or due cause.

6.1.3.12 Course Recognition

The AHJ may, at its discretion, recognize, choose not to recognize, or revoke a previously accepted course based upon demonstration of inadequate knowledge or poor performance of its QUALIFIED OPERATORS, or due cause.

6.1.3.13 Length of Certificate Validity

The maximum length of validity for QUALIFIED OPERATOR training certificate shall be ~~five~~5 years.

6.2 Lifeguard Training

6.2.1 Lifeguard Qualifications

A QUALIFIED LIFEGUARD shall:

- 1) Have successfully completed an AHJ-recognized lifeguard training course offered by an AHJ-recognized training agency,
- 2) Possess a current certificate for such training,
- 3) Have met all pre-service requirements, and
- 4) Participate in continuing in-service training requirements of the AQUATIC FACILITY.

6.2.1.1 Course Content

Lifeguard Training Courses shall include but not be limited to:

- 1) Hazard identification and injury prevention,
- 2) Emergencies,
- ~~3) Cardiopulmonary resuscitation (CPR,~~
- ~~3)4) AED use,~~
- ~~4)5) First aid, and~~
- ~~5)6) Legal issues.~~

6.2.1.1.1 Hazard Identification and Injury Prevention

Hazard identification and injury prevention shall include:

- 1) Identification of common hazards or causes of injuries and their prevention;
- 2) Responsibilities of a QUALIFIED LIFEGUARD in prevention strategies;
- 3) Victim recognition;
- 4) Victim recognition scanning strategies;
- 5) Factors which impede victim recognition;
- 6) Health and SAFETY issues related to lifeguarding; and
- 7) Prevention of voluntary hyperventilation and extended breath holding activities.

6.2.1.1.2 Emergency Response Skill Set

Emergency response content shall include:

- 1) Responsibilities of a QUALIFIED LIFEGUARD in reacting to an emergency;
- 2) Recognition and identification of a person in distress and/or drowning;
- 3) Methods to communicate in response to an emergency;
- 4) Rescue skills for a person who is responsive or unresponsive, in distress, or drowning;
- 5) Skills required to rescue a person to a position of SAFETY;
- 6) Skills required to extricate a person from the water with ~~or without~~ assistance from another lifeguard(s), and/or patron(s); and
- 7) Knowledge of the typical components~~Components~~ of an EMERGENCY ACTION PLAN~~EMERGENCY ACTION PLAN~~ (EAP) for AQUATIC VENUES.

6.2.1.1.3 ~~CPR Skills~~ **Cardiopulmonary Resuscitation Skills**

(~~CPR/AED, AED use,~~) and other resuscitation skills shall be professional level skills that follow treatment protocols consistent with the current ~~Emergency Cardiovascular Care Update (ECCU)~~ and/or, the ~~International Liaison Committee on Resuscitation (ILCOR)~~ guidelines for cardiac compressions, foreign body restriction removal, and rescue breathing for infants, children, and adults.

6.2.1.1.4 **First Aid**

First Aid training shall include:

- 1) Basic treatment of bleeding, shock, sudden illness, and muscular/skeletal injuries as per the guidelines of the National First Aid Science Advisory Board;~~;~~
- 2) Knowing when and how to activate the EMS;~~;~~
- 3) Rescue and emergency care skills to minimize movement of the head, neck and spine until EMS arrives for a person who has suffered a suspected spinal injury on land or in the water;~~;~~ and
- 4) Use and the importance of universal precautions and personal protective equipment in dealing with body fluids, blood, and preventing contamination according to current ~~OSHA~~ **Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA)** guidelines.

6.2.1.1.5 **Legal Issues**

Course content related to legal issues shall include but not be limited to:

- 1) Duty to act,
- 2) Standard of care,
- 3) Negligence,
- 4) Consent,
- 5) Refusal of care,
- 6) Abandonment,
- 7) Confidentiality, and
- 8) Documentation.

6.2.1.2 **Lifeguard Training Delivery**

6.2.1.2.1 **Standardized and Comprehensive**

The educational delivery system shall include standardized ~~and~~ student and instructor materials to convey all topics including but not limited to those listed per MAHC Section 6.2.1.1.

6.2.1.2.2 **Skills Practice**

Physical training of lifeguarding skills shall include in-water and out-of-water skill practices led by an individual currently certified as an instructor by the training agency which developed the lifeguard course materials.

6.2.1.2.3 Shallow Water Training

If a training agency offers a certification with a distinction between “shallow water” and “deep water” lifeguards, candidates for shallow water certification shall have training and evaluation in the deepest depth allowed for the certification.

6.2.1.2.4 Deep Water Training

If a training agency offers a certification with a distinction between “shallow water” and “deep water” lifeguards, candidates for deep water certification shall have training and evaluation in at least the minimum depth allowed for the certification.

6.2.1.2.5 Sufficient Time

Course length shall provide sufficient time to cover content, practice, skills, and evaluate competency for the topics listed in MAHC Section 6.2.1.1.

6.2.1.2.6 Certified Instructors

Lifeguard ~~instructor courses~~~~Instructors: Courses~~ shall be taught only by individuals currently certified as instructors by the training agency which developed the lifeguard course materials.

6.2.1.2.6.1 Minimum Prerequisites

Lifeguard training agencies shall develop minimum instructor prerequisites that include, but are not limited to those outlined in MAHC Section 6.2.1.2.6.2.

6.2.1.2.6.2 Completed Training

Prior to instructing lifeguard training, instructors are required to have successfully completed a lifeguard training course which complies with MAHC Section 6.2.1.1 and a lifeguard instructor training course which includes, at a minimum, the following:

- 1) Mastery and knowledge of lifeguard training course content;
- 2) Demonstration of the ability to effectively deliver lifeguard training course content;
- 3) An evaluation and feedback process to improve instructor candidate presentation skills/techniques;
- 4) Course management and administration procedures; and
- 5) Testing and evaluation procedures.

6.2.1.2.6.3 Instructor Renewal/Recertification Process

Lifeguard training agencies shall have a lifeguard instructor renewal/recertification process.

6.2.1.2.6.4 Quality Control

Training agencies shall have a quality control system in place for evaluating a lifeguard instructor’s ability to conduct courses.

6.2.1.2.7 Training Equipment

All lifeguard training courses shall have, at a minimum, the following pieces of equipment available in appropriate student to equipment ratios during the course:

- 1) Rescue Tubes,
- 2) Backboard with head immobilizer and sufficient straps to immobilize the victim to the backboard,
- 3) CPR manikins (*Adult and ~~infant~~Child*),
- 4) ResuscitationCPR mask with one-way valve,
- 5) Bag Valve Mask (*Adult and Pediatric*),
- 6) Disposable gloves,
- 7) AED Trainer with adult and pediatric training pads, ~~and~~
- 8) First Aid Supplies for first aid training, and
- 9) Manikin cleaning supplies.

6.2.1.3 Competency and Certification

6.2.1.3.1 Proficiency

Lifeguarding skills per MAHC Section 6.2.1.1 shall be tested, by a certified instructor, to a level of proficiency accepted by the training agency.

6.2.1.3.2 Requirements

Lifeguard training course providers shall have a final exam including but not limited to:

- 1) Written and practical exams covering topics outlined in MAHC Section 6.2.1.1;
- 2) Final exam passing score criteria including the level of proficiency needed to pass practical and written exams; and
- 3) Security procedures for proctoring the final exam to include:
 - a. Checking student's government-issued photo identification, or another established process, to ensure that the individual taking the exam is the same person who is given a certificate documenting course completion and passing of exam; and
 - b. Final exam is passed, prior to issuance of a certificate.

6.2.1.3.3 Instructor Physically Present

The instructor of record shall be physically present during the practical testing.

6.2.1.3.4 Certifications

Lifeguard and lifeguard instructor certifications shall be issued to recognize successful completion of the course as per the requirements of MAHC Section 6.2.1.1 through 6.2.1.4.3.83.

6.2.1.3.5 Number of Years

Length of valid certification shall be a maximum of two years for lifeguarding and first aid, and a maximum of one year for Cardiopulmonary Resuscitation (CPR/AED).

6.2.1.3.6 Documentation

Course documentation of training and certificates shall identify the following:

1) Name of trainee.

~~1) Level name~~

~~2) level~~ of training,

~~3) Expiration~~ expiration date,

~~4) Restrictions~~ restrictions on depth of water for which the lifeguard is qualified,

~~5) Identifier~~ identifier of the instructor of record,

~~6) Any~~ other restrictions that maybe applied by the training agency, and

~~7) Identifier~~ identifier of the agency providing the certification.

6.2.1.3.7 Expired Certificate

When a certificate has expired for more than 45 days, the QUALIFIED LIFEGUARD shall retake the course or complete a challenge program.

6.2.1.3.7.1 Challenge Program

A QUALIFIED LIFEGUARD challenge program, when utilized, shall be completed in accordance with the training of the original certifying agency, by an instructor certified by the original certifying agency, and include but not be limited to:

1) Pre-requisite screening;

2) A final practical exam demonstrating all skills, in and out of the water required in the original lifeguard course for certification, which complies with MAHC Section 6.2.1.1, and uses the equipment specified in MAHC Section 6.2.1.2.7; and

3) Final written, proctored exam.

6.2.1.3.7.2 Certificate Renewal

Certificate renewal, when used utilized, shall include the following:

1) Completion no later than 45 days after ~~prior to~~ certificate expiration;

2) Conducted in accordance with the training of the original certifying agency;

3) Taught by an instructor certified by the original certifying agency;

4) Conducted with a demonstration of skills, in and out of the water, required in the original course, which complies with MAHC Section 6.2.1.1, and uses the equipment specified in MAHC Section 6.2.1.2.7;

5) A final written, proctored exam; and

6) A final practical exam with a certified instructor(s) of record present; or

7) Completion of a Challenge Program in accordance with MAHC Section 6.2.1.3.7.1, no later than 45 days after certificate expiration.

6.2.1.3.8 Certificate Suspension and Revocation

Lifeguard training agencies shall have procedures in place for the suspension or revocation of certificates.

6.2.2 Aquatic Supervisor Training

6.2.2.1 Lifeguard Supervisor Candidate Prerequisites

LIFEGUARD SUPERVISOR candidate prerequisites shall include but not be limited to:

- 1) Successful completion of a lifeguard training course in the past₁₇
- 2) Previous experience as a lifeguard of at least ~~three~~₃ months₁₇ and
- 3) Ability to effectively communicate verbally in English.

6.2.2.2 Lifeguard Supervisor Training Elements

LIFEGUARD SUPERVISOR training shall include, at a minimum, the following:

- 1) Activation and execution of ~~EMERGENCY ACTION PLANS~~_{EMERGENCY ACTION PLANS} (EAPs),
- 2) CPR/AED and first aid training that complies with MAHC Sections 6.2.1.1.3 and 6.2.1.1.4 or present an unexpired certificate issued by an AHJ-approved agency documenting the required training has been completed₁₇
- 3) Scanning and vigilance requirements and how to ensure that systems which accomplish these goals are in place and operational₁₇
- 4) Development and evaluation of zones of ~~BATHER~~_{PATRON} surveillance responsibility diagrams for an AQUATIC VENUE₁₇
- 5) MONITORING lifeguard performance as it relates to lifeguard and facility-specific training, including pre-service assessments₁₇
- 6) Strategies to reduce risk and mitigate the health and SAFETY hazards to both the PATRONS and the staff₁₇
- 7) Knowledge of the legal issues and responsibilities relating to lifeguarding as listed in MAHC Section 6.2.1.1.5₁₇ and
- 8) Knowledge of the proper use and maintenance of the equipment required per MAHC Section 5.8.5.

6.2.2.3 Lifeguard Supervisor Training Delivery

6.2.2.3.1 Standardized and Comprehensive

The educational delivery system shall include standardized student and instructor content and delivery to convey all topics including but not limited to those listed per MAHC Section 6.2.2.2.

6.2.2.3.2 Sufficient Time

Course length shall provide sufficient time to cover content, demonstration, skill practice, and evaluate competency for the topics listed in MAHC Section 6.2.2.2.

6.2.2.3.3 Course Setting~~Certified Instructors~~

LIFEGUARD SUPERVISOR training courses shall be:

- 1) Taught in person by a trained lifeguard supervisor instructors; or
- 2) Blended learning offerings with electronic content deliverables created, and presented by, and in-person portions taught by, trained lifeguard supervisor instructors; or
- 3) On-line offerings created and presented by trained lifeguard supervisor instructors.

6.2.2.3.4 Lifeguard Supervisor Course Instructor Certification

Lifeguard supervisor course instructors shall be certified through a training agency or by the facility whose training programs meets the requirements specified in MAHC Section 6.2.2.

6.2.2.3.4.1 Lifeguard Supervisor Course Instructor

Lifeguard supervisor course shall be taught by trained LIFEGUARD SUPERVISOR instructors through a training agency or by the facility whose training programs meets the requirements specified in MAHC Section 6.2.2.

6.2.2.3.4.23-4 Minimum Prerequisites

Course providers shall develop minimum instructor prerequisites that include, but are not limited to:

- 1) Successful completion of a lifeguard training course in the past;₁₇
- 2) Successful completion of a LIFEGUARD SUPERVISOR training course that complies with MAHC Section 6.2.2.2;₁₇
- 3) Ability to effectively communicate in English;₁₇
- 4) Has completed a LIFEGUARD SUPERVISOR instructor training course which includes, at a minimum, the following:
- 5) Mastery and knowledge of LIFEGUARD SUPERVISOR training course content;₁₇
- 6) Demonstration of the ability to effectively deliver LIFEGUARD SUPERVISOR training course content;₁₇
- 7) An evaluation and feedback process to improve instructor candidate presentation skills/techniques;₁₇
- 8) Course management and administration procedures;₁₇ and
- 9) Testing and evaluation procedures.

6.2.2.3.4.3-2 Quality Control

Course provider shall have a quality control system in place for evaluating a LIFEGUARD SUPERVISOR instructor's ability to conduct courses.

6.2.2.3.4.43-3 Lifeguard Supervisor Renewal & Recertification

LIFEGUARD SUPERVISOR training agencies shall have a LIFEGUARD SUPERVISOR instructor renewal/recertification process.

6.2.2.4 Competency and Certification

6.2.2.4.1 Lifeguard Supervisor Proficiency

LIFEGUARD SUPERVISOR training course providers shall have a method to evaluate proficiency of the content in MAHC Section 6.2.2.2.

6.2.2.4.2 Lifeguard Supervisor Certifications

LIFEGUARD SUPERVISOR certifications shall be issued by the course provider to recognize successful completion of the course as per the requirements of MAHC Section 6.2.2.2.

6.3 Facility Staffing

6.3.1 Qualified OperatorOperators Requirements and Availability

6.3.1.1 On-Site Qualified Operator Requirements

6.3.1.1.1 At Adoption

The following MAHC sections shall be required for all AQUATIC FACILITIES at time of adoption:

- 1) MAHC Section 6.3.1.1: On-Site QUALIFIED ~~OPERATORS~~OPERATORS, and
- 2) MAHC Section 6.3.1.2: Contracted Off-Site QUALIFIED ~~OPERATORS~~OPERATORS.

6.3.1.1.2 Size and Use

A QUALIFIED OPERATOR shall be on-site or immediately available within two hours during all hours of operation at an AQUATIC FACILITY that has:

- 1) More than two AQUATIC VENUES; or
- 2) An AQUATIC VENUE of over 50,000 gallons of water; or
- 3) AQUATIC VENUES that include AQUATIC FEATURES with recirculated water; or
- 4) An AQUATIC VENUE used as a THERAPY POOL; or
- 5) An AQUATIC VENUE used to provide swimming training.

6.3.1.1.3 Bathers and Management

A QUALIFIED OPERATOR shall be on site or immediately available within two hours during all hours of operation at an AQUATIC FACILITY that is:

- 1) Permitted BATHER ~~COUNTLOAD~~ is greater than 200 BATHERS daily; or
- 2) Operated by a municipality; or
- 3) Operated by a school.

6.3.1.1.4 Compliance History

A QUALIFIED OPERATOR shall be available on-site or immediately available within two hours during all hours of operation at an AQUATIC FACILITY that has a history of CODE

violations which in the opinion of the permit issuing official require one or more on-site QUALIFIED OPERATORS.

6.3.1.2 Contracted Off-site Qualified Operators

All other AQUATIC FACILITIES shall have an on-site QUALIFIED OPERATOR immediately available within two hours or a contract with a QUALIFIED OPERATOR for a minimum of weekly visits and assistance whenever needed.—

6.3.1.2.12 Visit Documentation

Written documentation of these visits for contracted off-site QUALIFIED OPERATOR visits and assistance consultations shall be available at the AQUATIC FACILITY for review by the AHJ.

6.3.1.2.23 Documentation Details

The written documentation shall indicate the checking, MONITORING, and testing outlined in MAHC 6.4.1.2.2.1 and 6.4.1.2.5 and, when applicable, 6.4.1.2.2.2.

6.3.1.2.34 Visit Corrective Actions

The written documentation shall indicate what corrective actions, if any, were taken by the contracted off-site QUALIFIED OPERATOR during the scheduled visits or assistance requests.

6.3.1.2.45 Onsite Responsible Supervisor

All AQUATIC FACILITIES without a full time, on-site QUALIFIED OPERATOR shall have a designated on-site RESPONSIBLE SUPERVISOR.

6.3.1.2.56 Onsite Responsible Supervisor Duties

The designated on-site RESPONSIBLE SUPERVISOR shall:

- 1) Be capable of testing and recording the water quality parameters required by this CODE;
- 2) Know how to make adjustments, as needed, to maintain required water quality parameters required by this CODE;
- 3) Know general maintenance procedures as required by daily operational verifications or adjustments required by this CODE;
- 4) Know when the AQUATIC FACILITY or individual AQUATIC VENUE should be closed; and
- 5) Know how and when to contact the contracted off-site QUALIFIED OPERATOR.

6.3.2 Aquatic Facilities Requiring Qualified Lifeguards

AQUATIC VENUES with standing water and with any of the following conditions listed in MAHC Section 6.3.2.1 shall be required to have a lifeguard(s) conducting PATRON surveillance at all times the AQUATIC VENUE is open.

6.3.2.1 List of Aquatic Facilities Requiring Qualified Lifeguards

Note: This list includes but shall not be limited to the following:

- 1) For new construction occurring from the date of acceptance of this CODE, any AQUATIC VENUE deeper than ~~five~~5 feet (1.5 m) at any point_;
- 2) Any AQUATIC VENUE that allows for unsupervised children under the age of 14 years_;
- 3) Any AQUATIC VENUE while it is being used for the recreation of youth groups, including but not limited to childcare usage or school groups_;
- 4) Any AQUATIC VENUE while it is being used for group training must have a dedicated lifeguard on deck for class surveillance, including but not limited to competitive swimming and/or sports, lifeguard training, exercise programs, and swimming lessons_;
- 5) Any AQUATIC VENUE with a configuration in which any point on the AQUATIC VENUE surface exceeds 30 feet (9.1 m) from the nearest DECK_;
- 6) Any AQUATIC VENUE with ~~standing water and with~~ an induced current or wave action including but not limited to WAVE POOLS, ~~vortex AQUATIC VENUES, waterslide GATCH POOLS,~~ and LAZY RIVERS_;
- 7) Waterslide LANDING POOLS; and
- 7)8) Any AQUATIC VENUE in which bathers enterallows the water from any height above the deck including but not limited to usage of diving boards, drop slides, of any type or starting platforms, and/or climbing walls. This does not include POOL SLIDESplatform.

6.3.3 Safety Plan

All AQUATIC FACILITIES shall create and implement a ~~SAFETY~~SAFETY PLAN to include, but not be limited to the following elements:

- 1) Staffing Plan,
- 2) EMERGENCY ~~ACTION PLAN~~ACTION PLAN,
- 3) Biohazard action plan_;
- 4) Pre-Service Training Plan, and
- 5) In-service Training Plan_;

6.3.3.1 Code Compliance Staff Plan

Staffing Plans shall designate person(s) as members of the Safety Team and person(s) for the following responsibilities_;

- 1) Identifying and communicating health and SAFETY hazards_;
- 2) Mitigating health and SAFETY hazards and closing the facility if needed_;
- 3) Interfacing with the AHJ related to the requirements of this CODE_;
- 4) Maintaining water quality and, if required, air quality_;
- 5) Enforcing the AQUATIC FACILITY rules and regulations_;
- 6) Responding to reported emergencies_;
- 7) Supervising the ~~SAFETY~~SAFETY TEAM_;
- 8) Conducting pre-service evaluations_; and

- 9) Conducting in-service training.

6.3.3.1.1 Zone of Patron Surveillance

When QUALIFIED LIFEGUARDS are used, the staffing plan~~STAFFING PLAN~~ shall include diagrammed zones of PATRON surveillance for each AQUATIC VENUE such that:

- 1) The QUALIFIED LIFEGUARD is capable of viewing the entire area of the assigned zone of PATRON surveillance,
- 2) The QUALIFIED LIFEGUARD is able to reach the furthest extent of the assigned zone of PATRON surveillance within 20 seconds,
- 3) Identify whether the QUALIFIED LIFEGUARD is in an elevated stand, walking, in-water and/or other approved position,
- 4) Identifying any additional responsibilities for each zone, and
- 5) All areas of each AQUATIC VENUE are assigned a zone of PATRON surveillance.

6.3.3.1.2 -Rotation Procedures

When QUALIFIED LIFEGUARDS are used, the staffing plan~~STAFFING PLAN~~ shall include QUALIFIED LIFEGUARD rotation procedures such that:

- 1) Identifying all zones of PATRON surveillance responsibility at the AQUATIC FACILITY;
- 2) Operating in a manner so as to provide an alternation of tasks ~~for each QUALIFIED LIFEGUARD conducting PATRON surveillance activities~~ such that no QUALIFIED LIFEGUARD conducts PATRON surveillance activities for more than 60 continuous minutes; and;
- 3) Have a practice of maintaining coverage of the zone of PATRON surveillance during the change of the QUALIFIED LIFEGUARD;

6.3.3.1.3 Alternation of Tasks

Alternation of tasks may include any one of the following:

- 1) Change of zone of PATRON surveillance where the QUALIFIED LIFEGUARD must walk or be transported to another zone of PATRON surveillance.
- ~~4) Have a period(s) of at least 10 minutes of non-PATRON surveillance activity for the purpose of providing an alternation of task.~~

6.3.3.1.3 Non-Patron Surveillance Activity

- ~~1)2) The non-PATRON surveillance activity does not include the time of rotation from zone to zone, but may include other activities such as taking a break, conducting breaks, maintenance, or conducting and ride dispatch.~~

6.3.3.1.4 Supervision Protocols

When QUALIFIED LIFEGUARDS are used, the STAFFING PLAN~~STAFFING PLAN~~ shall include lifeguard supervision protocols to achieve the requirements of MAHC Section 6.3.3.

6.3.3.2 Emergency Action Plan

EMERGENCY ~~ACTION PLANS~~ACTION PLANS and operating procedures shall include but not be limited to:

- 1) Outline types of emergencies and IMMINENT HEALTH HAZARDS, as per MAHC Section 6.6.~~34~~;
- 2) Outline the methods of communication between responders, emergency services, and PATRONS;
- 3) Identify each anticipated responder;
- 4) Outline the tasks of each responder;
- 5) Identify required equipment for each task; and
- 6) Emergency closure requirements.

6.3.3.2.1 Coordination of Response

When one or more QUALIFIED LIFEGUARDS are used, the SAFETY PLAN and the EMERGENCY ACTION PLAN shall identify the best means to provide additional persons to rapidly respond to the emergency to help the initial rescuer.-

6.3.3.3 Pre-Service Requirements

The Pre-Service Plan shall include:

- 1) Policies and procedure training specific to the AQUATIC FACILITY,
- 2) Demonstration of ~~SAFETY~~SAFETY TEAM skills specific to the AQUATIC FACILITY prior to ~~assuming on-active~~ duty lifeguard responsibilities, and
- 3) Documentation of training.

6.3.3.3.1 Safety Team EAP Training

Prior to active duty, all members of the ~~SAFETY~~SAFETY TEAM shall be trained on, and receive a copy of, and/or have a copy posted and always available of, the specific policies and procedures for the following:

- 1) Staffing Plan,
- 2) EMERGENCY ~~ACTION PLAN~~ACTION PLAN,
- 3) Emergency closure, and
- 4) Fecal, vomit, and blood contamination on surfaces and in the water as outlined in MAHC Section 6.5.

6.3.3.3.2 Safety Team Skills Proficiency

Prior to active duty, all members of the ~~SAFETY~~SAFETY TEAM shall demonstrate knowledge and skill competency specific to the AQUATIC FACILITY for the following criteria:

- 1) Understand their responsibilities and of others on the ~~AQUATIC~~AQUATIC FACILITY ~~SAFETY~~SAFETY TEAM;
- 2) Ability to execute the ~~EMERGENCY ACTION PLAN~~EMERGENCY ACTION PLAN;

- 3) Know what conditions require closure of the facility; and
- 4) Know what actions to take in response to a fecal, vomit, or blood contamination on a surface and in the water as outlined in MAHC Section 6.5.

6.3.3.3.3 ~~___~~-Qualified Lifeguard Emergency Action Plan Training

When QUALIFIED LIFEGUARDS are used, they shall be trained on, and receive a copy of, and/or have a copy of the EAP posted and always available at the AQUATIC FACILITY, the specific policies and procedures for the following:

- 1) Zone of PATRON Surveillance Plan,
- 2) Rotation Plan, ~~and~~
- 3) Minimum Staffing Plan, ~~and~~
- 4) Rescue/First Aid Response plan.

6.3.3.3.4 Qualified Lifeguard Skills Proficiency

When QUALIFIED LIFEGUARDS are used, they shall demonstrate knowledge and skill competency specific to the AQUATIC FACILITY for the following criteria:

- 1) Ability to reach the bottom at the maximum water depth of the venue to be assigned;
- 2) Ability to identify all zones of ~~BATHERPATRON~~ surveillance responsibility to which they could be assigned;
- 3) Ability to recognize a victim in their assigned zone of ~~BATHERPATRON~~ surveillance;
- 4) Ability to reach the furthest edge of assigned zones of ~~BATHERPATRON~~ surveillance within 20 seconds;
- 5) Water rescue skills outlined in MAHC Section 6.2.1.1.2;
- 6) CPR/AED and First Aid;
- 7) Ability to execute EMERGENCY ACTION PLAN;

~~4) Emergency closure issues; ACTION PLAN;~~

~~7)8) Emergency Closure Issues, and~~

~~8)9) Fecal, vomit, Vomit and blood contamination incident response~~
Blood Contamination Incident Response as outlined in MAHC Section 6.5.

6.3.3.3.5 CPR / AED and First Aid Certificate

The designated person(s) with CPR/AED and ~~first aid~~First Aid training shall present unexpired certificate(s) as per MAHC Section 6.2.1.1.3 and 6.2.1.1.4 prior to active duty.

6.3.3.3.5.1 Copies Maintained

Originals or copiesCopies of certificates shall be maintained at the AQUATIC FACILITY and be available for inspection.

6.3.3.3.6 Documentation of Pre-~~Service~~service Training

Documentation verifying the pre-service requirements shall be completed by the person conducting the pre-service training, maintained at the facility for ~~three~~3 full years, and be available for inspection.

6.3.3.3.6.1 Lifeguard Certificate

When QUALIFIED LIFEGUARDS are used, they shall present an unexpired certificate as per MAHC Section 6.2.1.3.4 prior to ~~assuming on-duty lifeguard responsibilities~~active duty.

6.3.3.3.6.2 Copies Maintained

~~Originals or copies~~Copies of certificates shall be maintained at the facility and be available for inspection.

6.3.3.4 In-Service Training

During the course of their employment, AQUATIC FACILITY staff shall participate in periodic in-service training to maintain their skills.

6.3.3.4.1 Documentation of In-Service~~service~~ Training

Documentation verifying the in-service requirements shall be completed by the person conducting the in-service training, maintained at the AQUATIC FACILITY for ~~three~~3 years, and available for inspection.

6.3.3.4.2 In-Service Documentation

Documentation shall include:

- 1) Names of ~~attendeesthose attending~~,
- 2) Content of training,
- 3) Date of training, and
- 4) Name of the ~~trainer~~Trainer(s).

6.3.3.4.3 In-Service Training Plan

The ~~in-service training plan~~In-Service Plan shall include:

- 1) In-service training frequency,
- 2) Documentation of in-service training,
- 3) Maintenance of certifications, and
- 4) Demonstration of test-ready skills.

6.3.3.4.4 Maintain Certificates

The designated person(s) with CPR/AED and ~~first aid~~First Aid training shall maintain certifications to show the following:

- 1) CPR/AED training is completed annually and certificates are unexpired, and
- 2) First ~~aid~~Aid training certificates are unexpired.

6.3.3.4.5 Competency Demonstration

When QUALIFIED LIFEGUARDS are used, they shall be able to demonstrate proficiency in the skills as outlined by MAHC Section 6.2.1 and have the ability to perform the following water rescue skills consecutively so as to demonstrate the ability to respond to victim and complete the rescue:

- 1) Reach the furthest edge of zones of BATHERPATRON surveillance within 20 seconds;¹⁷
- 2) Recover a simulated victim, including extrication to a position of SAFETY consistent with MAHC Section 6.2.1.1.2;¹⁷ and
- 3) Perform resuscitation skills consistent with MAHC Section 6.2.1.1.3.

6.3.3.5 AHJ Authority to Approve Safety Plan

The AHJ shall have the authority, if they so choose, to require:

- 1) Submittal of the SAFETYSAFETY PLAN for archiving and reference, or
- 2) Submittal of the SAFETYSAFETY PLAN for review and approval prior to opening to the public.

6.3.3.5.1 Safety Plan on File

The SAFETYSAFETY PLAN shall be kept on file at the AQUATIC FACILITY.

6.3.3.5.2 Safety Plan Implemented

The elements detailed in the SAFETYSAFETY PLAN must be implemented and in evidence in the AQUATIC FACILITY operation and is subject to review for compliance by the AHJ at any time.

6.3.4 Staff Management

6.3.4.1 Staff Provided Prior to Aquatic Venue Use

Prior to use of any AQUATIC VENUE, the AQUATIC FACILITY shall provide staff required per the provisions of the SAFETYSAFETY PLAN as stated in MAHC Section 6.3.2.

6.3.4.2 Safety Team Responsibilities

SAFETY TEAM responsibilities shall include but not be limited to:

- 1) Enforcing the AQUATIC FACILITY rules and regulations by interfacing with PATRONS;¹⁷
- 2) Respond to reported emergencies;¹⁷
- 3) Identify health and SAFETY hazards and take action to mitigate or avoid the hazard;¹⁷
- 4) Know where personal protective equipment is located and use it when required;¹⁷ and
- 5) Interface with the AHJ related to the requirements of this CODE.

6.3.4.3 Lifeguard Staff

6.3.4.3.1 Minimum Number of Lifeguards

Where QUALIFIED LIFEGUARDS are used, the AQUATIC FACILITY shall provide, prior to opening the AQUATIC FACILITY to the public, the minimum number of QUALIFIED LIFEGUARDS and staff required per the provisions of the ~~SAFETY~~ SAFETY PLAN such that:

- 1) All zones of PATRON surveillance are staffed during operation;¹⁷
 - a. Zones of PATRON surveillance for individual AQUATIC VENUES not open for use, must also be staffed unless an effective means is provided to restrict and monitor access to the AQUATIC VENUE;
- 2) Rotations can be conducted while all zones are staffed;¹⁷ ~~and~~
- 3) Supervisor is present; ~~and-~~
- 4) Additional person(s) to rapidly respond to an emergency to help the initial rescuer, as required in Section 6.3.3.2.1, are present.

6.3.4.3.2 Lifeguard Responsibilities

QUALIFIED LIFEGUARD responsibilities shall include but not be limited to:

- 1) Monitor PATRONS within the zone of PATRON surveillance responsibility;¹⁷
- 2) Enforce facility rules;¹⁷
- 3) Respond to emergencies including water rescue, CPR, AED use, and First Aid;¹⁷
- 4) Identify health and SAFETY hazards and take action to mitigate or avoid the hazard;¹⁷
- 5) Maintain skills at a test-ready level of proficiency;¹⁷
- 6) Wear the identifying uniform;¹⁷
- 7) If needed for effective PATRON surveillance, wear corrective eyewear and/or wear polarized sunglasses;
- 8) If exposed to UV, wear ~~polarized sunglasses and~~ SPF 15 or greater UV protection; ~~and;~~
- 9) Know where personal protective equipment is located and use it when required.

6.3.4.3.3 Shallow Water Certified Lifeguards

QUALIFIED LIFEGUARDS certified for shallow water depths shall not be assigned to a BODY OF WATER in which any part of the water's depth is greater than the depth for which they are certified.

6.3.4.3.4 Direct Surveillance

QUALIFIED LIFEGUARDS assigned responsibilities for ~~PATRON~~ ~~the direct~~ surveillance of ~~BATHERS~~ shall not be assigned other tasks that intrude on PATRON surveillance while performing ~~those~~ ~~PATRON~~ surveillance activities.

6.3.4.3.5 Distractions

While conducting BATHERPATRON surveillance, QUALIFIED LIFEGUARDS shall not engage in social conversations or have on their person or lifeguard station cellular telephones, texting devices, musicmp3 players, or other similar non-emergency electronic devices.

6.3.4.4 Supervisor Staff

6.3.4.4.1 Lifeguard Supervisor Required

AQUATIC FACILITIES that are required to have two or more QUALIFIED LIFEGUARDS per the zone plan of BATHERPATRON surveillance responsibility in MAHC Section 6.3.32.1.1 shall have at least one person located at the AQUATIC FACILITY during operation designated as the LIFEGUARD SUPERVISOR who meets the requirement of ~~section~~ MAHC Section 6.2.2.

6.3.4.4.2 Designated Supervisor

One of the QUALIFIED LIFEGUARDS as per MAHC Section 6.3.3.15.1 may be designated as the LIFEGUARD SUPERVISOR in addition to fulfilling the duties of QUALIFIED LIFEGUARD. ~~A QUALIFIED LIFEGUARD cannot be on duty with scanning responsibilities if they are acting as the LIFEGUARD SUPERVISOR.~~

6.3.4.4.2.1 Lifeguard Supervisor Duties

LIFEGUARD SUPERVISOR duties shall not interfere with the primary duty of PATRON surveillance.

6.3.4.4.3 Lifeguard Supervisor

LIFEGUARD SUPERVISOR responsibilities shall include but not be limited to:

- 1) Monitor performance of QUALIFIED LIFEGUARDS in their zone of BATHERPATRON surveillance responsibility;₁₇
- 2) Make sure the rotation is conducted in accordance with the ~~SAFETY~~ SAFETY PLAN;₁₇
- 3) Coordinate staff response and BATHERPATRON care during an emergency;₁₇
- 4) Identify health and SAFETY hazards and communicate to staff and management to mitigate or otherwise avoid the hazard;₁₇ and
- 5) Make sure the required equipment per MAHC Section 5.8.5 is in place and in good condition.

6.3.4.5 Emergency Response and Communications Plans

6.3.4.5.1 Emergency Response and Communication Plan

AQUATIC FACILITIES shall create and maintain an operating procedure manual containing information on the emergency response and communications plan including an EAP, Facility Evacuation Plan, and Inclement Weather Plan.

6.3.4.5.2 Emergency Action Plan

A written EAP shall be developed, maintained, and updated as necessary for the AQUATIC FACILITY.

6.3.4.5.3- Annual Review and Update

The EAP shall be reviewed with the AQUATIC FACILITY staff and management annually or more frequently as required when changes occur with the dates of the review recorded in the EAP.

6.3.4.5.444- Available for Inspection

The written EAP shall be kept at the AQUATIC FACILITY and available for emergency personnel and/or AHJ upon request.

6.3.4.5.5- Training Documentation

Documentation from employees trained in current EAP shall be available upon request.

6.3.4.5.6 Components

The EAP shall include at a minimum:

- 1) A diagram of the AQUATIC FACILITY;
- 2) A list of emergency telephone numbers;
- 3) The location of first aid kit and other rescue equipment (*bag valve mask, AED, if provided, backboard, etc.*);
- 4) An emergency response plan for accidental chemical release; and
- 5) A fecal/vomit/blood CONTAMINATION RESPONSE PLAN as outlined in MAHC 6.5.1.

6.3.4.5.6.1 Accidental Chemical Release Plan

The accidental chemical release plan shall include procedures for:

- 1) How to determine when professional HAZMAT response is needed,
- 2) How to obtain it,
- 3) Response and cleanup,
- 4) Provision~~provision~~ for training staff in these procedures, and
- 4)5) A list of equipment and supplies for clean-up.

6.3.4.5.6.2 Remediation Supplies

The availability of equipment and supplies for remediation procedures shall be verified by the operator at least weekly.

6.3.4.5.7 Facility Evacuation Plan

A written Facility Evacuation Plan shall be developed and maintained for the facility.

6.3.4.5.7.1 Evacuation Plan Components

This plan shall include at a minimum:

- 1) Actions to be taken in cases of drowning, serious illness or injury, chemical handling accidents, weather emergencies, and other serious incidents; and
- 2) Defined roles and responsibilities for all staff.

6.3.4.5.8 Communication Plan

A communication plan ~~shall~~**must** exist to facilitate activation of internal emergency response centers and/or community 911/EMS as necessary.

6.3.4.5.8.1 Communication Plan Components

At a minimum, this plan shall include:

- 1) Provision and use of readily accessible, appropriate communication devices such as telephones, call boxes, and mobile devices;
- 2) Signage;
- 3) Procedures to be followed during staffed and unstaffed time periods;
- 4) Acceptable alternative communication during loss of power; and
- 5) Training of all personnel.

6.3.4.5.8.2 Notification Procedures

The ~~communication~~**communications** plan shall include a plan for notification to Federal, State, and local agencies in case of a chemical spill that exceeds the EPA reportable quantity.

6.3.4.5.9- Inclement Weather Plan

AQUATIC FACILITIES shall have a contingency/response plan for localized weather events that may affect their operation (*i.e. lightning, hurricanes, tornados, high winds, etc.*).

6.3.4.5.9.1 Contingency Plan

Contingency plans shall include training for employees, evacuation procedures, and determining when it is acceptable to re-open a facility for operation.

6.3.4.6 Remote Monitoring Systems

6.3.4.6.1- Lifeguard-Based

Lifeguard-based remote SAFETY MONITORING systems shall not replace the need for QUALIFIED LIFEGUARDS.

6.3.4.6.1.1 No Substitute

Remote SAFETY MONITORING systems may be used to aid the operation but not as a substitute for QUALIFIED LIFEGUARDS/slide operators~~staffing~~ when critical areas such as blind spots in an AQUATIC VENUE or area of a slide cannot be viewed by QUALIFIED LIFEGUARDS/slide operators.

6.3.4.6.2 Operator-~~Based~~based

QUALIFIED OPERATOR-based remote water quality MONITORING systems shall not be a substitute for manual water quality testing of the AQUATIC VENUE.

6.3.4.6.3- Training

When QUALIFIED LIFEGUARD- or QUALIFIED OPERATOR-based remote MONITORING systems are used, AQUATIC FACILITY staff shall be trained on their use, limitations, and communication and response protocols for communications with the MONITORING group.

6.3.4.7- Employee Illness and Injury Policy

6.3.4.7.1- Illness Policy

Supervisors shall not permit employees who are ill with diarrhea to enter the water or perform in a QUALIFIED LIFEGUARD role.

6.3.4.7.2 Open Wounds

Supervisors shall permit employees with open wounds in the water or in a QUALIFIED LIFEGUARD role only if they have healthcare provider approval or wear a waterproof, occlusive bandage to cover the wound.

6.4 Facility Management

6.4.1 Operations

6.4.1.1 Operations Manual

6.4.1.1.1 Develop

Each AQUATIC FACILITY shall develop an operations manual to keep at the AQUATIC FACILITY in both printed and electronic formats.

6.4.1.1.2 Include

The manual shall at minimum include, but not be limited to the following items:

- 1) AQUATIC VENUE and AQUATIC FEATURE description(s) and locations,
- 2) Facility communication,
- 1)3) List of chemicals and system Basic information,
- 2) Fecal/Chemical data, and
- 4) Operation and maintenance policies and instructions, including fecal/vomit and body fluid contamination response protocols,
- 5) Preventive maintenance plan, and
- 3)6) Any other standard operation and maintenance policies and instructions or applicable information for each AQUATIC VENUE and AQUATIC FEATURE at the facility.

6.4.1.2 Preventive Maintenance and System Check Program and Recordkeeping

6.4.1.2.1 Operation Records

AQUATIC FACILITIES shall keep records pertaining to the operation, maintenance, and management of the AQUATIC FACILITY on a minimum schedule as prescribed under MAHC Sections ~~sections~~ 6.4.1.2, ~~and these records shall be:~~

6.4.1.2.1 Record Maintenance

AQUATIC FACILITY records shall be:

- 1) Kept for a minimum of three ~~(3)~~ years, and
- 2) Available~~Be available~~ upon request by the AHJ.

6.4.1.2.1.2.2-Additional Documentation

Local CODES may require additional records, documentation, and forms.

6.4.1.3 2.2

Operator Safety and Preventive Maintenance Inspection and Recordkeeping

The QUALIFIED OPERATOR OR RESPONSIBLE SUPERVISOR shall ensure that~~make daily~~ SAFETY and preventive maintenance inspections are done at~~before~~ the AQUATIC FACILITY ~~opens~~ during seasons or periods when the AQUATIC FACILITY is open and that~~record~~ the results are recorded in a log or form maintained at the AQUATIC FACILITY.

6.4.1.32.2.1 Daily Inspection Items

The QUALIFIED OPERATOR OR RESPONSIBLE SUPERVISOR shall ensure that a~~OPERATOR'S~~ daily AQUATIC FACILITY preventive maintenance inspection is done before opening and that it~~inspections~~ shall include:

- 1) Walkways/DECK and exits are clear, clean, free of debris;₁₇
- 2) Drain covers, vacuum fitting covers, SKIMMER equalizer covers, and any other suction outlet covers are in place, secure, and unbroken;₁₇
- 3) SKIMMER baskets, weirs, lids, flow adjusters, and suction outlets are free of any blockage;₁₇
- 4) INLET and return covers and any other fittings are in place, secure, and unbroken;₁₇
- 5) SAFETY warning signs and other signage are in place and in good repair;₁₇
- 6) Safety equipment as required by this CODE are in place and in good repair, including emergency instructions and phone numbers;₁₇
- 7) Entrapment prevention systems are operational;₁₇
- 8) Recirculation, DISINFECTION systems, controller(s), and probes are operating as required;₁₇
- 9) Secondary and/or supplemental DISINFECTION systems are operating as required;₁₇
- 10) Underwater lights and other lighting are intact with no exposed wires or water in lights;₁₇
- 11) Slime and biofilm has been removed from accessible surfaces of AQUATIC VENUES~~VENUE~~, slides, and other AQUATIC FEATURES;₁₇
- 12) Doors to nonpublic areas (*CHEMICAL storage* spaces, offices, etc.) are locked;₁₇
- 13) First aid supplies are stocked;₁₇
- 14) Emergency communication equipment and systems are operational;₁₇
- 15) Fecal/vomit/blood incident contamination response protocols, materials, and equipment are available;₁₇

- 16) Water features and amenities are functioning in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations;₁₇
- 17) Fencing/BARRIERS, gates, and self-latching or other locks are tested and are intact and functioning properly, and BARRIERS do not have nearby furniture to encourage climbing;₁₇
- 18) Drinking fountains are clean and in functional condition;₁₇
- 19) Electrical devices are in good working condition and meet the requirements specified in the NEC and MAHC;₁₇
- 20) Alarms, if required, are tested and functioning properly;₁₇ and
- 21) Assessing water clarity such that glare conditions throughout operating hours to insure the bottom and objects in the POOL are clearly visible.

6.4.1.32-2.2 Other Inspection Items

The QUALIFIED OPERATOR OR RESPONSIBLE SUPERVISOR shall ensure that the OPERATOR'S other AQUATIC FACILITY preventive maintenance inspections shall also include:

- 1) Monthly tests of Required GFCI devices ~~shall be tested monthly,~~
- 2) Inspections every six months of bonding Bonding conductors, where accessible, ~~shall be inspected semi-annually.~~

6.4.1.42-3 Illness and Injury Incident Reports

6.4.1.42-3.1 Incidents to Record

~~The~~ ~~The~~ QUALIFIED OPERATOR, LIFEGUARD SUPERVISOR, or owner/operator shall ensure that make a record is made of all injuries and complaints or reports of illness incidents which:

- 1) Results in and injury, deaths;
- 2) Requires, and all lifesaving activities that require resuscitation, CPR, oxygen Oxygen or AED use;
- 3) Requires, or transportation of the PATRON victim to a medical facility; or-
- 4) Is a PATRON illness or disease outbreak associated with water quality.

6.4.1.4.2 Info to 3-2 Include

Illness and injury incident report information shall include

- 1) Date,
- 2) Time,
- 3) Location,
- 4) Incident including type of illness or injury and cause or mechanism,
- 5) Names and addresses of the individuals involved,
- 6) Actions taken,
- 7) Equipment used, and
- 8) Outcome of the incident.

6.4.1.42.3.3 Notify the AHJ

In addition to making such records, the owner/operator shall ensure that notify the AHJ is notified within 24 hours of the occurrence of an incident recorded in MAHC such activities or complaints.

6.4.1.2.3.4.1.

6.4.1.4.4 Lifeguard Rescues Assists

The owner/AQUATIC FACILITY-operator shall also record all lifeguard rescues assists where the QUALIFIED LIFEGUARD enters the water or uses a reaching pole or other equipment to help a BATHER.struggling-PATRON.

6.4.1.42.3.4.1 Info to Include

These records shall include the date, time, QUALIFIED LIFEGUARD, and PATRON names and reason the rescue that assistance was needed.

6.4.1.52.4 Chemical Inventory Log

A chemical inventory log shall be maintained on site to provide a list of chemicals received, used in the AQUATIC VENUE water, and surrounding deck that could result in water quality issues, chemical interactions, or PATRON exposure approximate quantities.

6.4.1.2.5.1 Expiration Dates

These records shall include the expiration date for water quality chemical testing reagents.

6.4.1.6 Daily Water Monitoring and Testing Records

Daily, or as often as required, monitoring and testing records shall include, but are not limited to the following:

- 1) pH level,
- 2) Disinfectant, disinfectant residuals,
- 1)3) Combined and combined CHLORINE concentrations, logged when measured,
- 2)4) Operating pressures of water recirculation pumps and filters or and the corresponding flow rate from of flow meter readings,
- 3)5) Cyanuric if used, cyanuric acid levels, if used,
- 4)6) Maintenance and malfunctioning of equipment, including dates and time of all equipment calibration including WQTDs,
- 5)7) If heated, AQUATIC VENUE water temperature when DISINFECTANT and pH tests run,
- 6)8) The time of filter backwash or cleaning logged weekly,
- 7)9) Calcium hardness,
- 8)10) Total alkalinity,
- 9)11) SATURATION INDEX,
- 10)12) Microbiological testing, if applicable, —dates/times samples were taken and results,

- ~~11)13)~~ Any equipment failure, power outage, or error resulting in the interruption of the circulation, filtration, or DISINFECTION systems for more than one hour, ~~and~~
- ~~12)14)~~ The daily attendance at the AQUATIC FACILITY; ~~in-is-to-be-recorded.~~ In POOLS where attendance is not ordinarily recorded, a guest sign in book can be used to track attendance, ~~and~~
- ~~13)15)~~ SECONDARY DISINFECTION SYSTEMS ~~and SUPPLEMENTAL TREATMENT SYSTEMS~~ as outlined in MAHC Sections 5.7.3.7.78-6 and 5.7.3.7.8.7,
- ~~14)~~ Evidence of expiration dates being checked on water quality reagents,

~~6.4.1.2.6~~ Requirements

~~Check all information required in MAHC section 6.4.1.2.2 of this regulation before filling an AQUATIC VENUE with water, after periodic maintenance, and after POOL or filter cleaning procedures.~~

~~6.4.1.2.7~~ Staff Certifications on File

~~The originals or copies of all~~ All required QUALIFIED LIFEGUARD, LIFEGUARD SUPERVISOR SAFETY personnel training, or QUALIFIED OPERATOR certificates shall be maintained at the AQUATIC FACILITY and made available to AHJ, staff, and ~~POOL~~ PATRONS upon request.

~~6.4.1.2.7.1~~ Multiple Facilities

A copy of the original certificate shall be made available when employees work at multiple AQUATIC FACILITIES.—

~~6.4.1.2.8~~ Bodily Fluids Remediation Log

~~6.4.1.2.8.1~~ Contamination Incidents~~incidents~~

A Body Fluid Contamination Response Log shall be maintained to document each occurrence of contamination of the water or its immediately adjacent areas by formed or diarrheal fecal material, whole stomach discharge of vomit, and blood.

~~6.4.1.2.8.2~~ Standard Operating Procedures

~~The~~ The log shall include a copy of the AQUATIC FACILITY'S standard operating procedures for responding to these contamination incidents shall be readily available for review by the AHJ.

~~6.4.1.2.8.3~~ Required Information ~~at Incident~~

The log shall include the following information recorded at the time of the incident:

- 1) Person conducting response;
- 2) QUALIFIED OPERATOR or on-site RESPONSIBLE SUPERVISOR~~Supervisor~~ on duty;
- 3) Date and time of incident response;
- 4) Specific area, if not in the water, contaminated by incident;
- 5) BATHER ~~COUNTLOAD~~ in the AQUATIC VENUE~~that BODY OF WATER~~ at the time of incident (if applicable);

- 6) ~~Type~~ Incident specifics, including type and form of body fluid observed (for example, diarrheal or formed stool, vomitus, or blood);
- 7) Date and time when the area was closed ~~to swimming~~;
- 8) Whether the POOL uses CHLORINE stabilizer and concentration at time of incident;
- 9) Free residual ~~of~~ disinfectant and pH levels at the time of incident; ~~and~~
- 10) Remediation procedures used after the incident including contact time, if applicable;

6.4.1.2.8.4 — Required After Incident

~~The log shall also have the following information recorded when remediation is complete:~~

~~1) Date and time of the reopening;~~

11) Free residual ~~level of~~ disinfectant and, pH level, ~~and stabilizer concentration at the time of the reopening~~ the AQUATIC VENUE to the public; (if applicable); and

12) Stabilizer concentration, if used, at the time of reopening; and

13) Date and time of reopening.

~~2) Total contact time (if applicable).~~

6.4.2 Patron-Related Management Aspects

6.4.2.1 Bather Count ~~Load~~

6.4.2.1.1- User Guidelines

AQUATIC FACILITIES that typically operate with low BATHER occupancy shall have a plan in place to adjust to potential higher BATHERPATRON use.

6.4.2.1.2 Maximum Occupancy ~~Bather Load~~

Such plans shall not exceed the maximum designed THEORETICAL PEAK OCCUPANCY for the individual AQUATIC VENUES or the AQUATIC FACILITY ~~BATHER LOAD~~.

6.4.2.2 Signage

6.4.2.2.1- Facility Rules

The operator shall post and enforce the AQUATIC FACILITY rules governing health, SAFETY, and sanitation.

6.4.2.2.2 Conspicuous Place

~~Rules shall be posted in a conspicuous place near the entrance to the AQUATIC FACILITY area and the dressing room.~~

6.4.2.2.3 — Lettering

The lettering shall be legible and at least one¹ inch (~~25.4 mm or 12.5mm~~) (~~36 point type~~) high, with a contrasting background.

6.4.2.2.34 Sign Messages

Signage shall be placed in a conspicuous place at the entrance of the AQUATIC FACILITY communicating expected and prohibited behaviors and other~~ENCLOSURE that includes the following~~ information using,~~or~~ text that complies~~complying~~ with the intent of the following information:

- 1) In case of an emergency, dial 911 or other emergency instructions, per MAHC Section 6.3.4.5.8;
- 2) Hours of operation;
- 3) THEORETICAL PEAK OCCUPANCY;
- ~~2) Hours of operation; AQUATIC FACILITY use prohibited at any other time (if facility is not a secured facility such as an apartment complex)~~
- ~~3) BATHER capacity~~
- 4) Pollution of AQUATIC VENUE prohibited;
- 5) Do not swim if you have open wounds;
- 6) Do not swim if you are ill with diarrhea or have had diarrhea within the past two weeks;
- 7) Shower before entering the water;
- 8) No glass ~~or shatterable~~ items in the AQUATIC VENUE or on the DECK;
- 9) Do not swallow or spit water;
- 10) Diaper changing on the deck is prohibited;
- 11) No Diving, as applicable per MAHC Section 5.5.5;
- ~~9)12) Intentional~~No voluntary hyperventilation or extended breath holding activities are dangerous and prohibited, if applicable;
- ~~10)13) No animals in the AQUATIC VENUE and no animals on the DECK, (except service animals.)~~
- ~~11) No Lifeguard on Duty: Children under 12 years must have adult supervision (if lifeguard is not provided)~~

6.4.2.2.34.1 No Diving Sign

Aquatic ~~Facilities~~~~VENUES~~ without an approved diving well configuration shall have “NO DIVING”, in four inch letters included with On-site ~~the above listed AQUATIC FACILITY rules and the international “No Diving” symbol.~~

6.4.2.2.4.2 Emergency Personnel Signage

MAHC Section 6.4.2.2.3 signage~~Signage~~ requirement number one may be amended to include on-site emergency staff contact information if#1: If emergency trained personnel are on site so that the response would be faster than calling 911, ~~then this requirement may be amended to include on-site emergency staff contact information~~

6.4.2.2.3.2 Diving Well

AQUATIC FACILITIES with diving wells may amend signage requirement number 11 to read that diving is not allowed in all AQUATIC VENUES except for the diving well.

6.4.2.2.34.3 Posters

~~Cardiopulmonary Resuscitation (CPR) and~~ Recreational Water Illness Prevention posters shall be posted conspicuously in the AQUATIC FACILITY at all times.

6.4.2.2.3.4 Unstaffed Multi-Aquatic Facilities without Lifeguards Venues

~~In addition to signage messages one through 13, unstaffed~~ For multi-venue AQUATIC FACILITIES shall also include signage messages covering:

- ~~1) No Lifeguard on Duty: Children under 14 years, all signage items in MAHC 6.4.2.2.4, or text complying with the intent of age must have adult supervision, and~~
- ~~2) Hours of operation; the information, shall be posted in full view at the entrance to the AQUATIC FACILITY use prohibited at any other time.~~

6.4.2.2.3.4.1 Posters Posted at Entrance

~~In~~ For multi-venue AQUATIC FACILITIES not requiring lifeguards, CPR posters reflecting the latest standards shall be posted conspicuously at all times.

6.4.2.2.3.5 Multiple Aquatic Venues

~~For AQUATIC FACILITIES with multiple AQUATIC VENUES, MAHC Section, MAHC 6.4.2.2.34~~ signage items numbers ~~three~~ 3 through ~~ten~~ 8, and, if applicable, numbers 11 through 139, or text complying with the intent of the information, shall be posted at the entrance to each AQUATIC VENUE.

6.4.2.2.34.6 Movable Bottom Floor Spa Venue Signage

~~In addition to the~~ For multi-venue AQUATIC FACILITIES, ~~SPAS signage shall include MAHC 6.4.2.2.34 signage items numbers 3 through 8 plus MAHC 6.4.2.2.6 signage requirements, or text complying with the intent of the information;~~

6.4.2.2.5 Movable Bottom Floor Signage

~~At a minimum,~~ AQUATIC VENUES with moveable bottom floors shall also have the following information, ~~or text complying with the intent of the following information:~~

- 1) A sign for AQUATIC VENUE water depth in use shall be provided and clearly visible;
- 2) A "~~NO DIVING~~ NO DIVING" sign shall be provided; ~~and~~
- 3) The floor is movable and AQUATIC VENUE depth varies.

6.4.2.2.3.76 Spa Venue Signs

~~In~~ ~~At a minimum,~~ ~~SPAS shall have,~~ in addition to the ~~AQUATIC VENUE~~ MAHC Section 6.4.2.2.34 requirements, SPAS shall also have the following information, ~~or text complying with the intent of the following information:~~

- 1) Maximum water temperature is 104° F (~~40° F~~);
- 2) Children under age five 5 and people using alcohol, ~~narcotics~~ or ~~other~~ drugs that cause drowsiness shall not use SPAS;

- 3) Pregnant women and people with heart disease, high blood pressure or other health problems should not use SPAS without prior consultation with a healthcare provider~~;-~~
- 4) Children under ~~1412~~ years of age shall be supervised by an adult; ~~and-~~
- 5) Use of the SPA when alone is prohibited (~~if no lifeguards on site~~); ~~-~~

6.4.2.2.47 Hygiene Facility Signage

Signage shall be posted at the HYGIENE FACILITY exit used to access AQUATIC VENUES stating or containing information, or text complying with the intent of the following information:

- 1) Do not swim when ill with diarrhea~~;-~~
- 2) Do not swim with open wounds and sores~~;-~~
- 3) Shower before entering the water~~;-~~
- 4) Check your child's swim diapers/rubber pants regularly~~;-~~
- 5) Diaper changing on the DECK is prohibited~~;-~~
- 6) Do not poop or pee in the water~~;-~~
- 7) Do not swallow or spit water; ~~and-~~
- 8) Wash hands before returning to the pool.

6.4.2.2.58 Diaper-Changing Station Signage

Signage shall be posted at DIAPER-CHANGING STATIONS stating or containing information, or text complying with the intent of the following information:

- 1) Dispose of used disposable diapers in the diaper bucket or receptacle provided~~;-~~
- 2) Dump contents from reusable diapers into toilets and bag diapers to take home~~;-~~
- 3) Use the materials provided to clean/SANITIZE the surface of the diaper-changing station before and after each use~~;-~~
- 4) Wash your hands and your child's hands after diapering; ~~and-~~
- 5) Do not swim if ill with diarrhea.-

6.4.2.3 User Guidelines

6.4.2.4 Swimmer Empowerment Methods

6.4.2.34.1 Public Information and Health Messaging

The owner/operator shall ~~ensure that develop and implement~~ a public information and health messaging program to inform INDOOR AQUATIC FACILITY PATRONS of their impact on INDOOR AQUATIC FACILITY air quality is developed and implemented.

6.4.2.34.2 Post Inspection Results Score

The ~~permit to operate and the~~ results of the most recent AHJ inspection of the AQUATIC FACILITY shall be posted ~~for public view at the AQUATIC FACILITY~~.

6.4.2.4.3 Certificates Retained

~~Originals or legible copies of required QUALIFIED OPERATOR, QUALIFIED LIFEGUARD, or SAFETY personnel training certificates shall be retained at the AQUATIC FACILITY in a location conspicuous to the public and be readily available for review by the AHJ.~~

6.5 Fecal/Vomit/Blood Contamination Response

6.5.1 Contamination Response Plan

6.5.1.1 Contamination Response Plan

All AQUATIC FACILITIES shall have a CONTAMINATION RESPONSE PLAN ~~within~~ the EMERGENCY ACTION PLAN~~EMERGENCY ACTION PLAN~~ for responding to formed-stool contamination, diarrheal-stool contamination, vomit contamination, and contamination involving blood.

6.5.1.2 Contamination Training

The CONTAMINATION RESPONSE PLAN shall include procedures for response and cleanup, provisions for training staff in these procedures, and a list of equipment and supplies for clean-up.

6.5.1.2.1 Minimum

A minimum of one person on-site while the AQUATIC FACILITY is open for use shall be:

- 1) Trained in the procedures for response to formed-stool contamination, diarrheal contamination, vomit contamination, and blood contamination; and
- 2) Trained in Personal Protective Equipment and other OSHA measures including the Bloodborne Pathogens Standard 29 CFR 1910.1030 to minimize exposure to bodily fluids that may be encountered as employees in an aquatic environment.

6.5.1.2.2 Informed

Staff shall be informed of any updates to the response plan.

6.5.1.3 Equipment and Supply Verification

The availability of equipment and supplies for remediation procedures shall be verified by the QUALIFIED OPERATOR at least weekly.

6.5.1.4 Plan Review

The response plan shall be reviewed at least annually and updated as necessary.

6.5.1.5 Plan Availability

The response plan shall be kept on site and available for viewing by the AHJ.

6.5.2 Aquatic Venue Water Contamination Response

6.5.2.1 Closure

In the event of a fecal or vomit contamination in an AQUATIC VENUE, the QUALIFIED OPERATOR shall immediately close the AQUATIC VENUE~~POOL~~ to swimmers until remediation procedures are complete.

6.5.2.1.1 Closure Includes

This closure shall include~~includes~~ the affected AQUATIC VENUE and other AQUATIC VENUES that share the same RECIRCULATION SYSTEM.—

6.5.2.2 Physical Removal

Contaminating material shall be removed (*e.g., using a net, scoop, or bucket*) and disposed of in a sanitary manner.—

6.5.2.2.1 Clean / Disinfect Net or Scoop

Fecal or vomit contamination of the item used to remove the contamination (*e.g., the net or bucket*) shall be removed by thorough cleaning followed by DISINFECTION (*e.g., after cleaning, leave the net, scoop, or bucket immersed in the pool during the disinfection procedure prescribed for formed-stool, diarrheal-stool, or vomit contamination, as appropriate*).

6.5.2.2.2 No Vacuum Cleaners

Aquatic vacuum cleaners shall not be used for removal of contamination from the water or adjacent surfaces unless vacuum waste is discharged to a sanitary sewer and the vacuum equipment can be adequately disinfected.—

6.5.2.3 Treated

AQUATIC VENUE~~POOL~~ water that has been contaminated by feces or; vomit, ~~or blood~~ shall be treated as follows:

- 1) Check to ensure that the water's pH is 7.5 or lower and adjust if necessary;
- 2) Verify and maintain water temperature at 77°F (25°C) or higher;
- 3) Operate the filtration/RECIRCULATION SYSTEM while the POOL reaches and maintains the proper free CHLORINE concentration during the remediation process; ~~and~~
- 4) Test the CHLORINE residual at multiple sampling points to ensure the proper free CHLORINE concentration is achieved throughout the POOL for the entire DISINFECTION time; ~~and~~;
- 5) Use only non-stabilized CHLORINE products to raise the free CHLORINE levels during the remediation.

6.5.3 Aquatic Venue*Pool Water Contamination Disinfection

6.5.3.1- Formed-Stool Contamination

Formed-stool contaminated water shall have the FREE CHLORINE RESIDUAL checked and the FREE CHLORINE RESIDUAL raised to 2.0 mg/L (*if less than 2.0 mg/L*) and maintained for at least 25 minutes (*or an equivalent time and concentration to reach the CT VALUE*) before reopening the AQUATIC VENUE.

6.5.3.1.1- Pools Containing Chlorine Stabilizers

In AQUATIC VENUE~~POOL~~ water that contains cyanuric acid or a stabilized CHLORINE product, water shall be treated by doubling the inactivation time required under MAHC Section 6.5.3.1.

6.5.3.1.2 Measurement of Inactivation Time

Measurement of the inactivation time required shall start when the AQUATIC VENUE reaches the intended free CHLORINE level.

6.5.3.2 Diarrheal-Stool Contamination

Diarrheal-stool contaminated water shall:

- 1) Check the FREE CHLORINE RESIDUAL and then raise the FREE CHLORINE RESIDUAL to 20.0 mg/L and maintain for at least 12.75 hours (*or an equivalent time and concentration to reach the CT VALUE*) before reopening the AQUATIC VENUE, or
- 2) Circulate the water through a SECONDARY DISINFECTION SYSTEM to theoretically reduce the number of *Cryptosporidium* OOCYSTS in the AQUATIC VENUE below one~~1~~ OOCYST/100 mL~~100ml~~ as outlined in MAHC Section 4.7.3.3.2.4.

6.5.3.2.1 Pools Containing Chlorine Stabilizers

In AQUATIC VENUE~~POOL~~ water that contains cyanuric acid or a stabilized CHLORINE product, water shall be treated by:

- 1) Lowering the pH to 6.5, raising the FREE CHLORINE RESIDUAL to 40 mg/L using a non-stabilized CHLORINE product, and maintaining at 40 mg~~40mg~~/L for at least 30 hours or an equivalent time and concentration needed to reach the CT VALUE. (*Measurement of the inactivation time required shall start when the aquatic venue reaches the intended FREE chlorine level.*) ~~or;~~
- 2) Circulating the water through a SECONDARY DISINFECTION SYSTEM to theoretically reduce the number of *Cryptosporidium* OOCYSTS in the AQUATIC VENUE below one~~1~~ OOCYST/100 mL~~100ml~~ as outlined in MAHC Section 4.7.3.3.2.4 ~~or;~~
- 3) Draining the AQUATIC VENUE completely.

6.5.3.3 Vomit-Contamination

Vomit-contaminated water shall have the FREE CHLORINE RESIDUAL checked and the FREE CHLORINE RESIDUAL raised to 2.0 mg/L (*if less than 2.0 mg/L*) and maintained for at least

25 minutes (or an equivalent time and concentration to reach the CT VALUE) before reopening the AQUATIC VENUE.

6.5.3.3.1 Pools Containing Chlorine Stabilizers

In ~~AQUATIC VENUEPOOL~~ water that contains cyanuric acid or a stabilized CHLORINE product, water shall be treated by doubling the inactivation time required under MAHC Section 6.5.3.3.

6.5.3.3.2 Measurement of the Inactivation Time

Measurement of the inactivation time required shall start when the AQUATIC VENUE reaches the intended free CHLORINE level.

6.5.3.4 Blood-Contamination

Blood contamination of a properly well-maintained AQUATIC ~~VENUE'SVENUES'~~ water does not pose a public health risk to swimmers.

6.5.3.4.1 Operators Choose Treatment Method

Operators may choose whether or not ~~they want~~ to close the AQUATIC VENUE and treat as a formed stool contamination as in MAHC Section 6.5.3.1 to satisfy PATRON concerns.

6.5.3.5 Procedures for Brominated Pools

Formed-stool, diarrheal-stool, or vomit, ~~or blood~~-contaminated water in a brominated ~~AQUATIC VENUEPOOL~~ shall have CHLORINE added to the ~~AQUATIC VENUEPOOL~~ in an amount that will increase the FREE CHLORINE RESIDUAL to the level specified for the specific type of contamination for the specified time.

6.5.3.5.1 Bromine Residual

The bromine residual shall be adjusted if necessary before reopening the ~~AQUATIC VENUEPOOL~~.

6.5.4- Surface Contamination Cleaning and Disinfection

6.5.4.1- Limit Access

If a bodily fluid, such as feces, vomit, or blood, has contaminated a surface in an AQUATIC FACILITY, facility staff shall limit access to the affected area until remediation procedures have been completed.-

6.5.4.2 Clean Surface

Before DISINFECTION, all visible CONTAMINANT shall be cleaned and removed with disposable cleaning products effective with regard to type of CONTAMINANT present, type of surface to be cleaned, and the location within the facility.-

6.5.4.3 Contaminant Removal and Disposal

CONTAMINANT removed by cleaning shall be disposed of in a sanitary manner or as required by law.—

6.5.4.4 Disinfect Surface

Contaminated surfaces shall be disinfected with one of the followinga DISINFECTION solutions:solution outlined in MAHC Section 6.5.4.4.1 or 6.5.4.4.2.

~~A~~6.5.4.4.1 Bleach Solution

- 1) ~~A 5,000 mg/L bleach DISINFECTION solution, such as a~~ 1:10 dilution of fresh household bleach with water; or.—

~~6.5.4.4.2~~ EPA-Registered

- 2) An equivalent EPA REGISTERED disinfectant that has been approved for body fluids DISINFECTION.—

6.5.4.5 Soak

The disinfectant shall be left to soak on the affected area for a minimum of 20 minutes or as otherwise indicated on the disinfectant label directions.

6.5.4.65.1 Remove

Disinfectant shall be removed by cleaning and shall be disposed of in a sanitary manner or as required by the AHJ.

6.6 AHJ Inspections

6.6.1 Inspection Process

~~6~~Process6.6.1.1

Inspection Authority

The AHJ shall have the right to inspect or investigate the operation and management of an AQUATIC FACILITY.—

6.6.1.2 Inspection Scope and Right

Upon presenting proper identification, an authorized employee or agent of the AHJ shall have the right to and be permitted to enter any AQUATIC FACILITY OR AQUATIC VENUE area, including the recirculation equipment and piping area, at any reasonable time for the purpose of inspecting the AQUATIC VENUE OR AQUATIC FEATURES to do any of the following:

- ~~1)~~ Inspect, investigate, or evaluate for compliance with the AQUATIC VENUE,
- ~~2)1)~~ Determine if there has been a violation of this CODE;_{i7}
- ~~3)2)~~ Verify compliance with previously written violation orders;_{i7}
- ~~4)3)~~ CollectSecure samples or specimens;_{i7}
- ~~5)4)~~ Examine, review, and copy relevant documents and records;_{i7} or
- ~~6)5)~~ Obtain photographic or other evidence needed to enforce this CODE; or.

Question 6.6.1.2.1 Right

The AHJ shall have the right to do the following:

- ~~1) inspect, investigate, or evaluate for compliance with this CODE,~~
- ~~2) to review records, collect samples, make copies, take photographs,~~
- ~~7)6) to question any person, or~~
- ~~3) to locate, to identify, and to assess the condition of the AQUATIC FACILITY.~~

6.6.1.3 Based on Risk

An AQUATIC FACILITY'S inspection frequency may be amended based on a risk of recreational water injury and illness.

6.6.1.4 Inspection Interference

It is a violation of this CODE for a person to interfere with, deny, or delay an inspection or investigation conducted by the AHJ.

6.6.2 Publication of Inspection Forms**6.6.2.1 Inspection Form Publication**

The AHJ may publish or post on the web or other source the reports of AQUATIC FACILITY inspections.

6.6.3 Forms**~~6.6.3.1 Applications~~**

~~Upon receipt of the following properly completed forms, the AHJ shall approve or deny the following applications in accordance with the provisions in this CODE as long as the operation will not present a danger~~

- ~~1) Application for Aquatic Facility Exemption Status~~
- ~~2) Application for Approval of Aquatic facility Plans.~~
- ~~3) Application for Aquatic facility Operating Permit/Authorization.~~
- ~~4) Application for Annual Renewal or Reissuance of Aquatic facility Operating Permit~~
- ~~5) Application for Aquatic facility Variance~~

6.6.4 Imminent Health Hazards**6.6.34.1 Violations Requiring Immediate Correction or Closure**

Any of the following violations are IMMINENT HEALTH HAZARDS which shall require immediate correction or immediate POOL closure:

- 1) Failure to provide adequate supervision and staffing of the AQUATIC FACILITY as prescribed in this CODE;
- 2) Failure to provide the minimum DISINFECTANT residual levels listed in various sections of this CODE;
- 3) pH level below 6.5;
- 4) pH level above 8.0;
- 5) Failure to continuously operate the AQUATIC VENUE filtration and DISINFECTION equipment;
- 6) Use of an unapproved or contaminated water supply source for potable water use;
- 7) Unprotected overhead electrical wires within 20 feet horizontally of the AQUATIC VENUE;
- 8) Non GFCI protected electrical receptacles within 20 feet of the inside wall of the AQUATIC VENUE;
- 9) Failure to maintain an emergency lighting source;
- 10) Absence of all required lifesaving equipment on DECK;
- 11) ~~AQUATIC~~AQUATIC VENUE bottom not visible;
- 12) Total absence of or improper depth markings at an AQUATIC VENUE;
- 13) Plumbing cross-connections between the drinking water supply and AQUATIC VENUE water or between sewage system and the AQUATIC VENUE including filter backwash facilities;
- 14) Failure to provide and maintain an ENCLOSURE or BARRIER to~~around the AQUATIC VENUE area that will~~ inhibit unauthorized access to the AQUATIC FACILITY or AQUATIC VENUE when required;
- 15) Use of unapproved chemicals or the application of chemicals by unapproved methods to the AQUATIC VENUE water;
- 16) Broken, unsecured, or missing main drain grate or any submerged suction outlet grate in the AQUATIC VENUE;
- 17) ~~Number~~Overcrowding of the AQUATIC VENUE that results in poor supervision of BATHERS/PATRONS exceeds the THEORETICAL PEAK OCCUPANCY;
- 18) Broken glass or sharp objects in AQUATIC VENUE or on DECK area; or
- 19) Any other item determined to be a public health hazard by the AHJ.

6.6.34.1.1 Low pH Violations

If pH testing equipment doesn't measure below 6.5, pH level must be at or below the lowest value of the test equipment.-

6.6.34.1.2 High pH Violations

If pH testing equipment doesn't measure above 8.0, pH level must be at or above the highest value of the test equipment.

6.6.45 Enforcement

6.6.45.1 Placarding of Pool

Where an imminent public health hazard is found and remains uncorrected, the AQUATIC VENUE shall be placarded to prohibit use until the hazard is corrected in order to protect the public health or SAFETY of BATHERS.

6.6.45.2 Placard Location

When a placard is used, it shall be conspicuously posted at each entrance leading to the AQUATIC ~~FACILITY and/or AQUATIC~~ VENUE.

6.6.45.2.1 State Authority

When placed by the AHJ, the placard shall state the authority responsible for its placement.

6.6.45.2.2 Tampering with Placard

When placed by the AHJ, the placard shall indicate that concealment, mutilation, alteration, or removal of it by any person without permission of the AHJ shall constitute a violation of this CODE ~~and the Public Health Law~~.

6.6.45.3 Operator Follow-up

Within 15 days of the AHJ placarding an AQUATIC FACILITY, the operator of such AQUATIC FACILITY shall be provided with an opportunity to be heard and present proof that continued operation of the facility does not constitute a danger to the public health. ~~If the IMMINENT HEALTH HAZARD(s) have been corrected, the operator can contact the AHJ prior to the hearing and request a follow-up inspection.~~

6.6.45.3.1 Correction of Violation

If the IMMINENT HEALTH HAZARD(s) have been corrected, the operator may contact the AHJ prior to the hearing and request a follow-up inspection.

6.6.4.3.2 Hearing

The hearing shall be conducted by the AHJ.

6.6.45.4 Follow-up Inspection

The AHJ shall inspect the premises, within two working days of notification that the hazard has been eliminated, to remove the placards after verifying correction.

6.6.4.4.1 Other Evidence of Correction

The AHJ may accept other evidence of correction of the hazard in lieu of inspecting the premises.

6.6.5 Enforcement Penalties

6.6.6.5.1 Liability and Jurisdiction

It shall be unlawful for any person to fail to comply with any of the regulations promulgated pursuant to this CODE.

6.6.56.1.1 Failure to Comply

Any person who fails to comply with any such regulation shall be in violation of this CODE.

6.6.56.1.2 Civil Penalty

For each such offense, violators shall be liable for a potential civil penalty.

~~6.6.56.1.3 AHJ Authority~~

~~The AHJ shall have authority to utilize civil penalty as a potential enforcement option.~~

6.6.6.2 Continued Violation

Each day, or any part thereof, during which a willful violation of this CODE exists or persists shall constitute a separate violation of this CODE.

6.6.56.3 Falsified Documents

Falsifying or presenting to the AHJ falsified documentation and or certificates shall be a civil violation as specified by the AHJ.

6.6.56.4 Enforcement Process

Upon determining that one or more violations of this CODE exists, the AHJ shall cause a written notice of the violation or violations to be delivered to the owner or operator of the AQUATIC FACILITY that is in violation of this CODE.

~~6.6.7 Public Nuisance~~

~~6.6.7.1 Public Nuisance~~

~~Any AQUATIC FACILITY constructed, operated, or maintained contrary to the provisions of this article is a public nuisance and dangerous to health.~~

~~6.6.8 Fees~~

~~6.6.8.1 Owner's Permit~~

~~The owner's permit application fee shall be paid prior to the issuance of the owner's permit for AQUATIC FACILITIES operating on a seasonal schedule.~~

~~6.6.8.1.1 Fees Waived~~

~~The AHJ may waive fees as appropriate.~~

6.6.8.2 — Re-inspection Fees

~~The fees for pre-operational re-inspections are as established by the AHJ.~~